OLIVER & BOYD'S
EDUCATIONAL SERIES

PRINCIPLES
OF
FRENCH GRAMMAR

CHARLES S. LE HARIVEL.

THE PRINCIPLES

OF

FRENCH GRAMMAR

WITH

NUMEROUS EXERCISES

(VERSIONS ET THÈMES)

BY

CHARLES S. LE HARIVEL

Lecturer on French at the Edinburgh Provincial Training College, Heriot-Watt College, Edinburgh, etc.

AUTHOR OF "ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR"

THIRD EDITION—REVISED AND AMENDED

OLIVER AND BOYD

EDINBURGH: TWEEDDALE COURT

LONDON: 33 PATERNOSTER ROW

1914

PREFACE

The object of this book is to set forth, in a clear and concise form, the principles of French Grammar and Syntax, especially in those points which differ materially from English, and therefore present considerable difficulty to the young student. Unnecessary detail and confusing exceptions have been avoided as far as possible. Pages 41 to 44, 63, 97, 138-9, and 249 may serve to illustrate the method followed. An effort has also been made to grapple with the more subtle difficulties of the language, as on pages 116, 117, and 287, etc.

The exercises are largely of a practical and conversational character, but classic extracts have also been introduced. The plan of giving interlinear translations of the difficult words has been discarded and replaced by a comprehensive Vocabulary.

With the consent of the Publishers, some pages of the more elementary parts have been adapted from M. Jules Caron's French Grammar.

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION

In order to avoid confusion, no change has been made in the general arrangement of the Grammar, but it has been carefully revised, and a Note on the recent Simplification of French Syntax added (*see* following page).

NOTE ON THE SIMPLIFICATION OF FRENCH SYNTAX

According to the "Arrêté" of February 26th, 1901, which embodies all that has been retained of the more sweeping changes proposed in the Decree of July 31st, 1900, teachers and examiners no longer have a right to insist upon the following rules which are mentioned in this Grammar, and a few other minutiæ not taken up here. There are, however, but slight indications of the adoption of the more important changes, even in the daily press; the student is therefore strongly advised to adhere to the old forms, especially in the case of rules printed in italics.

(*Numbers refer to paragraphs in the Grammar.*)

Hyphens may be omitted in compound nouns, numerals and verbs, and *even between verbs and pronouns.* (Surely not *parle t il?*)

Partitive Articles may be written in full before nouns preceded by an adjective, 33, 533, foot note †.

Cent and **vingt** *may* be written with an **s** whenever they are multiplied, *even in dates*, 133.

Mil *may be written* **mille** *in dates*, 133.

Le *may agree in an adverbial comparative* in subtle cases, 527.

The Article *may* be omitted in (le) **Dante** and a few Italian names, but the rest of 514 stands.

Hymne may be considered feminine in all cases, 539.

Amour and **orgue**, masculine in the singular, either gender in the plural, 541. Foot note * stands.

Délice need not be taught in the singular, 541.

Enfants is common gender; omit foot note, 85.

Gens *may take all agreements in the feminine plural*, 542-544. All the rest stands, including 545.

Pâques, Easter; *feminine plural allowed in all cases*, 546.

Chacun, &c.; 600, either **son, sa, ses,** or **leur, leurs.**

Agreement with the subject at will, in such cases as, 616, 619, 620, 621, 625.

Proper names *may* take the sign of the plural in all cases, 553-558.

Nu and **demi** *may agree in all cases*, 580. (**Une demi-heure**, &c., advised in the meantime.)

Feu may always agree; suppress 581-583.

Subjunctive Present may be used for Subjunctive Imperfect, 677 and 679.

Ne, *used idiomatically, may be omitted*, 438, 503, 588, 665.

C'est, ce sont, &c., 618, 710, stand in substance.

Present Participle, 684, 685 to be applied intelligently without subtle distinctions.

Past Participle, as before, except when followed by a verb or participle, in which case it *may* always remain invariable, 699-700; also in 701.—Agreement may be made in 704A.

CONTENTS AND INDEX

The figures refer to the numbers of the paragraphs.
Numbers from 510 refer to the Syntax.

INTRODUCTION—
- Alphabet 1
- Elision 2-5
- Cedilla, hyphen, &c. 6-8
- Accents 9-22

THE ARTICLES—
- Definite 23-31; 510-522; 526-7
- ,, for Possessive Adjective . . . 601-2
- Partitive 32-34; 528-536
- Indefinite 35; 521-526

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE 61-62

THE NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE—
- Gender 36-60; 539-546
- Plural 63-71
- ,, of Proper Nouns . . . 553-558
- ,, of Compound Nouns . . . 559-572
- Peculiarities of Number . . . 547-552
- Formation of Feminine . . . 72-89

THE ADJECTIVE—
- Agreement 90; 573-4
- ,, of Compound Adjective . . 575-578
- ,, Peculiarities of . . . 579-584
- Formation of Feminine . . . 91-101
- ,, Plural 102-108
- Invariable as Adverbs 585

THE ADJECTIVE, *continued*—
Position 109-115; 592-594
Degrees of Comparison . . 116-128; 588-590
Numerals, &c. 129-144
Possessive . . . 145-147; 171 (7); 600-605
Dimensions 586-7

PRONOUNS—
Possessive 148-150; 603-604
Personal Conjunctive 151-169
,, Disjunctive 170-171
Use of Pronouns 172-178
Relative 179-190
Compound Relative 191-194
Interrogative 195-201
,, Adjective *quel* . . . 202-204
Demonstrative Pronouns . . . 205-213

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS—
Indefinite Pronouns 214-222
,, Adjectives . . . 223-229
Words which are both . . . 230-237

THE VERB—
Remarks on 238-239
Avoir 240-247
Être 248-251
Use of Auxiliaries . . 244, 292, 301-308, 310
Formation of Tenses 252-253
Regular Conjugations 254-268
Terminations 269-274
Negative Form 275-277
Interrogative Forms 278-291
Passive Form 292-299
Neuter Verbs 300-308
Reflexive Verbs . . . 309-316; 606-615
Reciprocal Verbs 317-319; 612
Impersonal Verbs 320-331
Peculiarities of First Conjugation . . 332-349
Irregular Verbs alphabetically arranged according to Conjugations 350-467
Agreement with the subject . . . 616-625

USE OF TENSES—
Infinitive 626-631
Indicative Present 632-634
,, Imperfect 635-638
,, Preterite (Passé Défini) . . 639-641
,, Past Indefinite . . . 642-643
,, Pluperfect and Past Anterior . 644-647
,, Future and Future Perfect . . 648-651
Imperative 151, 651
Conditional 652-660
Subjunctive 257; 662-675
Sequence of Tenses 676-680

PARTICIPLES—
Present 681-687
,, Adjectives and Nouns differing from 688-690
Past, agreement with *être* . . 50, 292-293, 304-307
,, ,, ,, *avoir* . . . 155-156, 183
,, ,, reflected . 310, 315-316; 608-609
,, ,, reciprocal 318
,, ,, Summary . . . 691-694
,, ,, Difficulties of . . . 695-704

THE ADVERB—
Place of 469-471
Formation 472-481
Lists in classes 482-488
Adverbs of quantity taking *de* . 34, 485; 530-532
Comparison . . . 126-127, 489; 588-590
Erroneous combinations 490
Remarks 491-492

PREPOSITIONS 493-499

CONJUNCTIONS 500-507

Governing Subjunctive 503

INTERJECTIONS 508-509

VOCABULARIES—
English-French . . . . . *page* 329
French-English . . . . . ,, 349

SPECIAL RULES, &c.—

	PARAGRAPH
Adjectives referring to Indefinite Pronouns	222, 536
Avoir, Idiomatic uses of	245-247
Cent and *vingt*	133
C'est and *il est*	709-713
Connaître	433, 435
Dans and *en*	494, 496
Days of the Week, Months of the Year	56
Demi	142, 143, 580
Des the plural of *un*, *une* (Remark)	71
Devoir	262-265
Faire	448-450
Falloir	328-331
Fractions	143
Gens	542-545
Geographical Names	57-60, 512-514, 518, 519
Grand'	560
Là and *y*	484
Le invariable	(art.) 527, (pro.) 605
Mil, *mille*, *milles*	131, 133-135
Ne used idiomatically	488, 503, 588, 665
Nouns of Number	139-141
O'clock (to tell the time)	142
Pas omitted	714
Peu (*le*)	625, 701
Plupart (*la*)	536, 624
Plus de, *plus que*	132
Plus tôt, *plutôt*	491
Quelque, *quel que*	223-228
Quoique, *quoi que*	237, 503
Savoir	403-406
Si (if, whether), Tense used with	654-661
Tel, *telle*	236
There is, there are, *il y a* and *voilà*	327
Tout	233-235
Verbs governing a Direct Object	173, 176
,, ,, an Indirect Object	174-176
,, ,, a Disjunctive Object	177
Vivre (*Vive! Vivent!*)	467
Whose	187, 188

THE PRINCIPLES OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION.

1. The French alphabet is the same as the English. W, (in French *double v*, and often written vv,*) though not really a French letter, now occurs in so many words of foreign (principally English) origin, that it is recognised by all modern dictionaries.

Y is always a vowel, and is called "I grec," a Greek I.

2. The *apostrophe*, marking the elision or suppression of a vowel, is much more used in French than in English. Thus *I'm*, for *I am*, is familiar, but *j'ai*, for *je ai*, is correct.

E mute is the most commonly elided of the vowels, but we also suppress the *a* of *la*, the feminine article and pronoun, before a word beginning with a vowel or a silent *h*, and the vowel *i* in **two cases only**, viz., the conjunction *si*, if, before *il*, he, and *ils*, they; thus, *s'il* for *si il*, and *s'ils* for *si ils*; but we write **si elle**, if she, and **si elles**, if they (fem.).

3. The elision of *e* mute offers considerable difficulty in many cases. It generally occurs when *le, je, me, te, se, ce, de, ne, que*, and *jusque* are followed by a word

* Educated people generally pronounce *w* as in English in English words; in German and other words pronounce *v*. The lower orders give the sound of *v* in all cases.

beginning with a vowel or silent *h ;* as, *l'orage,* the storm, for *le orage ; l'habit,* the coat, for *le habit ; jusqu'à,* until, for *jusque à,* etc.

4. The elision does not occur when the pronouns *je, ce, le, la* **follow a verb** ; e.g., *Ai-je offert ?* Have I offered ? *Est-ce utile ?* Is it useful ? *Donnez-le à Marie,* Give it to Mary ; *Montrez-la aux enfants,* Show it to the children.

E suffers elision also :

5. In *quelque* before *un, une ;* as, *quelqu'un, quelqu'une,* some one, m. and f. ; but we write *quelque autre,* some other.

In *lorsque,* when ; *puisque,* since ; *quoique,* although ; before *il, ils, elle, elles, on, un, une.*

In *entre,* between, and *presque,* almost, when they form a part of another word ; as, *un entr'acte,* an interlude ; *s'entr'aider,* to help one another ; *une presqu'île,* a peninsula.

6. The *Cedilla* (ç) is a small curved mark placed under the letter **c** when it is pronounced with the soft sound of **s** before the vowels *a, o, u ;* as, *maçon,* mason ; *façade,* front of a building. Without a cedilla **c** has the sound of *k* before *a, o, u ;* as, *vécu,* lived ; *la confiance,* confidence ; *un câble,* a cable.

7. The *Diæresis* (in French *tréma*) (¨) consists of two dots placed over the vowels *e, i, u,* when they must be pronounced as distinct syllables ; as, *aïeul,* grandfather ; *Saül,* Saul.

8. The *Hyphen* (in French *trait d'union*) (-) is placed between compound words and between the verb and pronoun in the interrogative, inverted and imperative constructions, as, *un tire-bouchon,* a corkscrew ; *Allez-vous ?* Do you go ? *Donnez-moi,* Give me.

9. There are three accents in French—the *acute,* the *grave,* and the *circumflex.*

The *acute* accent (´) is placed **only over the vowel e** ; as in *bonté,* kindness ; *café,* coffee.

10. The *grave* accent (`) is placed over *a*, *e*, and *u*; as, *frère*, brother; *où*, where.

This accent is used in the following words to distinguish the meaning of one from that of the other:

à,	to, at.	*a*,	(he) has.
là,	there.	*la*,	the, her, it.
où,	where.	*ou*,	or.
dès,	from, since.	*des*,	of the, some.
lès,	near (in place names).	*les*,	the, them.

11. The *circumflex* accent (^) is common to all the vowels, and gives them a long sound; as, *maître*, master; *apôtre*, apostle. It generally shows a contraction, most frequently the loss of *s*; as, *la forêt*, the forest; *la tête* (Old French *teste*), the head.

This accent is used as a distinctive mark in the following words:

sûr,	sure.	*sur*,	upon.
mûr,	ripe.	*mur*,	wall.
dû,	owed.	*du*,	of the, some.
crû,	grown.	*cru*,	believed.
croît,	grows.	*croit*,	believes.

12. It will be seen from the above that *e* is the **only vowel which takes all three accents**, and it is most important to understand their use and value. It is common to find advanced pupils making gross errors in the matter of accents, from which the knowledge of a few leading principles would save them. Thus *été* is often written *ète*, which is impossible, and so on. It is hoped that the following rules will be found of service.

13. The *Acute accent* is used when *e* has a short, sharp sound (*fermé*, closed, the French call it), and is the **last letter of the syllable.** It is therefore necessary to know how French words are divided.

14. A single consonant belongs to the second syllable; e.g., *pré-fé-ré*, preferred; *gé-né-ral*, general.

Compound consonants, that is, two or more which

can be pronounced together, such as, *bl, br, gr, gn, ch,* etc., belong to the second syllable; e.g., *ré-gné,* reigned; *sé-ché,* dried; *dé-char-gé,* discharged.

15. **A final *e*, pronounced hard,** must take the **acute accent,** e.g., *un dé,* a thimble; *le pré,* the meadow. The addition of the plural *s* does not affect the accent; *des dés,* some thimbles; *les prés,* the meadows; with this exception there is **never an acute accent when there is a consonant after the *e* in the same syllable;** e.g., *per-du,* lost; *ven-du,* sold; *der-nier,* last; *bel-le,* beautiful; *jet-te,* throw. It is clear that one could not divide these words, *pe-rdu, ve-ndu, de-rnier, be-lle, je-tte.*

16. The common ending *ée,* or its plural *ées,* **must take acute on first** *e;* e.g., *une année,* a year; *la journée,* the day; *la soirée,* the evening. (*éé* occur in a few verbs, as we shall see.) **(346.)**

17. Many words begin with *é,* which is a syllable in itself; *étrange,* strange; *établir,* to establish; *épaule* (fem.), shoulder; *une école,* a school.

18. We use *è grave,* that is, broad and open, **before a final mute syllable;** as, *nè-gre,* negro; *sè-che,* dry; *mè-ne,* lead; *pè-re,* father; *fi-dè-le,* faithful; *sin-cè-re,* sincere.

19. The accentuation of *e* in the middle of a long word, when followed by a mute syllable, is uncertain, even in verbs; e.g., *un é-vé-ne-ment,* an event; *a-vè-ne-ment* (masc.), accession of a king; *il pré-fé-re-ra,* or *pré-fè-re-ra,* he will prefer.

20. Accents play an important part in the conjugation of verbs, and the pupil must distinguish between mute and sonorous verbal endings. Thus *e, es, ent* are mute endings, while *é, er, ez* are sonorous, so we write *ils règnent,* they reign; *tu sèches,* thou driest; but *régné,* reigned; *régner,* to reign; *vous séchez,* you dry.

21. We find *ès* broad and short (an exceptional position of *è*) in the following words:

très,	very.	*excès*,	excess.
près,	near.	*lès*,	near (in place names)
auprès,	beside.	*ès*,	old contraction of *en*
après,	after.	(*pronounced, ess*)	*les*, in the, now used only in speaking of a diploma as bachelier ès lettres, B.A.
dès,	from, since.		
progrès,	progress.		
succès,	success.		
accès,	access.		
décès,	death, decease.		

22. A *circumflex* has much the same effect as a *grave*, but generally shows a contraction, as has been said. Note that *è* and *ê* **are never final.**

EXERCISE 1.

Correct the following words, stating in each case why the accent is wrong; thus, méne *should be* mène, *because followed by a final mute syllable. There is only one error in each word.*

Cédè, règner, pèrdre, préfére, ètè, sincére, donnè, cèlle, succés, végètal, èglise, carrê.

Accentuate correctly the e *in italics.*

Pres (*near*), pres (*meadows*), charme, pese, pese, sincerite, verite, contree, depense, premiere, des (*thimbles*), des (*since*), esperer, espererent (*3rd plural of a verb*), ecole, crete (*crest*), etable, eblouir, foret.

Give the French of:—

Ripe, wall, owed, after, very, general, sure, or, upon, where, to, there, progress, success, believed, head, event, sincere.

THE ARTICLE.

23. The *Article* is a word placed before a noun to point out its gender or number, as well as to show the extent of its meaning.

The French definite article is *le*, before a masculine

noun; *la*, before a feminine noun (there is no neuter); *les*, in both genders in the plural. Example :—

le père,	the father.	*les enfants*,	the children.
la mère,	the mother.	*les femmes*,	the women.

NOTE.—The question of gender is very important, and will be dealt with in connection with the noun.

24. The articles *le* and *les* contract with the prepositions *de*, of, from, and *à*, to, at.

Singular.			*Plural.*	
Masc.	Fem.	Masc. and Fem.	Masc. and Fem.	
LE	LA	L'	LES	the.
DU	DE LA	DE L'	DES	of the.
AU	À LA	À L'	AUX	to the.

25. [The case of *à* is typical of many such changes in Old French; thus, *a le* became *al*, by broadening the sound (*cf* English walk, talk), *aul*; then the *l* became silent and was dropped, *au*. So also, *a les*, *als*, *auls* or *aulx*, and finally *aux*. *Le*, *la*, *les*, derive from the accusatives *illum*, *illam*, *illos*.]

26. LE, DU, AU, are used before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirated; as,

le père,	the father.	*le héros*,	the hero.
du frère,	of the brother.	*du hibou*,	of the owl.
au fils,	to the son.	*au hameau*,	to the hamlet.

EXERCISE 2.

The day.—Of the happiness.—To the pleasure.—The morning.—From the work.—To the evening.—The bread.—Of the brother.—To the father.—The paper.—Of the book.—In (*at*) the beginning.—From the desk.—The stick.—Of the soldier.—The monument.—To the master.

27. LA, DE LA, À LA, are used before a noun

feminine singular beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirated ; as,

la mère,	the mother.	*la haine,*	the hatred.
de la sœur,	of the sister.	*de la harpe,*	of the harp.
à la fille,	to the daughter.	*à la harangue,*	to the harangue.

EXERCISE 3.

The heat. — Of the law.—To the quality. — The prudence.—From the misery.—To the meadow.—Of the class. — The cellar. — To the Thames. — At the war.—From the stream.—The house.—The disgrace.—Of the hatred.—To the harp.—The politeness.—Of the magnificence.—To the goodness.

28. L', DE L', À L', are used before a noun masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute ; as,

l'ami, m.	the friend.	*l'homme,* m.	the man.
de l'ambition, f.	of the ambition.	*de l'histoire,* f.	of the history.
à l'enfant, m.	to the child.	*à l'honneur,* m.	to the honour.

EXERCISE 4.

The work.—Of the scholar.—The star.—To the clock.—From the apartment.—The friendship.—Of the bee.—To the officer.—The school.—Of the hope.—To the action.—Of the animal.—To the winter.—The horizon.—The history.—From the star.—At the eye.—The ignorance.—To the absence.—Of the affection.

29. LES, DES, AUX, are used before **any noun in the plural** (which is usually formed by adding *s*) ; as,

les enfants,	the children.	*les haches,*	the hatchets.
des maisons,	of the houses.	*des hommes,*	of the men.
aux lois,	to the laws.	*aux héros,*	to the heroes.

EXERCISE 5.

The hands.—Of the fingers.—To the children.—

The inscription.—Of the stuffs.—At the feet.—Of the rings.—To the tables.—The towns.—To the pencils.—From the rejoicings.—The festivals.—To the roads.—Of the winds.—The men.—From the villages.—To the poor (*pl.*)—The rules.—Of the forests.

30. The pupil must be careful to remember that DU, DES, AU, AUX, form the **contracted** or **compound article**; DU standing for *de le*, DES for *de les*, AU for *à le*, AUX for *à les*; which are not used, except as **pronouns before a verb**; as, *à le voir*, to see him.

31. The article is generally used with nouns taken in a complete sense, and is repeated before each. If accompanied by a preposition the latter is usually repeated also.

[The use of the article is one of the greatest difficulties in French. It will be dealt with in the Syntax.]

*L'*ignorance est *la* source *de l'*erreur, *de la* superstition, et *des* préventions *de l'*homme.	Ignorance is the source of the errors, superstition, and prejudices of man.

EXERCISE 6.

This exercise supposes the knowledge of the Present tense of avoir, *to have* (240). *The participles used will be found in the vocabulary.*

Peace has restored to the people calmness, tranquillity, and wealth. — He has learned chemistry, botany, and mathematics. — Gold and silver cannot (*ne peuvent*) make men happy.—The Egyptians trained up (*formaient*) their children to obedience, work, sobriety, disinterestedness, the love of arts or of letters, and the thirst of honour. — The fear of death is natural (*est naturelle*) to man.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE USED IN A PARTITIVE SENSE.

32. *Du, de la, de l', des,* are also used in a partitive sense, and then correspond to the English partitive

words *some* or *any*, expressed or understood ; but *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, must be repeated before every noun.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai *du* papier, *de la* cire à cacheter, *de l'*encre, et *des* plumes,	I have some paper, sealing wax, ink, and pens.
Avez-vous *des* enveloppes ?	Have you any envelopes ?

EXERCISE 7.

I have eaten some bread and butter. — He has drunk some cream or milk.—Have you taken sugar with your tea ?—I generally drink (*Je bois ordinairement*) water, sometimes beer, seldom wine. — Have you any change ?—We have taken some cheese and salad.—Have you put oil in your salad ?—Have they any pears to (*à*) give to the children ?—We have apples, pears, peaches, and apricots.—They have put salt in everything. — Have you brought any oil, vinegar, mustard, and pepper ?

33. When the noun, taken in a partitive sense, is preceded by an adjective, or comes after the verb conjugated negatively, the preposition *de* alone is used before it ; as,

Donnez-moi *de* bon pain,	Give me some good bread.
Je n'ai pas *de* couteau,	I have no knife.

EXERCISE 8.

For Possessive Adjectives (my, his, &c.), *see* 145.

This exercise supposes the knowledge of the Imperfect of avoir (240) *and the negative construction* (241, 275). Did *with an Infinitive is to be rendered by* have *with the Past Participle ; thus :* Did you see ? = Have you seen ? I did not take = I have not taken.

Add an **s** *to form the plural of nouns used here.*

I have brought some good bread. — We had no bread. — You have sold bad fish. — Did you see any

fine (*belles*) peaches in the garden?—He has bought very good cider in the south.—I had remarked some very handsome (*belles*) mirrors in his shop.—You have always some pretty (*jolies*) flowers in your room.—I have some fine (*beaux*) pencils in my writing-desk.—Mary, you have forgotten to put (*de mettre*) a knife on the table.

34. Most adverbs of quantity used before a noun require *de* and suppress the article; as, *beaucoup de fleurs* (not DES *fleurs*), many flowers. The question is treated in the Syntax (**528, 530**).

The following are some of the commonest :—

assez de,	enough.	*peu de,*	little, few.
trop de,	too much. / too many.	*trop peu de,*	too little. / too few.
beaucoup de,	much, many.	*combien de?*	how much? / how many?
plus de,	more.		

EXERCISE 9.

J'ai trop peu de loisir pour (*to*) entreprendre ce travail. — Vous n'avez pas mangé assez de légumes avec cette viande. — Combien de temps (*find right Eng. expression*) êtes-vous resté à Paris?—Ce médecin n'a pas assez d'argent pour acheter cette belle (*fine*) maison.—L'élève a fait trop de fautes dans ce thème. Nous avons peu d'amis à Londres.—Combien d'argent avez-vous dépensé pendant les vacances?—Nous avons dépensé beaucoup trop d'argent.

The boy has read too many novels during the holidays.—They have made few mistakes in that (*ce*) exercise.—How much bread had she ordered?—She had ordered too much bread, and too little fish. You have given much too much wine to the child. I have too little time to learn (*pour apprendre*) my (*mes*) lessons.—You had not given sugar enough (*get right order of words*) to the cook.—How many times did you meet that gentleman in (*at*) London?

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	
35.	UN	UNE	a *or* an.
	D'UN	D'UNE	of a *or* an.
	À UN	À UNE	to a *or* an.

EXAMPLES.

un livre, a book.	*une montre*, a watch.
d'un cahier, of a copy-book.	*d'une pendule*, of a clock.
à un libraire, to a bookseller.	*à une boutique*, to a shop.

EXERCISE 10.

Have you given a towel to the lady?—Have you a knife?—I have sold a table, an arm-chair, and a sofa to a friend.—Have you a pencil or a pen?—I have written a letter to a gentleman.—I have put the tumbler on the table.—She has not brought a plate.—A tailor has taken the shop.—They (*fem.*) have broken a slate.

36. NOTE.—The gender of French nouns is a matter of such importance and difficulty that great attention and care should be given to it if it is not to remain a continual stumbling-block.

37. Masculine and feminine are generally correctly used when applied to living beings; that is, nouns standing for a man or a male animal are masculine, while those which represent a woman or a female animal are feminine. Examples:—

le général,	the general.	*la servante*,	the servant.
le soldat,	the soldier.	*la fille*,	the daughter (girl)
le menuisier,	the joiner.	*la sœur*,	the sister.
le cheval,	the horse.	*la jument*,	the mare.
le taureau,	the bull.	*la vache*,	the cow.

38. There are some exceptions; the following are the commonest:—

FEM. NOUNS APPLIED TO MEN.		MASC. NOUNS APPLIED TO WOMEN.	
la sentinelle,	the sentinel.	*le témoin*,	the witness.
la vedette,	horse sentry.	*un ange*,	an angel.
la victime,	the victim.	*le médecin*,	the doctor.
la personne,	the person.	*le professeur*,	the teacher.
la dupe,	the dupe.	*un auteur*,	an author.
la bête,	the fool.	*un écrivain*,	a writer.
la recrue,	the recruit.	*un poète*,	a poet.
la canaille,	the rascal.	(*une poétesse*, also allowed).	

39. And also feminine nouns used as titles:—

Sa Majesté,	His Majesty.	*Son* Altesse*,	His Highness.
Sa Sainteté,	His Holiness.	*Sa Grandeur*,	His Lordship.
Sa Seigneurie,	His Lordship.		

* *Son*, before a vowel.

40. Many professions not commonly exercised by women have no feminine. If necessary we say:—

une femme auteur, an authoress.	(*Une doctoresse*, is used by students and in the daily press.)
une femme médecin, a lady doctor.	

41. There being no neuter in French, it follows that abstract nouns and names of inanimate objects must be either masculine or feminine. In many cases there is nothing for it but memory and the habit of learning nouns **with the article** to show their gender.

42 NOTE.—In nouns derived from the Latin the correct gender is generally preserved; *neuter* nouns become masculine; but there are so many exceptions that the principle is of little practical value, as will be seen from the following examples, chosen at random:—

LATIN.	FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
dens, m.	*la dent*, f.	the tooth.
favor, m.	*la faveur*, f.	favour.
finis, m.	*la fin*, f.	the end.
ars, f.	*l'art*, m.	art.
arbor, f.	*un arbre*, m.	a tree.
arma, neuter plu.	*les armes*, f.	arms, weapons.
cornu, n.	*la corne*, f.	the horn.
folium, n.	*la feuille*, f.	the leaf.

43. There are, however, rules and principles which apply to large groups of nouns with very few exceptions ; these the pupil should thoroughly master. For instance, there are hundreds of nouns formed by suffixes, each having its peculiar gender. To make a mistake in one of these is **unpardonable.**

Only leading rules, of wide application, and with few exceptions, will be given.

44. The following endings give masculine nouns, *and apply most strictly when the ending is a* **suffix** :— MENT, EAU, AGE, ISME.

le jugement, judgment.
le contentement, content.
un appartement, an apartment.

Except :—*la jument*, the mare, in which *ment* is not a suffix.

le château, the castle.
le bateau, the boat.
le veau, the calf, veal.
le tableau, the picture.
le gâteau, &c. the cake.

Except :—

la peau (pellis), the skin.
l'eau (aqua), water.
un âge, an age.

le feuillage, the foliage.
le passage, the passage.

Except :—

la cage (cavea), the cage.
une image (imago), an image, a picture.
la page (pagina), page (book).
la plage (plaga), the beach.
la rage (rabies), rage, hydrophobia.
à la nage, by swimming.

In these, *age* is not a suffix.

45. Words in AU, OU, EU, L, I, are also masculine.

le tuyau, the pipe (water, gas).
le noyau, the stone, of fruit.
le sou, the half-penny.
le trou, the hole.
le feu, the fire.
le cheveu, the (single) hair.
les cheveux, the hair. (collectively).

le bal, the ball (dance).
le principal, the principal.
le soleil, the sun.
le travail, the work.
le cri, the cry.
le pli, the fold, plait.
l'oubli, the forgetfulness.
le balai, the broom.
l'ennui, weariness.

Except :—*la merci*, mercy ; *la foi*, faith ; *la loi*, the law.

46. Rule.—Adjectives agree in gender with the noun they qualify; add **e** to form the feminine. With *être*, a participle agrees like an adjective.

EXERCISE 11.

The pupil will require the Present and Imperfect Indicative of être, *to be* (248) *and the negative construction, as in the case of* avoir.

I have been, *is* j'ai été, *and so on:* Have you been? avez-vous été?

La vedette a été tuée à son (*his*) poste.—Une personne est venue, monsieur.—Où est-elle (*he*)?—Elle est au salon.—Cette (*that*) femme est un auteur charmant.—Cette religieuse est un ange de bonté.—La jument est trop petite pour cette voiture.—Le feuillage était trop épais pour (*to*) laisser passer les rayons du soleil.—Le noyau de la pêche est fort dur.—La peau du chamois est très utile. — Ce mécanisme est fort compliqué.

The judgment is not just.—The cake is very large.—The leaf has (*is*) fallen.—The horn was black.—The end is come.—The tooth is bad (*gâté*).—I have heard a cry.—The broom has been broken.—The fire has been put out (*extinguished*).—The page is not very interesting.—He has been the victim of an accident.—The recruit is arrived.—He has (*is*) died of hydrophobia.—The work is finished.—The water is not pure.—The hole in the garden is very deep.—The sun was bright.—The boat is on the lake.—The person has gone (*is departed*).

47. Most monosyllabic nasals are masculine.

le pont,	the bridge.	*le soin,*	care.
le son,	the sound.	*le coin,*	the corner.
le don,	the gift.	*le sang,*	blood.
le pain,	bread, the loaf.	Exceptions :—	
le vin,	wine.		
le sein,	the breast.	*la fin,*	the end.
le lien,	the bond.	*la faim,*	hunger.
le foin,	hay.	*la main,*	the hand.

48. The following endings are feminine:—SION, TION, XION, AISON, ÇON, URE.

une occasion,	an occasion, or opportunity.	*la prévention,*	prejudice, accusation (law).
la proportion,	proportion.	*la réflexion,*	reflection.
la nation,	the nation.		
l'attention,	attention.	*un bastion* (only exception).	

This is a very numerous class. (Latin—tio, tionis.)

la maison,	the house.	*la rançon,*	the ransom.
la raison,	the reason.	*la flétrissure,*	the blight.
la saison,	the season.	*la coupure,*	the cut.
la terminaison,	termination.	*la brûlure,*	the burn.
la leçon,	the lesson.	*la fourrure,*	fur.

49. Also nouns in TTE, SSE, LLE, NNE.

la hutte,	the hut.	*la cuirasse,*	breast-plate, armour-plate.
la lutte,	the struggle.	*la bille,*	the marble, billiard ball.
la botte,	the boot, bundle, bunch.	*la ville,*	the town.
la latte,	the lath (strip of wood).	*la paille,*	the straw.
la natte,	the plait (of straw, hair).	*la merveille,*	the wonder, marvel.
la fourchette,	the table-fork.	*la nouvelle,*	the news.
la fillette,	the little girl.	*la semelle,*	the sole (of a boot).
la maisonnette,	the little house.	*la manne,*	manna.
la sagesse,	wisdom.	Exceptions:—	
la paresse,	laziness.	*le squelette,*	the skeleton.
la bassesse,	baseness.	*le carrosse,*	coach (private).
la paillasse,	the straw mattress.	*un intervalle,*	an interval.

50. RULE.—Adjectives agree with the noun they qualify in number as well as in gender. Add **s** for the plural of both nouns and adjectives, **e** for the feminine of an adjective, and **es** to agree with a feminine plural noun. Participles with *être* agree in the same way. Remember that a compound tense of *être* is *être*, not *avoir*; as, *Les lattes ont été cassées.*—The laths have been broken; *cassé, broken,* takes **es** to agree with *lattes, fem. plur.*

EXERCISE 12.

Future of avoir, *and* être *and Past Participle* eu, *had.*

La bassesse de cette action a indigné le roi.—La lutte a été terrible, mais la ville est sauvée.—La cuirasse de ce vaisseau est très forte. — La nouvelle de cette merveille est arrivée hier soir.—Mon père a loué une maisonnette à (*in*) la campagne.—Le sang de nos (*our*) soldats sera vengé.—La saison sera froide.—Ils ont reçu les dons des Grecs avec méfiance.—L'enfant avait un pain à la (*in his*) main.—Le fermier aura rentré les foins (*singular in English*) avant la fin de la semaine.—Le nouveau pont sur la rivière sera beau et solide.—Les nouvelles de l'étranger ne sont pas rassurantes.

The wisdom of his conduct is acknowledged by (*de*) everybody. The new coach of the ambassador will be ready by (*at*) the end of the week.—The skeleton of the victim of that (*ce*) terrible crime has been found in a hole in the garden.—The soles of your boots are worn.—I have seen the little [girl] at the corner of the street.—Have you heard the news (*singular*)?—The ransom of the prisoners will be paid to-morrow.—The [billiard] balls have been lost.—The farmer will have some straw when the corn is (*will be*) thrashed.—Those (*ces*) bunches of hay (*no article*) will be given to the cows.—The interval has been very long.

51. The following are also feminine :—ÉE.

la pensée,	the thought, the pansy.	*la bouchée,*	the mouthful (solid).
la destinée,	destiny, fate.	*la gorgée,*	the mouthful (liquid).
la portée,	the range, reach.		
l'arrivée,	the arrival.	*l'entrée,*	entrance.

52. Except a few from Latin neuters in *ium, eum* :—

le musée,	the museum, picture gallery.	l'Elysée,	Elysium.
le lycée,	the secondary school, lyceum.	l'Elysée,	the official residence of the President of the Republic.
le colisée,	the coliseum.	le trophée,	the trophy.

53. RIE, expressing trades and arts, and the places in which they are carried on :—

la boulangerie,	the baker's shop, &c.	*une épicerie*,	a grocer's shop, grocery.
une imprimerie,	a printing office.	*une scierie*,	a sawmill.
la librairie,	the book trade, shop, &c.	*la menuiserie*,	wood-work, &c. joinery.

54. Abstract nouns in EUR, TÉ (often derived from adjectives), TIÉ.

la faveur,	the favour.	*un honneur*,	honour.
la fureur,	fury.	*le labeur*,	toil.
la terreur,	terror.		
la peur,	fear.	*la bonté*,	kindness, goodness.
la largeur,	width, breadth.	*la fermeté*,	firmness.
la douceur,	mildness, gentleness, sweetness.	*la majesté*,	majesty.
la hauteur,	height, haughtiness.	*la simplicité*,	simplicity.
	Except :—	*la pitié*,	pity.
le bonheur,	happiness, luck.	*l'amitié*,	friendship.
le malheur,	misfortune.	*la moitié*,	the half.
			&c.

55. ANCE, ENCE, ENSE (Latin, antia, entia).

la constance,	constancy.	*la complaisance*,	obligingness.
la présence,	presence.	*la suffisance*,	sufficiency, self-
l'absence,	absence.		

Except *le silence* (silentium), silence.

EXERCISE 13.

In asking a question with a noun for subject, the noun and auxiliary must not be inverted as in English; *e.g.*, Has the joiner finished? we CANNOT *say*, A le menuisier fini? *In ordinary conversation the commonest way is to begin with* Est-ce que? = Is it that? *thus*, Est-ce que le menuisier a fini? *Notice that the rest of the sentence remains in the affirmative form. Remember the agreement of adjectives and participles after* être.

Ce pauvre homme n'a pas mangé une bouchée de pain de la journée (*to-day*; *since morning*).—J'ai deux frères au lycée de cette ville.—Les naufragés n'avaient pas bu une gorgée d'eau de (*for*) trois jours.—Est-ce

que ce navire est hors de la portée des canons du fort ?—Le Président de la République a donné un grand bal à l'Elysée.—Est-ce que cette grande librairie a été vendue ?—Sa Majesté a eu le malheur de tomber de cheval aujourd'hui.—Sa Sainteté a envoyé une rose d'or à la reine d'Espagne.—Est-ce que notre hôtesse aura la complaisance d'excuser ma courte absence ?—Ce jeune homme a eu le bonheur de (*to*) trouver une place dans cette grande scierie.—Est-ce que l'enfant a eu peur (*has been afraid*) du chien ?—C'est (*it is*) un grand honneur pour moi.—Le paysan a eu le malheur de perdre le fruit de son labeur.

We must (*On doit*) treat (*the*) children with (*a*) great kindness, but also with much firmness.—Have his (*ses*) misfortunes (cast down) his pride ?—Has the thought of the absence of your (*votre*) mother not saddened your sister ? (Begin with *Est-ce que*, and construct as if negative.)—Is the baker's shop open ?—Yes, it (*she*) is open.—The constancy of Rome had astonished her (*ses*) enemies.—Is your brother still (*toujours*) at school ? (*at the lyceum*).—His Majesty has not noticed the presence of your Highness.—Have your (*vos*) friends visited the museum (picture gallery) of Brussels ?—I have eaten (a few) (*quelques*) mouthfuls of bread, and I have drunk a mouthful of wine.—The haughtiness of the Duke has been noticed and blamed by (*of*) everybody.

56. The gender of some nouns is determined by their meaning : — Metals, Months, Days of the Week, Seasons, Trees (*contrary to the Latin fem.*), Cardinal Points are **Masculine** :—

le fer,	iron.	**janvier.**	**juillet.**
le cuivre,	copper.	**février.**	**août.**
l'or,	gold.	**mars.**	**septembre.**
l'argent,	silver, *money.*	**avril.**	**octobre.**
l'acier,	steel.	**mai.**	**novembre.**
l'étain,	tin.	**juin.**	**décembre.**

dimanche, Sunday.

lundi,	Monday.	**jeudi,**	Thursday.
mardi,	Tuesday.	**vendredi,**	Friday.
mercredi,	Wednesday.	**samedi,**	Saturday.

NOTE.—Names of months and days are written with a small letter in French.

le printemps,	spring.	**l'automne,**	autumn.
l'été,	summer.	**l'hiver,**	winter.

NOTE.—*L'automne* is sometimes found in the fem.

le chêne,	the oak.	*le bouleau,*	the birch.
le hêtre,	the beech.	*le pin,*	the pine.

NOTE.—Many trees named from their fruits, take *ier* or *er* after *ch* and *g*:—

le cerisier,	the cherry tree.	*l'oranger,*	the orange tree.
le poirier,	the pear tree.	*le pêcher,*	the peach tree.
le prunier,	the plum tree.	*le noyer,*	the walnut tree
le pommier,	the apple tree.	(from *noix* by contraction).	

La vigne, the vine; *l'aubépine*, the hawthorn, and a few rarer trees, are fem.

le nord,	north.	*l'est,**	east.
le sud,	south.	*l'ouest,**	west.
le midi,	the south part of a country.	* Pronounce all the letters.	

REMARK.—There is a nautical pronunciation of the cardinal points, about which the pupil need not trouble himself at this stage.

57. COUNTRIES, FLOWERS, FRUITS, ending in E mute are **feminine**; all other endings are **masculine.**

Countries take the article, which, however, is often suppressed. See Syntax (518).

la France,	France.	*la rose,*	the rose.
la Suisse,	Switzerland.	*la tulipe,*	the tulip.
la Russie,	Russia.	*la marguerite,*	the daisy.
l'Angleterre,	England.	*la pensée,*	the pansy.
*l'Ecosse,**	Scotland.	*la bruyère,*	the heather.
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

* L'Ecosse should have an acute on E, but accents are not generally written on capitals.

la pomme,	the apple.
la cerise,	the cherry.
la pêche,	the peach.
une orange,	an orange.
la prune,	the plum.
la poire,	the pear.
&c.	&c.

though the trees are masc.

Not ending in *e* mute, therefore masculine :—

le Portugal,	Portugal.
le Danemark,	Denmark.
le Brésil,	Brazil.
le Pérou,	Peru.
le Canada,	Canada.
&c.	&c.

Masculine :—

le géranium,	the geranium.
le fuchsia (pr. *fux-si-a*),	the fuchsia.
le réséda,	mignonette.
&c.	&c.

l'ananas,	the pine-apple.
le raisin,	the grape.
l'abricot,	the apricot.
&c.	&c.

There are very few exceptions; the following may be mentioned :—

le Bengale (pr. *Bingale*).	*le Mexique,* Mexico (country).
le Hanovre, Hanover.	*la noix,* the walnut.

58. Note.—Names of towns, as a rule, do not take the article, and their gender is *very unsettled*. There is a strong tendency to make them masculine in ordinary conversation, except, perhaps, *Rome,* which is always fem., and of course the few which take the fem. article. In literature, especially poetry, many towns are made fem. even when they end in a consonant. Thus we find :—*"Heureuse Orléans!" "Malheureuse Tyr!"* &c. In cases of doubt, use *La ville de* —— with a fem. agreement.

59. The following towns take the article (see 514) :—

Le Havre,	*Havre.*
Le Caire,	*Cairo.*
La Rochelle,	*Rochelle.*
La Haye,	*the Hague.*

La Havane,	*Havana.*
La Nouvelle-Orléans,	*New Orleans.*
La Mecque,	*Mecca.*

And many small towns and villages in France.

Note.—The mas. art. contracts in the usual way :—*au Havre, du Caire.*

60. Most large rivers of the world are masculine,

except those of France, Britain, and Russia, which are very arbitrary.

Masc.	Fem.
le Danube.	*la Loire.*
le Rhône.	*la Charente.*
le Rhin (Rhine).	*la Seine.*
le Nil (Nile).	*la Garonne.*
le Tibre.	*la Tamise* (Thames).
le Volga.	*la Clyde.*
&c.	&c.

The subject of gender is not nearly exhausted, but the preceding observations must suffice for the present. An observant pupil will notice further groupings and tendencies for himself. The formation of the fem. from the masc. in names of living beings will be noticed after the formation of the plural. For words of double gender, see Syntax (539-46).

EXERCISE 14.

Remember the forms of the Article, *and the rules for the* Partitive Article. *After* en (*into*), *omit the article before fem. names of countries. Present Tense of verbs of 1st conj. in* er, *and 2nd plur. of imperative in* ez. *Agreement of adjectives and participles,* Donnez-moi, *give me*; Achetez-nous, *buy* (*for*) *us.*

Ce fabricant a acheté du fer en Suède.—Le Danube est un beau fleuve. — Envoyez-moi une livre de raisins et un ananas.—Donnez-nous quelques pêches s'il vous plaît (*if you please*).—La Clyde n'est pas un très grand fleuve, mais Glasgow est un port de mer important.—Mon cousin est parti pour le Brésil samedi dernier.—Ce monsieur est arrivé du Havre hier.—Cette montagne est couverte de (*with*) grands pins.—Le vieux bouleau devant l'école est (*has*) tombé pendant la tempête.—La France n'a plus (*no longer*) le Rhin pour frontière.—J'ai voyagé en Suisse tout l'été dernier.—Cette vieille (*old*) femme donne souvent de belles pensées à ma mère.

I often travel (*travel often*) in France and Belgium.—We always spend (*spend always*) the winter in the South of France.—Give me some ripe peaches (*peaches ripe*).—The child is looking for (*seeks*) fallen apples (*apples fallen*) in the garden.—The old beech tree before the church has (*is*) fallen during the storm.—My father started (*is departed*) for Cairo in (*at*) the month of January.—There is much heather on these (*ces*) mountains; it is in flower just now (*en ce moment*).—My uncle has some tall walnut-trees in his orchard, but the nuts are not yet ripe.—Formerly they found (*on trouvait*) much gold in Peru.—Buy us a large pine-apple when you go (*irez*) to (the) market.

EXERCISE 15.

Revise all the foregoing rules, and determine the gender of the following nouns by placing the Definite or Indefinite Article before them. In the case of l', *show gender by writing* masc. *or* fem. *after the noun.*

A clod, *motte*; (the) coral, *corail*; the game, *jeu*; the bet, *pari*; the shovel, *pelle*; the mêlée, *mêlée*; (the) treacle, *mélasse*; (the) slander, *médisance*; (the) medicine, *médicament*; (the) meditation, *méditation*; a belief, *croyance*; a chisel, *ciseau*; (the) blacking, *cirage*; a field, *champ*; a canal, *canal*; a cradle, *berceau*; a crutch, *béquille*; a napkin, *serviette*; the session, *session*; a hall, *salle*; the beach, *plage*; the weakness, *faiblesse*; the museum, *musée*; the spoonful, *cuillerée*; the sea-passage, *traversée*; (the) zinc, *zinc*; a tunnel, *tunnel*; the rank, *rang*; the dot, *point*; the poverty, *pauvreté*; a paw, *patte*; the tone, *ton*; the mount, *mont*; a pond, *étang*; a scaffold, *échafaud.*

The following countries require the article, put *masc.* or *fem.* :—*Amérique, Afrique, Europe, Prusse, Normandie, Chine, Egypte, Grèce, Turquie, Japon, Chili, Hollande* (*h* asp.), *Espagne* (Spain). The Mississippi, *Mississipi*; the Ganges, *Gange*; the Seine, *Seine*; the Rhine, *Rhin*; the Tagus, *Tage.*

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

61. The *Demonstrative Adjectives* are always joined to a noun, and agree with it in gender and number.

Singular.		*Plural.*
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.* and *Fem.*
CE, CET, CETTE, this *or* that.		CES, these *or* those.

We use CET instead of *ce* before a noun masc. and sing. beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as, *cet arbre*—this tree; *cet homme*—this man; but *ce grand arbre* — that tall tree; *ce jeune homme* — that young man.

[*Ce, cet, cette,* derive from Latin *ecce, iste*; Old French *icist, icest*; then *cest, cet*; then *t* silent, and dropped before a consonant in the masc.]

62. The demonstrative adjectives are repeated before every noun, agreeing with each in gender and number.

NOTE.—The use of *ci* and *là* after the noun will be explained later on. (212).

EXERCISE 16.

Remember plural *s* to nouns and adjectives.

That child.—Those children.—That tree.—That tall tree.—Those trees are tall.—That orange.—That fine (*belle*) orange.—That orange tree.—Those orange trees.—That man.—That great man.—Those men.

THE NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

63. We have already seen that the plural of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; as,

le frère,	the brother.	*les frères,*	the brothers.
la sœur,	the sister.	*les sœurs,*	the sisters.
l'enfant,	the child.	*les enfants,*	the children.

[This *s* comes from the Latin *plural accusative*, which ends in *as, os, es, us*, in the different declensions.]

EXCEPTIONS.

64. Nouns ending in *s, x, z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural ; as,

le fils,	the son.	*les fils*,	the sons.
la voix,	the voice.	*les voix*,	the voices.
le nez,	the nose.	*les nez*,	the noses.

EXERCISE 17.

The stars of the firmament.—The fruits of the garden.—The forests of America.—The lions and the tigers.—The lakes of Scotland.—The towns of France (*no art.*).—The clocks of the town.—The victories of our armies.—The progress (*pl.*) of your pupils.—The marshes.—The padlocks of our trunks.—The mattresses of our beds.—The crosses of the legion of honour.—The arms of the Seine.

65. Nouns ending in the singular in *au, eu*, take an *x* instead of an *s* in the plural ; as,

le tableau,	the picture.	*les tableaux*,	the pictures.
le bateau,	the boat.	*les bateaux*,	the boats.
le jeu,	the game.	*les jeux*,	the games.
le feu,	the fire.	*les feux*,	the fires.

66. The following nouns in *ou* take also an *x* in the plural, the others follow the general rule :—

le bijou,	the jewel.	**les bijoux**,	the jewels.
le caillou,	the pebble.	**les cailloux**,	the pebbles.
le chou,	the cabbage.	**les choux**,	the cabbages.
le genou,	the knee.	**les genoux**,	the knees.
le hibou,	the owl.	**les hiboux**,	the owls.
le joujou,	the plaything.	**les joujoux**,	the playthings.

NOTE.—In Old French, *s, x*, and *z* were often used indiscriminately. The *x* in these words represents *s*.

EXERCISE 18.

There is no Possessive Case *in French. Turn* "the child's toys" *into "the toys of the child."*

In conversational style, turn simple past tenses into the compound form: thus, he saw = he has seen; they brought = they have brought; I wrote = I have written.

Light the torches.—Where are my brushes?—He broke the stick into several pieces.—He bought (*some*) beautiful jewels.—Did you hear the owls?—Give me a few (*quelques*) pence.—They dug many (*several*) holes. — The town is filled with pick-pockets.—Put (*some*) bolts to this (*cette*) door.—The little girl's hair (*plur.*) is very long.—Have you visited those places? (*lieu*).—The guide has shown the king's castles to the tourists.—He had (*Imperfect*) a child on his (*the*) knees.

67. Most nouns ending in *al* form their plural by changing *al* into *aux* ; as,

le mal,	the evil	**les maux,**	the evils *or* ills.
le cheval,	the horse	**les chevaux,**	the horses.

[In Old French these nouns formed their plural regularly by adding *s*—*mals, chevals* ; it was about the 13th century that these forms were corrupted into *maux* and *chevaux.* (**25.**) The same change of *l* into *u* is found in many words ; as, *le saumon,* the salmon ; *le veau,* the veal (calf) ; *le fou,* the fool (madman).]

68. The following nouns take *s* in the plural:—

le bal,	the ball (dance).	**les bals,**	the balls.
le chacal,	the jackal.	**les chacals,**	the jackals.
le carnaval,	the carnival.	**les carnavals,**	the carnivals.
le régal,	the treat.	**les régals,**	the treats.
le cal,	the callosity.	*le nopal,*	the nopal.
le narval,	the sword-fish.	*le serval,*	the tiger-cat.

69. Seven words in *ail* also change into *aux* in the plural—

un bail,	a lease,	*des baux.*
le corail,	the coral,	*les coraux.*
un émail,	an enamel,	*des émaux.*
un soupirail,	an air-hole, cellar, or dungeon window,	*des soupiraux.*
*le travail,**	work, labour	*les travaux.*
le vantail,	the leaf of a folding-door.	*les vantaux.*
un vitrail,	a stained glass window,	*des vitraux.*

70. All the other nouns in *ail* take *s* :—

un détail,	a detail.	*des détails,*	details, particulars.
le gouvernail,	the helm, rudder.	*les gouvernails,*	helms.
un éventail,	a fan.	*des éventails,*	fans.

71. *Aïeul, ciel, œil* have two plurals.

un aïeul,	a grandfather. (Not used in the singular in the sense of *ancestor*; say, *un ancêtre*).	*des aïeuls,* / *des aïeux,*	grandfathers. / ancestors, forefathers.
le ciel,	the sky, heaven.	*les cieux,*	skies, heavens.
le ciel de lit,	the bed tester.	*les ciels de lit,* / *les ciels,*	testers. / also as an artist's term—skies in a painting.
l'œil,	the eye (organ of vision).	*les yeux,*	the eyes.
l'œil-de-bœuf,	the round window.	*les œils-de-bœuf,*	round windows.

Also in other compounds ; as, *les œils-de-chat,* cat's eyes (stones) ; *les œils-de-perdrix,* soft corns.

Note.—*Un aïeul* and *une aïeule* are much less familiar than *grand-père* and *grand'mère*. *Le bétail,* singular, and *les bestiaux,* plural, both mean *cattle.*

Remark.—Practically, as in the above examples, *des* is the plural of *un* or *une.*

* The regular plural, *les travails*—the reports of a minister of state, or a brake for shoeing restive horses, is hardly worth mentioning ; it is more often seen in examination papers than in French books and journals.

The plural of compound and proper nouns is treated in the Syntax. **(559.)**

EXERCISE 19.

He was brought before the court (*tribunals*).—The canals are a source of riches (*sing.*) to (*for*) the state.—He gave two grand balls this winter.—Have you heard the particulars of that affair?—Those ladies have lost their fans in the crowd.—The skies present the most beautiful of (the) spectacles to the eyes of man.—The admirals have been well received.—That church has (some) fine (*beau*) stained glass windows.—The helms of both (*of the two*) ships are broken.—The generals of the two armies have been killed.—A little (*un peu d'*) air and light entered (*Imp.*) his dungeon by two grated windows. — The cattle have suffered from the drought.—My grandfather has sore eyes (*ill to the eyes*).—Phaeton was very proud of his ancestors.

Formation of the Feminine of Titles, Professions, &c.

72. General Rule.—Add *e* to the masculine.

le marquis,	the marquis.	*la marquise,*	the marchioness.
le châtelain,	the lord of the manor.	*la châtelaine,*	the lady of the manor.
le sultan,	the sultan.	*la sultane,*	the sultana.
le Français,	the Frenchman.	*la Française,*	the Frenchwoman.
le Danois,	the Dane.	*la Danoise,*	the Danish ,,
l'orphelin,	the orphan.	*l'orpheline,*	the orphan girl.
un ami,	a friend.	*une amie,*	a lady friend.
	&c.		&c.

73. Nouns in *en* or *on,* double the *n*.

un lion,	a lion.	*une lionne,*	a lioness.
le baron,	the baron.	*la baronne,*	the baroness.
un Européen,	a European.	*une Européenne,*	European woman, or lady.
un Italien,	an Italian.	*une Italienne,*	an Italian ,,
le Prussien,	the Prussian.	*la Prussienne,*	the Prussian ,,
Also:—			
le paysan,	the peasant.	*la paysanne,*	the peasant ,,

74. Nouns ending in *er* require a grave accent (see **18**).

l'étranger,	the stranger, / the foreigner,	*l'étrangère.*
le fruitier,	the fruiterer,	*la fruitière.*
l'épicier,	the grocer,	*l'épicière.*
le fermier,	the farmer,	*la fermière.*
le jardinier,	the gardener,	*la jardinière.*
&c.		&c.

75. Note.—Many of these nouns are also used as adjectives. Those derived from names of nations, or any other proper noun, must be written with a small letter; in fact, no adjective takes a capital letter in French:—

la nation française,	the French nation.
une langue étrangère,	a foreign language.

76. Remark.—Feminine nouns, such as *fermière, jardinière,* often only mean the *wife of* ——; thus, *the farmer's wife, the gardener's wife. Une épicière* may be a grocer's wife, or a woman keeping a grocer's shop.

Note also that the words *boy* and *girl* are often rendered by placing *petit,* masc.; *petite,* fem., before the noun; *e.g.,* a peasant boy, *un petit paysan*; a peasant girl, *une petite paysanne.*

77. A score of nouns in *e,* add *esse* for the *fem.*; as,

un tigre,	a tiger.	*une tigresse,*	a tigress.
un hôte,	a host (also guest).	*une hôtesse,*	a hostess.

Notice the change of accent in,

un nègre,	a negro.	**une négresse,**	a negress.
un prophète,	a prophet.	**une prophétesse,**	a prophetess.

78. Note.—The following remain unchanged in the *fem.* when used as adjectives:—

un Suisse,	a Swiss.	*une Suissesse,*	a Swiss woman or girl.
un pauvre,	a poor man. / a beggar.	*une pauvresse,*	a poor woman.
un nègre,	a negro.	*une négresse,*	a negress.

but we say, *une famille pauvre,* a poor family ; *une ville suisse,* a Swiss town ; *la race nègre,* the negro race.

79. The following also take *esse* :—

un pair,	a peer.	*une pairesse,*	a peeress.
un abbé,	an abbot (also often a tutor).	*une abbesse,*	an abbess.
un dieu,	a god.	*une déesse,*	a goddess.
un duc,	a duke.	*une duchesse,*	a duchess.

EXERCISE 20.

Est-ce que la fruitière a acheté des ananas à (*from*) l'étrangère.—La pauvre paysanne a vendu sa vache au fermier.—La baronne est Italienne (*supply article*). —Ma petite amie est orpheline (*art.*).—La jardinière est (*has*) allée à la ville pour (*to*) acheter du thé et du sucre chez l'épicière. — Une langue étrangère est toujours difficile à apprendre.—Cette jeune Suissesse est la bonne d'enfants de ma tante.—Nous avons donné un franc à une pauvresse qui demandait (*was asking*) l'aumône à la porte de l'église.—Cet enfant est très faible, on lui fait boire (*they make him drink*) du lait d'ânesse pour le fortifier.

The marchioness was (has been ; *remember agreement*) introduced to the lady of the manor.—She is [a] foreigner.—The peasant girl has (*is*) come to sell milk and eggs (*remember that the sense is partitive*).—That (*ce*) picture represents a Swiss landscape (*adj. last.*). Minerva was (*Imp.*) the goddess of wisdom.—That little girl (*use diminutive*) is my daughter's friend.—Did you see the farmer's wife at (the) church yesterday ?—The foreign [ladies] have (*are*) gone [to] see the animals at the Zoological Gardens (*du jardin d'acclimatation*).

80. Nouns in *eur* are of three classes.

Those derived from the Present Participle of French verbs, as :—*parlant,* speaking ; *parleur,* speaker ; they form their *fem.* by changing *eur* into *euse* ; they are

very numerous and useful, and many are also used as adjectives.

un nageur,	a swimmer,	**une nageuse.**
un mangeur,	an eater,	**une mangeuse.**
un voyageur,	a traveller, passenger,	**une voyageuse.**

81. NOTE.—In these words, *se* is a contraction of the *csse* ending, which was much more general in Old French than it is at the present day. The longer form, *eresse,* is still found in the following classic words and law terms:—

bailleur,	lessor (*bail,* a lease),	*bailleresse.*
demandeur,	plaintiff,	*demanderesse.*
défendeur,	defendant,	*défenderesse.*
vendeur,	seller,	*venderesse* (in a deed).
enchanteur,	enchanter (enchanting),	*enchanteresse.*
vengeur,	avenger (avenging),	*vengeresse*
chasseur,	hunter,	*chasseresse* (classic).
pécheur,	sinner,	*pécheresse.*

REMARK.—*Un vendeur,* a shop assistant, a salesman, has *une vendeuse,* a saleswoman; a lady hunting is *une chasseuse* in ordinary parlance.

82. Avoid confusing *un pêcheur,* a fisher, fisherman (*pêcher*—to fish), *une pêcheuse,* a woman fishing, with *un pécheur, une pécheresse* (as above—from *pécher,* to sin). Notice also the following confusing words:—*le péché,* the sin; *la pêche,* the fishing, catch, draught of fishes; *la Pêche Miraculeuse*; *faire une bonne pêche*; *la pêche,* the peach; *un pêcher,* a peach-tree.

Aimez-vous la pêche? Do you like fishing?
Aimez-vous les pêches? Are you fond of peaches?

83. Nouns deriving direct from the Latin change *eur* into *rice.*

	LATIN.	FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
masc.	**lector,**	*lecteur,*	reader.
fem.	**(lectrix)**		
acc.	**lectricem,**	*lectrice,*	lady reader.
masc.	**creator,**	*créateur,*	creator.
fem.	**creatricem,**	*créatrice,*	
masc.	**accusator,**	*accusateur,*	accuser.
fem.	**accusatricem,**	*accusatrice,*	
	&c.	&c.	

IMPORTANT NOTE.—If the noun form does not correspond exactly with the French verb, the fem. *cannot be* EUSE. Thus, *accusateur* does not correspond with *accuser, accusant*, therefore the *fem.* MUST BE *accusatrice.*

84. NOTE.—*Chanteur,* singer, gives *chanteuse* in the usual way, but the Italian form, *cantatrice,* is used for celebrated operatic singers.

Empereur, emperor, has **impératrice.** Notice that the *masc.* form is corrupt, whereas the *fem.* is pure Latin. The adjective is *impérial,* as in English. *Ambassadeur* has also *ambassadrice. Gouverneur,* governor, has *gouvernante;* and *serviteur,* servant, *servante,* from the *masc.* forms, *gouvernant,* and *servant,* now only used in restricted senses.

85. We have already seen that many words in *eur* have no *fem.*; such are, *auteur, imprimeur, docteur, graveur,* &c., they must not be confused with words of *common gender,* which become feminine without change of form; as, *un enfant,* une enfant*; *mon camarade, ma camarade; le pupille,* the ward, *la pupille*; *un élève,* a pupil, *une élève*; *un* or *une esclave,* a slave; *un* or *une artiste*; *le* or *la malade,* the patient; *mon* or *ma compatriote,* my fellow-countryman or woman, &c.

86. Proper names form their *fem.* in various ways:—

Louis,	Lewis.	*Louise,*	Louisa.
Jean,	John.	*Jeanne,*	Jane.
Auguste,	Augustus.	*Augustine,*	Augusta.
Léon,		*Léontine.*	

Many are confined to one sex.; as, *Félix, Berthe.*

87. Classic names of both genders in *o* form *on* in French (again a trace of the accusative case).

Néron,	Nero.	*Pluton,*	Pluto.
Junon,	Juno.	*Cicéron,*	Cicero.
Apollon,	Apollo.	*Caton,*	Cato.
&c.		&c.	

* *Enfants,* pl., is *masc.* only, even in speaking of a class of girls.

88. The following list of very common words will prove useful:—

le neveu,	the nephew.	*la nièce*,	the niece.
le cousin,	the cousin.	*la cousine*.	
le mari,	the husband.	*la femme*,	the wife (also woman).
le marié,	the bridegroom.	*la mariée*,	the bride.
le veuf,	the widower.	*la veuve*,	the widow.
le héros,	the hero.	*l'héroïne*,	the heroine.
le compagnon,	the companion.	*la compagne*,	companion, wife, schoolfellow.
l'oncle,	the uncle.	*la tante*,	the aunt.
le roi,	the king.	*la reine*,	the queen.
un monsieur,	a gentleman.	*une dame*, / *une demoiselle*,	a lady. / a young lady.
monsieur,	sir, Mr.	*Madame*, / *Mademoiselle*,	Madam, Mrs. / Miss.
un petit-fils,	a grandson.	*une petite-fille*,	granddaughter.
un beau-père,	a father-in-law, stepfather.	*une belle-mère*,	mother-in-law, stepmother.
un beau-fils, / *un gendre*,	a son-in-law.	*une belle-fille*, / *une bru* (little used),	a daughter-in-law.
papa,	papa.	*maman*,	mamma.
grand-père,	grandfather.	*grand'mère*,	grandmother.
le parrain,	the godfather.	*la marraine*,	the godmother.
le canard,	the drake (duck in a general sense).	*la cane*,	the duck (female bird).
le coq,	the cock.	*la poule*,	the hen.
le dindon,	the turkey.	*la dinde*.	
le loup,	the wolf.	*la louve*,	she-wolf.
le bélier,	the ram.	*la brebis*,	ewe, sheep.
le mouton,	the sheep.		(poetic.)
(*du mouton*,	mutton).		
le taureau,	the bull.	*la vache*,	the cow.
le bœuf,	the ox.		
(*du bœuf*,	beef.)		
le serin,	the canary.	*la serine*,	hen canary.

89. Many names of animals have an arbitrary gender; as, *la panthère*, the panther; *la baleine*, the whale; *le cygne*, the swan; *la grive*, the thrush. The words *mâle* and *femelle* are used if necessary to distinguish; as, *le mâle de la panthère, une panthère mâle*; *la femelle du cygne, un cygne femelle*.

EXERCISE 21.

La fille de ma voisine est vendeuse dans un grand magasin du boulevard.—Mon parrain est acheteur pour une maison de soieries de Lyon.—La brebis bête parce qu'elle a perdu son petit agneau.—Le pécheur craint (*fears*) la justice vengeresse de Dieu.—J'ai rencontré ma marraine et sa bru (belle-fille) à la foire au pain d'épices.—Est-ce que le chef de train a emporté le colis que (*which*) la voyageuse avait laissé sur la banquette ?—Cette jeune fille est ma pupille.

My neighbour's son is [a] printer, and his daughter is [a] laundress.—Has [2] your godmother given [3] you [1] a present for your birthday (*Saint day*)?—My godfather is very fond of fishing (*likes much the fishing*).—The farmer's wife has sent twenty hens to the market.—Four travellers were (*have been*) hurt in that railway accident.—That (*ce*) paper has many lady readers.—The empress gave a handsome necklace to the actress.—Cicero was a great orator, and Nero a cruel emperor.—That pretty child (*fem.*) is the grocer's niece.

THE ADJECTIVE.

90. We have already seen that Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns or pronouns to which they relate; as,

Un homme prudent, *masc. sing.*	A prudent man.
Une femme prudente, *fem. sing.*	A prudent woman.
Ils sont prudents, *masc. plur.*	They (*m.*) are prudent.
Elles sont prudentes, *fem. plur.*	They (*f.*) are prudent.

Formation of the Feminine.

91. General Rule.—The feminine gender of adjectives is formed by adding *e* mute to the singular masculine; as,

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
savant,	savante,	learned.	vrai,	vraie,	true.
carré,	carrée,	square.	poli,	polie,	polite.

92. Adjectives ending in *e* mute remain the same in the feminine; as,

Un homme habile,	A clever man.
Une femme habile,	A clever woman.

93. Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ien, on, ot,* and *et,* double the last consonant and take *e* mute after it; as,

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
cruel,	*cruelle,*	cruel.	*sot,*	*sotte,*	foolish, silly.
tel,	*telle,*	such.*	*muet,*	*muette,*	dumb.
pareil,	*pareille,*	similar.	*sujet,*	*sujette,*	subject.
ancien,	*ancienne,*	ancient.	but :—		
bon,	*bonne,*	good.	**prêt,**	**prête,**	**ready,**
net,	*nette,*	clean.		on account of *ê.*	

94. Note.—Eight in *et* make *ète* :—

Masc.	Fem.	
complet,	*complète,*	complete.
incomplet,	*incomplète,*	incomplete.
discret,	*discrète,*	discreet.
indiscret,	*indiscrète,*	indiscreet.
inquiet,	*inquiète,*	uneasy.
replet,	*replète,*	thick-set.
secret,	*secrète,*	secret.
concret,	*concrète,*	concrete.

95. The adjectives in *er* form their feminine regularly, but take a grave accent over the *e* :—

Masc.	Fem.	
premier,	*première,*	first.
cher,†	*chère,*	dear.
passager,	*passagère,*	passing.
fier,†	*fière,*	proud.
amer,†	*amère,*	bitter.

EXERCISE 22.

The French use politely "Monsieur" and "Madame" with nouns of relationship, titles, &c.; as, Monsieur votre père; Madame votre mère; Monsieur le duc; Madame la marquise. *Do so in the following sentences when suitable.*

* The article precedes *tel* like any other adjective. *Un tel homme,* such a man; *De telles actions,* such actions.

† Sound the final *r.*

Madame votre mère est une femme bien aimable. —Mademoiselle votre fille est bonne et charitable.— Monsieur le marquis a fait une singulière réponse au roi.—Monsieur le cardinal est très inquiet aujourd'hui ; le courrier a apporté de mauvaises nouvelles.—Fénelon, archevêque de Cambrai, a mené une vie très chrétienne. —La pluie continuelle de la semaine dernière a fait beaucoup de mal aux récoltes mûres. Marie, n'es-tu pas encore prête ?

Your mother is very anxious at (*of*) your absence.— Your father has not yet made out the complete list of the books in (*of*) the library.—I met your daughter at the seaside this summer.—The marchioness is very discreet.—The doctor said that (*que*) such a question was most (*very*) indiscreet.—That (*cette*) square tower (*tower square*) is very ancient.—Your uncle has written a very flattering letter (*adj. last*) to your master.— Appearances are often deceitful.—Is Henrietta not yet ready ?

96. Adjectives in *f* change into *ve* in the *fem.* ; as,

Masc.	Fem.	
vif,	*vive,*	active, quick-tempered.
neuf,	*neuve,*	new, newly-made.
bref,	*brève,*	brief, short.
craintif,	*craintive,*	timid.

97. Adjectives in *x* make *se* :—

Masc.	Fem.	
dangereux,	*dangereuse,*	dangerous.
heureux,	*heureuse,*	happy.
jaloux,	*jalouse,*	jealous.

Except :—

Masc.	Fem.	
doux,	**douce,**	sweet, gentle, mild.
roux,	**rousse,**	reddish (of the hair, or the moon).
faux,	**fausse,**	false.

98. Note.—We have seen that many nouns are used as adjectives ; adjectives are also used as nouns ; as,

un roux, a red haired man; *une rousse*, a red haired woman or girl.

99. Besides the nouns in EUR with their three forms of *fem.* we have true adjectives in ÉRIEUR (Latin and English *erior*); these all follow the general rule and take E :—

Masc.	Fem.	
inférieur,	*inférieure*,	inferior.
supérieur,	*supérieure*,	superior.
antérieur,	*antérieure*,	anterior.

Also :—

Masc.	Fem.	
meilleur,	**meilleure**,	better, best; kinder, kindest.
majeur,	**majeure**,	of age, major.
mineur,	**mineure**,	under age, minor.

EXERCISE 23.

Pay great attention to the agreement of the adjective, especially in the fem. plural, *which is formed by adding* s *to the* fem. sing.

Cette petite rousse est douée d'une intelligence supérieure.—Cette enfant a une expression craintive.—Ces pommes ne sont pas douces, elles ne sont pas mûres.—Vous êtes une petite jalouse, ma fille, vous ne serez jamais heureuse.—Est-ce que ce navire n'est pas dans une position dangereuse?—Le ministre a congédié la députation de quelques paroles brèves.

Remember to use the compound tense instead of the simple past.

He uttered a few kind words.—The dressmaker made a new dress (*dress new*) for my (*ma*) little girl. The orphan girl is very sensitive because she is sickly.—Those (*ces*) pears will be sweet when they are (*will be*) ripe.—Your uncle's wards (*fem.*) will be glad when they are (*will be*) of age.—Jane was (*Imp.*) jealous of the

superior intelligence of her cousin (*fem.*).—Is the position of those lady bathers not dangerous?—That red haired girl is very studious.

100. The forms *beau, nouveau, jumeau, vieux, mou, fou,* are corruptions (25, 67) of *bel, nouvel, jumel, vieil, mol, fol,* which gave naturally feminines in LLE. *Jumel* is no longer used, but BEL, NOUVEL, VIEIL, MOL, FOL, are still in common use before *masc. sing.* nouns beginning with a vowel or silent *h*.

Masc.		Fem.	
beau,	**bel,**	**belle,**	**beautiful, fine.**
nouveau,	**nouvel,**	**nouvelle,**	**new (other).**
vieux,	**vieil,***	**vieille,**	**old.**
mou,	**mol,**	**molle,**	**soft, listless.**
fou,	**fol,**	**folle,**	**mad.**
jumeau,		**jumelle,**	**twin.**

EXERCISE 24.

Bonjour, mon vieil ami; que (*how*) je suis content de vous revoir! (*Find right order of words in English*).—Ce bel enfant est arrivé de Paris hier soir avec sa (*his*) mère.—Ces petits garçons sont jumeaux.—Marie est la sœur jumelle de Louis.—Avez-vous remarqué le vieil oranger au fond de mon jardin?—Mon ami, je vous conseille de tenter un nouvel effort.—Regardez ce bel arbre.—Comme (*how*) il est beau et fort!—Je reverrai (*shall see*) monsieur votre père au nouvel an.—Le fol enfant, comme il s'amuse (*amuses himself*) bien!—Donnez du pain à ce pauvre vieillard.

Those little girls are twins.—Henry is Louisa's twin brother. Have you seen the old apricot tree at the end of my garden?—I was very glad to (*de*) meet my old friend.—The master advised us (*us has advised*) to make (*of attempt*) a fresh (*new*) effort. The old man was (*Imp.*) accompanied by (*of*) a handsome child. Give a few pence to that poor old woman.

* The common expression "an old man" is to be rendered *un vieillard*, or familiarly *un vieux*, fem. *une vieille*, or *une vieille femme*. *Le vieil homme* is a religious term.

101. The following require special attention :—

Masc.	Fem.	
gras,	**grasse,**	fat.
gros,	**grosse,**	big, stout.
bas,	**basse,**	low.
épais,	**épaisse,**	thick.
las,	**lasse,**	tired, wearied.
exprès,	**expresse,**	express, positive.
ras,	**rase,**	level, smooth, open.
mauvais,	**mauvaise,**	bad.
tiers,	**tierce,**	third.
frais,	**fraîche,**	fresh.
blanc,	**blanche,**	white.
franc,	**franche,**	frank, open.
sec,	**sèche,**	dry.
public,	**publique,**	public.
caduc,	**caduque,**	infirm.
turc,*	**turque,***	Turkish.
grec,*	**grecque,***	Greek, Grecian.

* Capitals when used as nouns.

Masc.	Fem.	
bénin,	**bénigne,**	benign, mild.
malin,	**maligne,**	malignant, sly.
coi,	**coite,**	quiet.
favori,	**favorite,**	favourite.
absous,	**absoute,**	(participles), absolved.
dissous,	**dissoute,**	dissolved.
traître,	**traîtresse,**	(noun), treacherous.
nul,	**nulle,**	null, void, no.
gentil,	**gentille,**	nice, pretty, amiable.
long,	**longue,†**	long.
oblong,	**oblongue,†**	oblong.

EXERCISE 25.

Le vieux fermier est gros et gras.—Les chasseurs étaient si las qu'ils dormirent (*slept*) bien sur un lit de feuilles sèches.—La flotte turque n'était pas prête à livrer bataille à la flotte grecque.—La lecture est l'occupation favorite des personnes studieuses.—Le marché a lieu sur la place publique.—Beaucoup de soldats

† u, to keep *g* hard.

français sont (*have*) morts d'une fièvre maligne.—Cette gentille petite fille est très discrète, elle n'a pas voulu parler devant une tierce personne.—L'armée était en rase campagne.

As the position of the adjective has not yet been taught, the order of words will be shown by numbers *when it is different from the English.*

Those strawberries are bad ; they are too ripe ; they are spoilt.—That pupil (*fem.*) is not nice (*pleasant*), she is not always frank.—That plant has very thick leaves (*the leaves very thick*).—The minister of (the) public [2] works [1] has promised to (*de*) visit (verb in *Inf.*) the new port.—We have raised a monument to the French [2] soldiers [1] who (*qui*) have (*are*) died on (*at*) the field of honour.—The Greek [2] Government [1] has asked the intervention of the Great Powers of Europe.—How pretty that white dress is ! (*How that dress white is pretty !*)—The road to (*of*) the town was long and dusty.—No historian has been able (*n'a su*) to clear up the mystery of the identity of the Man with (*to*) the Iron Mask (*Mask of iron*).

Formation of the Plural of Adjectives.

102. General Rule.—The plural of French adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* to the singular ; as,

Sing.	Plur.	
bon,	**bons,**	} good.
bonne,	**bonnes,**	

103. Those ending in *s* or *x* remain the same in the plural masculine ; thus,

Sing.	Plur.	
épais,	*épais,*	thick.
malheureux,	*malheureux,*	unhappy.

But in the fem. *épaisse, épaisses, malheureuse, malheureuses,* as we have already seen.

104. Most of the adjectives ending in *al* and *au* make their plural masculine in *aux*; as,

Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.	
royal,	royaux,	royal.	beau,	beaux,	beautiful.

105. A number of those ending in *al* make *als*, and some others are not used in the *masc. plu.*

Some of the commonest forming *aux*:—*baptismal, brutal, capital, cardinal, cérébral, commercial, conjugal, cordial, décimal, dental, dotal* (from *dot* fem., a dowery) *égal* (equal), *électoral, épiscopal, équinoxial, féodal, fiscal, fondamental, général, grammatical, horizontal, idéal, impérial, infernal, latéral, légal, libéral, littéral* (notice *tt*), *local, loyal, machinal, martial, médical, méridional, moral, municipal, musical, national, occidental, ordinal, oriental, original, principal, provincial, radical, rival, royal, septentrional* (northern), *social, spécial, verbal.*

Remark.—In the case of many others, authorities are not agreed, and it is well to avoid their use in the masculine plural.

106. The form *aux* is *not* admissible with:—*bancal* (bandy-legged), *colossal, ducal, fatal, glacial, jovial, mental, natal, naval, pénal, sentimental, théâtral, virginal.*

107. *Tout*, all, makes *tous*, but the *fem.* regularly *toute, toutes.* In *tous*, the *s* is sounded when it is a pronoun, but is silent when an adjective.

108. Note the following:—

MASC.		FEM.		
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	
bleu,	bleus,	bleue,	bleues,	blue.
feu,	feus,	feue,	feues,	the late.*
mou, mol,	mous,	molle,	molles,	soft, listless.
fou, fol,	fous,	folle,	folles,	mad.
vieux, vieil,	vieux,	vieille,	vieilles,	old.
beau, bel,	beaux,	belle,	belles,	beautiful.
nouveau, nouvel,	nouveaux,	nouvelle,	nouvelles,	new.

* Deceased.

Thus the plural of *un bel arbre,* is *de beaux arbres,* NOT *de bels arbres*; *un vieil ami, de vieux amis.*

EXERCISE 26.

Tous les hommes sont égaux devant Dieu.—Il y a quatre points cardinaux, le nord, le sud, l'est, et l'ouest. —Ce mariage a uni ces deux maisons ducales qui (*which*) étaient (*had*) restées longtemps rivales.—Nous n'avons pas encore appris les nombres ordinaux.—Ne raisonnez pas avec ces messieurs, ce (*they*) sont des originaux.—Les orientaux ne sont pas énergiques.—Les méridionaux sont de grands parleurs.—Le maréchal a fait appeler (*sent for*) les principaux généraux des armées impériales. —C'est ma tante qui a tenu l'enfant sur les fonts baptismaux. (*Find equivalent.*)

We are all equal before God.—I have bought a beautiful bouquet of blue [2] flowers [1].—Those old orange-trees are half dead.—Those old women are very poor. —The soldiers of the guard are (*some*) handsome men. —The late princes were much beloved.—We have been (*are gone*) to the country with our new friends.—Those pictures represent (*some*) naval [2] battles.[1]—(*The*) grammatical [2] rules [1] are not amusing.—The radicals are favourable to the bill.—Place the sentries at an equal distance from each other (*l'une de l'autre*).—All European [2] nations [1] have concluded commercial [2] treaties [1] with France.

Position of the Adjective.

109. The place of the adjective is sometimes determined by definite principles, and sometimes a mere question of habit or ear. In most cases it is a very important matter, for it is essentially a foreigner's mistake to misplace the adjective. The following almost always precede the noun they qualify :—

beau,	**jeune,**	**nouveau,**	**vaste,**
bon,	**joli,**	**petit,**	**vieux,**
grand,	**mauvais,**	**sot,**	**vilain,**
gros,	**méchant,**	**vain,**	**premier,**

dernier, *and all ordinal numbers.*

They are so important that it would be well to commit them to memory with an example or two.

un beau château,	a fine castle.
une belle soirée,	a fine evening.
une grande bataille,	a great battle.
un gros poisson,	a big fish.
un jeune homme,	a young man.
une jolie fleur,	a pretty flower.
une mauvaise habitude,	a bad habit.
un méchant garçon,	a bad (naughty) boy.
une nouvelle pièce de théâtre,	a new play.
le nouveau ministre,	the new minister of state.
la petite maison,	the little house.
une sotte réponse,	a silly answer.
un vain effort,	a vain effort.
son vaste empire,	his vast empire
un vieux mur,	an old wall.
une vieille tour,	an old tower.
une vilaine figure,	an ugly face.
la dernière fois,	the last time.

110. Adjectives expressing a **physical quality,** such as SHAPE, COLOUR, TEMPERATURE, TASTE, in fact anything **perceived by the senses,** *follow the noun.* Such are :—

rond,	round.	*froid,*	cold.
carré,	square.	*tiède,*	tepid, lukewarm.
mince,	thin.	*amer,*	bitter.
épais,	thick.	*doux,*	sweet.
rouge,	red.	*mûr,*	ripe.
bleu,	blue.	*aigre,*	sour, tart.
jaune,	yellow.	*sûr,*	sour.
blanc,	white.	*pierreux,*	stony.
noir,	black.	*fangeux,*	miry.
rose,	pink.	*uni,*	smooth, level.
vert,	green.	*vitré,*	glazed.
chaud,	warm, hot.	*gras,*	fat.

EXAMPLES:—

une table ronde,	a round table.
une chambre carrée,	a square room.
une fleur bleue,	a blue flower.
un ruban jaune,	a yellow ribbon.
de l'eau chaude,	warm water.
un vent tiède,	a mild wind.
des amandes amères,	bitter almonds.
une route pierreuse,	a stony road.
une surface unie,	a smooth surface.
une porte vitrée,	a glazed door.

111. Adjectives **derived from any proper noun** *follow the substantive.* Those coming from **countries** and **towns** are the most numerous.

l'armée française,	the French army.
la langue anglaise,	the English language.
un journal parisien,	a Parisian newspaper.
du pain viennois,	Viennese bread.
le parti bonapartiste,	the Bonapartist party.
la légende napoléonienne,	the Napoleonic legend.
l'Océan atlantique,	the Atlantic Ocean.

112. Participles (except a few present participles commonly used as adjectives, as, *charmant,* charming) generally come last.

une île habitée,	an inhabited island.
du poisson salé,	salt fish.
un pays conquis,	a conquered country.
un camp abandonné,	an abandoned camp.
un regard menaçant,	a threatening look.

113. An Adjective accompanied by a LONG ADVERB comes after the noun. *Une personne extrêmement affable, un général toujours victorieux.*

114. NOTE.—The rule so often given, that two or more adjectives come last, is subject to many exceptions. There is a strong tendency for each to take its own natural place, which may give any combination; as, one before, one after:—

une petite fleur rouge,	a little red flower.
un beau cheval noir,	a fine black horse.
un jeune homme aimable,	an amiable young man.
un grand château crénelé,	a large embattled castle.

Or both before :—

la pauvre jeune fille,	the poor young girl.
un grand jeune homme,	a tall young man.
une petite mauvaise habitude,	a little bad habit.
un bon petit coup,	a nice little blow.

115. Or with the conjunction *et* before or after :—

une grande et belle ville,	a large and handsome city.
un beau et solide gaillard,	a fine strong fellow.
un pays riche et puissant,	a rich and powerful country.

NOTE.—Adjectives which change their meaning according to their position are dealt with in the Syntax (594).

EXERCISE 27.

Learn the Preterite, or Passé Défini, *of the first conjugation. It is the narrative tense, and thus is common in books but rare in conversation.*

Tous les chevaliers étaient assis autour d'une table ronde.—Le zéphire est un vent doux qui annonce l'arrivée du printemps.—Le vaste empire de Charlemagne ne subsista pas longtemps après lui (*him*).—Plusieurs grands journaux parisiens ont annoncé cette fausse nouvelle.—L'empereur lança aux envoyés autrichiens un regard menaçant.—Les pèlerins aperçurent (*came in sight of*) un beau et grand château entouré de hautes murailles crénelées.—La porte principale était flanquée de grandes tours carrées, pourvues de meurtrières.—Un fossé large et profond en (*of it*) défendait (*défendre*) l'approche de (*on*) tous les côtés.—Une porte vitrée sépare la bibliothèque de la salle à manger.—Mademoiselle Lucie Faure présidait la brillante et aimable assistance. (*Le Figaro*).

That naughty little girl has played me (*m'a joué*) a nasty trick.—Two great battles have been fought near Falkirk.—The exhausted hunters supped off (*of*) a piece of new (*tendre*) bread and a cup of cold milk.—The poor French prisoners were (*have been*) very badly

treated by the Prussian soldiers.—Who lives (*demeure*) in that pretty little white house?—We slept (*avons couché*) in a large square room.—Have you seen the ruins of that old feudal castle?—The poor old fisherman has caught a big black fish, but it is good for (*to*) nothing.—The great powers of Europe have not allowed (*to*) Turkey to (*of*) keep the conquered country.

Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives.

116. Adjectives have three degrees of comparison; the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The *Positive* expresses the simple quality; as, *beau, belle, agréable.*

117. The *Comparative* expresses a higher, or lower, or equal degree of the quality. Hence there are three kinds of comparatives—the comparative of *superiority*, *inferiority*, and *equality*.

118. The comparative of *superiority* is formed by putting *plus*, more,* before the adjective, and *que* (*qu'* before a vowel or *h* mute), than, after it; as,

Le fer est *plus* utile *que* l'or,	Iron is *more* useful *than* gold.
Il est *plus* fier *qu'*un roi,	He is prouder *than* a king.

EXERCISE 28.

A verb used after a comparative requires NE *before it.* Elle est plus âgée qu'elle ne paraît.—*She is older than she looks.*

I am more sincere than you think.—The remedy is worse (*more dangerous*) than the disease.—He is taller than you.—He was happier then than to-day.—He is more thoughtless than his sister.—They are more merry than usual.—The plate is warmer than the meat.—The poplar is softer than the oak.—Your brother's house looks (*paraît*) much larger than yours (*la vôtre*).—That merchant is richer than he was (*qu'il ne l'était*).

* *Plus* must be repeated before every adjective.

119. The comparative of *inferiority* is formed by putting *moins*, less,* before the adjective, and *que* (or *qu'*), than, after it; as,

L'or est *moins* utile *que* le fer,	Gold is *less* useful *than* iron.
Il est *moins* malade *qu'*hier,	He is *less* ill *than* yesterday.

120. The verb may also be used negatively, and *si*, so,* placed before the adjective, with *que*, as, after it; as,

L'or n'est pas *si* utile *que* le fer,	Gold is not *so* useful *as* iron.

NOTE.—There is a tendency to prefer the comparative of inferiority in French.

EXERCISE 29.

The wolf is less cunning than the fox.—Paris is not so large as London.—Death is less dreadful than dishonour.—She is not so handsome as her sister.—This book is less entertaining than the other.—Edinburgh is not so populous as Glasgow.

121. The comparative of *equality* is formed by using *aussi*, as,* before the adjective, with *que*, as, after it; as,

Il est *aussi* riche *que* son frère,	He is *as* rich *as* his brother.
C'est *aussi* beau *qu'*utile,	It is *as* fine *as* it is useful.

EXERCISE 30.

Remember the agreement of the Adjective.

Cæsar was as eloquent as brave.—Mary is as intelligent as Jane.—He is as dexterous as you.—She is as happy as her cousin.—This house is as large as ours.—He is as learned as his father.—This book is as interesting as useful.—These currants are as good as those cherries.—This wood is as hard as (*the*) iron.

122. The *Superlative* expresses the highest or lowest degree of the quality.

* *Moins*, *si*, and *aussi*, must be repeated before every adjective.

The *superlative* is formed by putting before the adjective one of the adverbs *très, fort, bien,* very, or much,* or any other expressing a very high degree; as,

Paris est une *très* belle ville,	Paris is a *very* fine city.
Je vous suis *bien* obligé,	I am *much* obliged to you.

In this instance the superlative is called *absolute,* because it does not express any relation or comparison with the other cities.

123. NOTE.— The construction, *un prince des plus ambitieux,* a most ambitious prince, is much used in French. Thus also, *une femme des plus belles,* a very handsome woman.

124. The *relative superlative* is formed by putting *le, la, les,* before the comparative; or one of the possessive adjectives, *mon,* my; *ton,* thy; *son,* his, &c.; as,

Paris est *la plus* belle des villes,	Paris is the finest of all cities.
Sa plus célèbre victoire,	His most celebrated victory.

It is called *relative* superlative, because it expresses a comparison with other cities.

125. The adjective is often placed last, in which case the article must be repeated. *La montagne la plus élevée,* The highest mountain.

EXERCISE 31.

I know (*connais*) very great personages (*partitive sense*) who (*qui*) would be very happy to (*of*) be less known.— We have found those workmen very honest and sensible. —Fénelon's writings are most remarkable.—The slightest rebuke of his tutor used to put (*mettait*) the young prince in [a] passion.—The most successful[2] war[1] is a great misfortune for the people.—Our dearest interests have been injured (*lésé*).—One (*on*) breathes in those peaceful retreats the purest air (*physical*).

* Notice *most* in this sense; as, Her Most (very) Gracious Majesty = Sa très gracieuse Majesté.

126. The three adjectives, *bon*, good; *mauvais*, bad; and *petit*, little; as well as their corresponding adverbs, *bien*, well; *mal*, ill; and *peu*, little; are compared irregularly, and as follows:—

	Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.	
Adjectives.	**bon,**	good.	**meilleur,**	better.	**le meilleur,**	the best.
	mauvais,	bad.	**pire,**	worse.	**le pire,**	the worst.
	petit,	little.	**moindre,**	less.	**le moindre,**	the least.
Adverbs.	**bien,**	well.	**mieux,**	better.	**le mieux,**	the best.
	mal,	badly.	**pis,**	worse.	**le pis,**	the worst.
	peu,	little.	**moins,**	less.	**le moins,**	the least.

127. The regular forms, *plus mauvais, le plus mauvais,* and *plus mal, le plus mal,* are more used than *pire, le pire,* and *pis, le pis. Plus petit, le plus petit* are used physically, and *moindre, le moindre* with abstract nouns most commonly. *Bon, bien,* and *peu* **never admit of the regular form** of comparative.

EXERCISE 32.

In *after a superlative is rendered by* de.

Vous avez mal écrit ce devoir, vous avez une mauvaise plume.—Tâchez d'éviter la moindre erreur.—Ces pommiers sont plus petits que ceux (*those*) du verger de notre fermier.—Voici le plus petit garçon de l'école.—On prétend (*It is said*) que Wellington était un meilleur général que Napoléon.—La moindre tache se voit (*is seen*) sur cette étoffe claire.

An example is better and more profitable than an advice.—He speaks less than his sister.—He is the best man in this town.—She is now less indulgent than before (*auparavant*).—He has written his exercise better than you.—Give me a better pen, and I will write (*j'écrirai*) better.—You write worse than ever. Your (*Votre*) writing is very bad.—That man thinks a great deal (*much*), but he talks little.

128. Some adjectives do not properly admit of comparison; such as, *excellent, divin, immortel,* &c.

Adjectives and Nouns of Number.

129. *Cardinal* numbers express the number of things; and *Ordinal* numbers mark the rank they hold with respect to one another.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.	ORDINAL NUMBERS.
1 Un, une.	1st Le premier, la première.
2 Deux.	2nd Le second, la seconde, *or*
3 Trois.	3rd Troisième. [deuxième.*
4 Quatre.	4th Quatrième.
5 Cinq.	5th Cinquième.
6 Six.	6th Sixième.
7 Sept.	7th Septième.
8 Huit.	8th Huitième.
9 Neuf.	9th Neuvième.
10 Dix.	10th Dixième.
11 Onze.	11th Onzième.
12 Douze.	12th Douzième.
13 Treize.	13th Treizième.
14 Quatorze.	14th Quatorzième.
15 Quinze.	15th Quinzième.
16 Seize.	16th Seizième.
17 Dix-sept.	17th Dix-septième.
18 Dix-huit.	18th Dix-huitième.
19 Dix-neuf.	19th Dix-neuvième.
20 Vingt (t *silent*).	20th Vingtième.
21 Vingt et un.†	21st Vingt et unième (not *premier*).
22 Vingt-deux.	22nd Vingt-deuxième.
23 Vingt-trois.	23rd Vingt-troisième.
24 Vingt-quatre.	24th Vingt-quatrième.
25 Vingt-cinq.	25th Vingt-cinquième.
26 Vingt-six.	26th Vingt-sixième.
27 Vingt-sept.	27th Vingt-septième.
28 Vingt-huit.	28th Vingt-huitième.
29 Vingt-neuf.†	29th Vingt-neuvième.
30 Trente.	30th Trentième.

* *Second* is generally used when there are only two; *deuxième* when more than two.

† From 21 to 29 the *t* of vingt is pronounced.

CARDINAL NUMBERS	ORDINAL NUMBERS.
31 Trente et un.	31st Trente et unième.
32 Trente-deux, &c.	32nd Trente-deuxième, &c.
40 Quarante.	40th Quarantième.
41 Quarante et un.	41st Quarante et unième.
42 Quarante-deux, &c.	42nd Quarante-deuxième, &c.
50 Cinquante.	50th Cinquantième.
51 Cinquante et un.	51st Cinquante et unième.
52 Cinquante-deux, &c.	52nd Cinquante-deuxième, &c.
60 Soixante.	60th Soixantième.
61 Soixante et un.	61st Soixante et unième.
62 Soixante-deux, &c.	62nd Soixante-deuxième, &c.
70 Soixante-dix.*	70th Soixante et dixième.
71 Soixante et onze.	71st Soixante et onzième.
72 Soixante-douze.	72nd Soixante-douzième.
73 Soixante-treize.	73rd Soixante-treizième.
74 Soixante-quatorze.	74th Soixante-quatorzième.
75 Soixante-quinze.	75th Soixante-quinzième.
76 Soixante-seize.	76th Soixante-seizième.
77 Soixante-dix-sept.	77th Soixante-dix-septième.
78 Soixante-dix-huit.	78th Soixante-dix-huitième.
79 Soixante-dix-neuf.	79th Soixante-dix-neuvième.
80 Quatre-vingts.†	80th Quatre-vingtième.
81 Quatre-vingt-un.	81st Quatre-vingt-unième.
82 Quatre-vingt-deux, &c.	82nd Quatre-vingt-deuxième, etc.
90 Quatre-vingt-dix.†	90th Quatre-vingt-dixième.
91 Quatre-vingt-onze.	91st Quatre-vingt-onzième.
92 Quatre-vingt-douze.	92nd Quatre-vingt-douzième.
93 Quatre-vingt-treize.	93rd Quatre-vingt-treizième.
94 Quatre-vingt-quatorze.	94th Quatre-vingt-quatorzième.
95 Quatre-vingt-quinze.	95th Quatre-vingt-quinzième.
96 Quatre-vingt-seize.	96th Quatre-vingt-seizième.
97 Quatre-vingt-dix-sept.	97th Quatre-vingt-dix-septième.
98 Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.	98th Quatre-vingt-dix-huitième.
99 Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.	99th Quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième.
100 Cent.	100th Centième.
101 Cent un.	101st Cent unième.‡
102 Cent deux.	102nd Cent deuxième.

* Or *Soixante et dix.*

‡ *Or* cent et unième.

† In quatre-vingts and its compounds the *t* is silent.

200 Deux cents.	200th Deux centième.
1000 Mille.	1000th Millième.
10,000 Dix Mille.	10,000th Dix millième.
1,000,000 Un million.	1,000,000th Millionième.

130. For *one hundred,* say only **cent**; do not use ET after *cent;* e.g., *cent cinquante,* a hundred *and* fifty.

For *ten hundred,* say **mille.**

131. Ordinal numbers take the article *le, la, les,* and the sign of the plural, *s.* *Le premier rang,* the first rank, or row; *La première fois,* the first time; *Les trois premiers rangs,* the first three rows; *Les trois premières classes,* the first three classes (notice order of words). Or they may take a possessive adjective. *Sa première victoire,* his first victory. There is no elision before *huitième* and *onzième,* **le (la) huitième, le (la) onzième.**

132. When *plus* or *moins* precedes a numeral or a fraction, use DE, not *que;* as, *Plus* de *cent, moins* de *dix.*

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION.—*Cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix,* have final consonant silent when followed by a word they multiply beginning with a consonant; as, *cinq francs, dix fois.* When alone, sound last letter sharply; before a vowel or mute *h,* tie in the usual way; as, *neuf heures, six hommes.*

EXERCISE 33.

Express in full in French:—70, 75, 65, 83, 93, 17, 14, 112, 271, 755.

The hundredth time.—The fifth concert.—The first class.—The first change.—The twenty-first ascent [of a mountain].—On (*at*) the second floor.—He was (*fut*) wounded at the third bout.—I was (*Imp.*) seated in (*at*) the fifth row of the orchestra stalls.—I have read the first ten pages of that French novel.—The great writers of the 17th century are still much admired.

133. *Vingt* and *cent* are the only *cardinal* numbers which take an *s* in the plural, and that only when multiplied by another number, except they be followed at the same time by another number, or used in dates, or as ordinals.

Quatre-vingts vaisseaux,	*Eighty ships.*
Trois cents hommes,	*Three hundred men.*
Quatre-vingt-cinq vaisseaux,	*Eighty-five ships.*
Trois cent cinquante hommes,	*Three hundred and fifty men.*
L'an dix-sept cent quatre-vingt,	*The year seventeen hundred and eighty.*
Page deux cent,	*Page two hundred.*

The French use *mil* instead of *mille,* in dates of the Christian era ; as, *L'an mil huit cent cinquante-deux,* 1852 ; but we say, *l'an mille,* when no other number comes after it.

[In old French *mil* was the singular and *mille* the plural (Latin *mille* and *millia*), but this distinction has ceased to exist ; it explains, however, the *mil* in dates and the absence of the *s* in the plural numeral.]

134. Note that **milles** means **miles** ; e.g., *trois mille,* three thousand ; *trois milles,* three miles.

135. The forms *onze cent, douze cent,* &c., are commonly used in dates, as in English ; the form *mil deux cent* is formal ; however, *mil huit cent* is the best form for eighteen hundred.

136. *Cardinal* numbers are used in French :—

1st, To express the days of the month, the first excepted. Thus we say, *le trois août,* the third of August ; *le quatre septembre,* the fourth of September ; and so on ; but we say, *le premier août,* the first of August ; *le premier septembre,* the first of September. As in the case of *huitième, onzième,* we say, **le huit juin, le onze juillet.**

137. 2nd, In the same manner, after the names of sovereigns we use *premier* for the first ; *deux,* or *second,*

for the second ; and afterwards the *cardinal* numbers ; as,

François *premier*,	*Francis* the first.
François *second*,	*Francis* the second.
Henri *deux*,	*Henry* the second.
Henri *quatre*,	*Henry* the fourth.

NOTE.—*Second* is becoming old-fashioned.

138. There is a special form for Charles V. Emperor of Germany, viz.: **Charles-Quint**; it has become almost a part of his name. We also say Sixte-Quint for the Pope Sixtus V.

EXERCISE 34.

Learn the future of First Conjugation.

Nous avons lu en classe quatre-vingts pages de l'histoire de Charles douze, roi de Suède.—Vous trouverez cette règle à la page quatre-vingt de votre grammaire latine.—Le loyer de cette maison est de quinze cents francs par an.—Notre fermier a payé ce cheval huit cent cinquante francs.—La Bastille fut prise par le peuple de Paris le quatorze juillet, dix-sept cent quatre-vingt-neuf.—La reine Victoria est montée sur le trône en mil huit cent trente-sept.—Il ne faut pas (*one must not*) confondre Charles cinq, roi de France, avec Charles-Quint, empereur d'Allemagne.

Write out all numbers in full in the following Exercise:—

You will find eighty francs in my drawer.—I live at (*the*) number 80 King Street (*of the street of the king*).—Charles V., Emperor of Germany, was the great rival of Francis I., King of France.—He lived (*vécut*) in (*under*) the reign of Henry VIII., King of England.—Louis XVI. was executed [on] the 21st of January 1793.—I have walked (*made*) thirty miles to-day.—The marshal laid siege to the town (*mit le siège devant la ville*) with an army of 30,000 men.

Nouns of Number.

139. These serve to group objects; they are called *collectives;* as, *une douzaine,* a dozen; *une vingtaine,* a score. The following are the commonest :—

une huitaine,	8.	*une trentaine,*	30.
une dizaine,	10.	*une quarantaine,*	40.
une douzaine,	12.	*une cinquantaine,*	50.
une quinzaine,	15.	*une soixantaine,*	60.
une vingtaine,	20.	*une centaine,*	100.
		UN *millier,*	1000.

140. They are much used, and often express a certain vagueness rendered by **about**; *une centaine,* **about a hundred.** They require *de* or *d'* before a following noun; as, *une douzaine d'œufs,* a dozen eggs; *une centaine d'hommes,* about a hundred men. The English **hundreds of, thousands of,** is rendered DES *centaines de,* DES *milliers de.*

141. Notice the expressions, *Cette femme a la trentaine,* that woman is thirty; *une huitaine de jours,* about a week; *une quinzaine* (*de jours*), a fortnight. *Huit jours,* a week; *quinze jours,* a fortnight.

142. TO TELL THE TIME :—For one, two o'clock, say one hour, two hours, &c., *une heure, deux heures;* twelve o'clock is *midi* (m.), noon, or *minuit* (m.), midnight (*douze heures* = 12 hours). *Trois heures et quart,* a quarter past three; *quatre heures et demie,* half-past four; *cinq heures moins un quart,* a quarter to five. For minutes in the same way, *six heures dix* (*minutes,* generally understood), *sept heures moins vingt-cinq* (*minutes*), twenty-five minutes to seven. *Heures* cannot be omitted; as, *half past three,* **trois heures et demie.** *Quelle heure est-il?* What time is it?

143. FRACTIONS.—*Le quart,* the quarter; *la moitié,* the half of anything (concrete); *le demi,* in arithmetic (abstract); *le tiers,* the third; LES *trois quarts,* $\frac{3}{4}$; LES *cinq huitièmes,* $\frac{5}{8}$ (*les* omitted in arithmetic).

Read decimals like ordinary fractions, ·3 = (*les*) *trois dixièmes;* ·03 = (*les*) *trois centièmes.* *Demi* is used in compounds; as, *une demi-heure,* half an hour; *à demi mort,* half dead.

144. NOTE also *le double,* double; *le triple,* three times as much; *le quadruple,* four times as much; *le centuple,* a hundred times as much; AU *quadruple,* fourfold; AU *centuple,* a hundredfold.

Once, twice, thrice = *une fois, deux fois, trois fois.*

EXERCISE 35.

Notice that demi *takes an* e *after* heures (DEMIE) (580).

Je déjeune toujours à midi et demi.—Les ouvriers français travaillent souvent douze heures par jour.—Marie, allez au marché acheter deux douzaines d'œufs et une demi-livre de beurre frais.—Mon père a passé la quarantaine.—Nous avons pris le thé chez notre marraine à cinq heures et demie.—Mon pauvre voisin a perdu les trois quarts de sa fortune.—J'ai bu un demi-verre de vin.—Une vingtaine de personnes ont été noyées dans ce naufrage.—Mon voyage de Suisse m'a coûté (m' = *me*) un millier de francs.—J'ai une centaine de francs dans mon porte-monnaie.—Nous sommes restés quinze jours à Londres.

What time is it? It is half past seven.—I waited (*have waited*) [*for*] the train half an hour.—She came (*is come*) at a quarter to eleven.—I shall stay a week at Paris.—My father's journey to (*in*) Belgium cost (*has cost*) seven hundred francs.—That young man has lost hundreds of pounds (*livres sterling*) in (*some*) unfortunate[2] speculations[1].—I have bought a dozen scones.—The poor fellow has lost two-thirds of his money.—My godfather stayed (*is stayed*) about a week with us (*chez nous*).—The shepherd has sold about a hundred sheep at market.—Give me half a cup of coffee.—I have been (*am gone*) about ten times to the theatre this winter.

—Thousands of men perished (*have perished*) in that terrible battle.—I gave (*the*) half (*of*) my cake to my schoolfellow.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

145. *Possessive Adjectives* are always joined to a noun, with which they agree in gender and number, and not, as in English, with the *possessor*.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Masc.	*Fem.*	*For both genders.*	
MON	MA	MES	*my.*
TON	TA	TES	*thy.*
SON	SA	SES	*his, her, its.*
NOTRE	NOTRE	NOS	*our.*
VOTRE	VOTRE	VOS	*your.*
LEUR	LEUR	LEURS	*their.*

Thus, *son père* means HIS or HER father; *sa mère,* HIS or HER mother.

146. *Mon, ton, son,* are used instead of *ma, ta, sa,* before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as, *mon âme,* my soul, for *ma âme*; *son épée,* his sword; but, of course, *sa grande épée,* his big sword.

[In old French we find *m'âme, s'épée,* &c.; this accounts for *ma mie,* my darling, a mistaken form of *m'amie,* my friend. *Mon amie* still means, My dear.]

147. The possessive adjectives are repeated before every substantive, agreeing with each in gender and number.

EXERCISE 36.

His father, mother, brother, and sister are gone to (*departed for*) London.—Her book, pen, and ink are in the next[2] room[1].—Your library is very large, and all your books are well arranged.—Where are their ser-

vants?—I have seen their coachman in the yard.—His ambition has caused great misfortunes to his family.—My watch has (*is*) stopped.—His house is well furnished.—Have you lost your keys?—Look in your pockets.—Where have you put your hat? (*2nd sing.*)

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

148. *Possessive Pronouns* are never joined to nouns; they are used instead of them, and agree with them in gender and number. **They require the Definite Article.**

Singular.		*Plural.*		
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	
LE MIEN	LA MIENNE	LES MIENS	LES MIENNES	*mine.*
LE TIEN	LA TIENNE	LES TIENS	LES TIENNES	*thine.*
LE SIEN	LA SIENNE	LES SIENS	LES SIENNES	*his, hers, its.*
		Pl. for both genders.		
LE NÔTRE	LA NÔTRE	LES NÔTRES		*ours.*
LE VÔTRE	LA VÔTRE	LES VÔTRES		*yours.*
LE LEUR	LA LEUR	LES LEURS		*theirs.*

149. NOTE.—The article contracts in the usual way with *de* and *à*.

AU MIEN,	À LA MIENNE.	DU SIEN,	DE LA SIENNE.
AUX MIENS,	AUX MIENNES.	DES SIENS,	DES SIENNES.

150. Notice that *le sien*, *la sienne*, take the GENDER OF THE NOUN UNDERSTOOD to which the article refers, and *not* that of the possessor as in English.

EXERCISE 37.

My favourite[2] occupation[1] is music, his is drawing.—I left my gloves up stairs, have you [got] yours?—I admire your garden, but not (*pas*) theirs.—My brother is still in India (*aux Indes*), where is hers?—My horse is good, but his is better.—Your dog is prettier than mine.—Your letters are better written than mine.—I received your note yesterday, and his this morning.—Our

perseverance has been greater than yours, and our success more complete than yours.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The subject Pronouns give no difficulty, as they have already been learned with the verbs.

(At this stage the pupil is expected to know the INFINITIVE, INDICATIVE, CONDITIONAL, and IMPERATIVE MOODS of AVOIR, ÊTRE, and of verbs of the FIRST CONJUGATION. The *Subjunctive* will be avoided until the verb is specially studied.)

OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

151. THEIR PLACE.—A *Conjunctive Pronoun*, that is, a pronoun governed by a verb WITHOUT an *expressed preposition*, is placed (1) **immediately before** the verb in a simple tense; (2) immediately before the AUXILIARY in a compound tense; (3) **after** the verb, and joined to it by a hyphen, in the *Imperative* when used *affirmatively*; (4) when the Imperative is *negative*, immediately before the verb in the usual way.

Je LE *donne*,	I give it.
Je L'*ai donné*,	I gave (have given) it.
Donnez-LE,*	Give it.
Ne LE *donnez pas*,	Do not give it.

NOTE.—These rules are subject to no exceptions.

Form of Objective Pronouns of First and Second Persons.

152. ME, *me, to me, for me, myself, to myself, for myself*, is the form always used BEFORE THE VERB.

* Writers of the 17th century put the objective pronoun before the second and third of several Imperatives; as, "*Apportez-moi mes pantoufles et* ME DONNEZ *mon bonnet de nuit.*"—(Molière.) Bring me my slippers and give me my night cap.

MOI, *same meanings*, is used AFTER THE IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE. MOI cannot be reflexive.

Il me cherche,	He seeks me (is looking for me).
Il m'aime,	He loves me.
Il m'a vu,	He saw me (has seen).
Il me parla,	He spoke to me.
Il me donna un cadeau,	He gave me a present.
Je me flatte,	I flatter myself.
Je me procurerai ce livre,	I will get (for) myself that book.
Cherchez-moi,	Seek (look for) me.
Donnez-moi cela,	Give me that.
Ne me cherchez pas,	Do not seek me.

153. In the same way,

TE, *thee, to thee, thyself, to thyself*, &c.
TOI, *thyself, to thyself, for thyself*.

TOI, conjunctively, only occurs in *Reflected Forms*.

Il te cherche,	He seeks thee.
Il te donne cela,	He gives thee that.
Tu te flattes,	Thou flatterest thyself.
Habille-toi,	Dress thyself.
Ne te flatte pas,	Do not flatter thyself.
Achète-toi un parapluie,	Buy (for) thyself an umbrella.

154. The second person singular is much used in French between near relations, schoolfellows, &c. The plurals NOUS and VOUS are invariable, and have all the same uses as above; *us, to us, ourselves*, &c.

155. IMPORTANT REMARK.—In compound tenses the **participle agrees** with the **preceding** objective pronoun if it is in the **accusative**, *i.e.*, if it is the **direct object.**

156. ME and TE are *feminine* when they stand for a woman or girl. VOUS is *sing.* or *plur.*, *masc.* or *fem.*, according to the person or persons to whom it refers, and participles and adjectives agree accordingly.

Il m'a **vue,**	He saw me (a woman speaking).
Il vous a **vu,**	He saw you (speaking to a man).
Il vous a **vue,**	,, ,, (speaking to a woman).
Il vous a **vus,**	,, ,, (to men, or a mixed company).
Il vous a **vues,**	,, ,, (to two or more women).

157. There is **no agreement** with the **dative pronoun**, *i.e.*, the **indirect object.**

Il vous a donné un cadeau,	He gave you a present. (even if *vous* is plural.)
Il m'a procuré cet ouvrage,	He got the work *for* me. (even when a woman is speaking.)

EXERCISE 38.

Adrienne, ma sœur vous a vue au concert.—Madame votre mère m'a envoyé un joli bouquet de fleurs pour ma fête.—Notre père nous a promis de nous conduire dimanche au jardin d'acclimatation.—Tu te flattes de remporter le premier prix de français, mais je pense que tu te trompes, mon ami.—Donnez-vous la peine d'étudier cette leçon.—Où nous avez-vous vues?—Je vous ai vues aux Champs Elysées.

As these sentences are conversational, use compound tense.

Do not flatter yourself.—My father has promised to take me (*fem.*) to the seaside this summer.—My uncle gave me a fine penknife at the New Year (*for my New Year's gift*).—Did you see us at the theatre?—Yes, I saw you in the dress circle.—Who (*qui*) sent you that handsome writing-desk?—It is my niece who sent me that useful[2] present[1].—The bookseller has got me the Parisian review which (*que*) I had ordered.

Objective Pronouns of the Third Person.

158. LE, LA, LES, are always *accusatives;* they have the same origin as the article. *Le* and *la* become *l'* before a vowel or silent *h*, but *le* and *les* as **pronouns** never contract with the prepositions *à* and *de;* e.g., Je suis content **de le** voir, *I am glad to see him.*

159. LUI and LEUR are DATIVES, *to him*, or *to her*, *for him*, or *for her*, *to* or *for them.* *Lui* suffers **no elision.**

Pronouns of the third person retain their form accord-

ing to their case, and DO NOT CHANGE when placed after the Imperative Affirmative.

Je le cherche,	*I seek it (am looking for it).*
Cherchez-le,	*Look for it.*
Je lui ai parlé,	*I spoke to him.*
Parlons-lui,	*Let us speak to him.*

160. The reflexive pronoun SE, is of all cases, like ME and TE, and of both genders and numbers; *himself, herself, itself, themselves, to himself,* &c.

The Relative Position of two Objective Pronouns.

161. LE, LA, LES come **after** ME, TE, SE, NOUS, VOUS, but **before** LUI and LEUR, thus—

me le,	*it to me.*	**nous le,**	*it to us.*
te le,	*it to thee.*	**vous le,**	*it to you.*
se le,	*it to him (her) self.*	**se le,**	*it to themselves.*
le lui,	*it to him (her).*	**le leur,**	*it to them.*

and so, ME LA and ME LES, &c., &c.

162. After the Imperative Affirmative, *le, la, les* come **before** all the other pronouns.

Donnons-le-lui,	Let us give it to him (her).
Prêtez-la-moi,	Lend it to me.
Procure-le-toi,	Get it for thyself.

Hyphens between **both** pronouns.

NOTE.—This order is usual and correct in all cases, but some authors have not followed it with *nous* and *vous*, e.g.—

Livrez-nous-les,	Deliver them up to us. (Lamartine).
Livrez-les-nous,	would be better at the present day.

163. With the Imperative Negative the usual order holds good.

Ne le lui donnons pas,	Do not let us give it him (her).
Ne me la prêtez pas,	Do not lend it me.
Ne te l'achète pas,	Do not buy it for yourself (thyself).

164. Objective pronouns are placed before two verbs forming one expression; as, Il les **fit venir**, *He sent for them*; Je les **verrai courir**, *I shall see them run*; otherwise before the Infinitive in **modern French**; as, *Je veux les voir*, I wish to see them; *Pouvez-vous me les prêter?* Can you lend them to me? In older French, particularly that of the 17th century, we find, *Je les veux voir; Me les pouvez-vous prêter*, &c.

165. Agreement with accusatives, none with datives.

Il l'a acheté (l'=le),	He bought it.
Il l'a achetée (l'=la),	,, ,,
Il les a achetés (les, masc.),	He bought them.
Il les a achetées (les, fem.),	,, ,,
Il lui a parlé (lui, fem.),	He spoke to her.
Il la leur a donnée (agreement with **la**, not with **leur**),	He gave it to them.

EXERCISE 39.

Madame votre mère porte une bien belle montre.—Oui, je la lui ai achetée pour ses étrennes.—Quelles (*what*) jolies plantes, où les avez-vous trouvées?—Je les ai trouvées près du lac.—Maman, j'ai perdu mon cahier de français.—Eh bien, cherche-le, ma fille.—Je l'ai cherché toute la matinée.—Ta petite amie désire voir ton album de timbres-poste; montre-le-lui.—Je le lui ai déjà montré.—La Bavière est un beau pays, nous l'avons visitée l'année dernière.—Les Pyrénées sont très pittoresques, je les ai vues pour la première fois l'automne dernier.—L'ascension du mont Blanc est difficile, mais ces voyageurs l'ont faite sans guides.—J'ai besoin de ma carte de France; apportez-la-moi donc.

Those are (*Voilà de*) fine trout, where did you buy them?—I did not buy them; I caught them in the river.—I will give them to you, if you like (*si vous voulez*).—I have lost my keys.—I will seek them for you.—I have found them for you.—Do not lose (*reperdez*) them [again].—He asked me a favour, and I granted it him at once.—The evening papers (*papers of the evening*) are

very interesting; have you read them?—Those tourists related their travels to us.—We have had many adventures; we will relate them to you [some] (*one*) day.—My old (*ancien*) schoolfellow, Vernot, is in England; he wrote to me last[2] week[1].—Sir, your boots are not finished; but I will send (*enverrai*) them to you tomorrow.

En and Y.

166. En and y are really neuter pronouns, but they are not infrequently used for persons also. They refer to nouns of either gender and either number.

En includes *de*, and implies that the **French verb** governs that preposition; y includes *à*, and sometimes *dans, chez*, and some other prepositions. Their use in connection with reflected verbs is most important, and will be dealt with when they are treated.

Je parle **de** *ce livre*,	I am speaking of that book.
*J'***en** *parle*,	I am speaking of it.
J'ai besoin **de** *ces outils*,	I need those tools (I have need of).
*J'***en** *ai besoin*,	I need them (have need of them).
Il vient **de** *cette ville*,	He comes from that town.
Il **en** *vient*,	He comes from it.
Je pense **à** *ce voyage*,	I am thinking of that journey.
*J'***y** *pense*,	I am thinking of it.
Jean est **chez** *le principal*,	John is in the headmaster's room.
Il **y** *est.*	He is there (in it).

167. En translates *some* and *any* and *none*, and corresponds with the partitive article du, de la, des.

J'ai **du** *pain*,	I have some bread.
*J'***en** *ai*,	I have some.
En *avez-vous?*	Have you any?

168. When y and en come together, the order is y en; as,

J'ai mis du sucre dans mon thé,	I have put some sugar in my tea.
*J'***y en** *ai mis*,	I have put some into it.

169. Y and en come after all the other pronouns; as,

Il lui en a donné, He gave him some; *Je vous y ai vu,* I saw you there; *moi* and *toi* are elided before them :—

Donnez-m'en,	Give me some.
Promène-t'y,	Walk there.

Remark.—M'y and t'y are much used *before the verb*, but are ugly after Imperative Affirmative. Y-moi and y-toi, which some authorities recommend, are no better. This form is to be avoided; it can easily be done by using the Infinitive, or the Subjunctive, or the Future; as,

Il faut t'y promener,	You must take a walk there.
Je veux que tu t'y promènes,	I wish you to take a walk there.
Vous m'y rencontrerez,	Meet me there.

EXERCISE 40.

The following expressions take de *and therefore* en :—

être content de, to be glad of; *avoir peur de,* to be afraid of.
avoir besoin de, to have need of; *être fâché de,* to be sorry for.
Penser à, therefore *y penser,* to think of (about).

Il va (*is*) mieux et j'en suis bien content.—Ce chien est très méchant; n'en avez-vous pas peur?—Vous avez besoin de charbon; en avez-vous commandé?—Il a de bien belles fleurs dans son jardin, mais il n'a pas voulu nous en donner.—Le concert de ce soir sera bien beau; comptez-vous y aller?—J'avais demandé à mon mari de m'acheter de la soie, mais il n'y a pas pensé.—Il dit (*says*) qu'il en est bien fâché.—Il y aura (*there will be*) des courses à Auteuil demain; voulez-vous (*will you*) m'y conduire?—Je vous y conduirai (*Fut.*) avec plaisir. —Ils songent à cette affaire; leur en avez-vous parlé? —Je ne leur en ai pas encore parlé.

How is (*va*) your father? (*use polite form*).—He is (*va*) much better, thanks.—I am very glad of it.—He is no better (*he goes not better*).—I am very sorry for it.—That lady goes to (*fréquente*) our church; I see (*vois*) her there often.—That child is asking (*Present*) for bread; have you given him some?—Madame Sarah Bernardt is to play (*doit jouer*) at the Theatre Royal to-night (*this even-*

ing); will you (*voulez-vous*) take us there?—You will find some money in my drawer; I put some there this morning.—Are you (*have you*) afraid of that big dog?—Yes, I am much afraid of it. (*I have much* (bien) *fear of it.*

DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

170. As their name implies, **disjunctive pronouns** are more or less disconnected from the verb. They are:—

moi,	me.
toi,	thee.
lui,	him.
elle,	her.
soi,	one's self (himself) (*indefinite*).
nous,	us.
vous,	you.
eux,	them (*masc.*)
elles,	them (*fem.*)

Notice that though LUI as a conjunctive pronoun is both *masc.* and *fem.*, as a disjunctive pronoun it is **masculine only.** SOI and EUX (Old French, *els*; Latin, *illos*) are the only disjunctive pronouns which do not resemble other forms.

Uses of Disjunctive Pronouns.

171. (1.) After expressed prepositions:—

Sans moi,	Without me.	**Avec eux,**	With them.

(2.) After *être*:—

C'est lui,	It is he.	**Est-ce toi?**	Is it you?
C'était elle,	It was she.	**N'est-ce pas moi?**	Is it not I?

(3.) When there are two or more subjects:—

Vous et lui y étiez,	You and he were there.
Louis et moi y sommes allés,	Lewis and I went there.

A collective pronoun may be used in such cases:—

Lui et moi, nous y étions,	He and I were there.

(4.) Standing alone:—

Qui est là?—Moi.	Who is there?—It is I.

(5.) Followed by an infinitive or a relative pronoun :—

Lui faire une telle chose ?	He *do* such a thing (not *does*).
Moi qui vous parle,	I who am speaking to you (= I myself).

(6.) After a comparative :—

Elle est moins grande que lui,	She is not so tall as he.
Nous sommes plus nombreux qu'eux,	We are more numerous than they.

(7.) As an emphatic repetition of a pronoun, noun, or possessive adjective, or in contrast :—

Je t'aime bien, toi aussi,	I love you too.
Je l'adore, moi, cette enfant-là,	I love that child (girl).*
Il faut aussi que je lui parle, à elle,	I must speak to *her* too.†
Parle donc, toi ! *	Why don't *you* speak ? (Speak, do !)
Sa mère à elle, sa mère à lui,	Her mother, his mother.

EXERCISE 41.

J'ai acheté une paire de gants pour vous.—Si Mademoiselle Lucie n'arrive pas à l'heure nous partirons (*will start*) sans elle.—Cette élève n'a pas fait son thème, je suis fâché contre (*with*) elle.—J'ai mon opinion à moi.—Ma cousine est arrivée de Bruxelles hier, c'est elle que vous avez vue avec moi au parc.—Mon frère et moi (nous) avons fait une bonne course à bicyclette ce matin.—Vous et lui (vous) montez en tandem, n'est-ce pas ? (*don't you ?*).—Lui monter en tandem ? Jamais de la vie ! (a familiar expression = *certainly not*).—Mais (*why*), Madame, Mademoiselle votre fille est plus grande que vous à présent !—Pardon, je suis encore plus grande qu'elle.—Marchons vite, nous arriverons avant eux.—Chacun pour soi, et Dieu pour tous. (Proverb).—" Vous allez chez un notaire . . . eh bien, moi, je vais chez un huissier." (Sandeau).

* Pailleron. † Sandeau.

Here is (*Voici*) a letter for you.—My mother is in Brussels; it must (*ce doit*) be from her.—My sisters are at school (*en pension*) in Germany; I get (*reçois*) a letter from them every week (*toutes les semaines*).—That boy has not prepared his lessons; I am angry with (*against*) him.—We shall start (*partirons*) without you if you are not in time (*arrive not at the hour*).—Your sisters arrived at half past ten; we entered (*are entered*) after them.—We are richer than they (*masc.*), but they are prouder than we.—She and I have studied (*worked*) together.—She is cleverer than I; it is she who did this exercise.

Use of Pronouns.

172. The great difficulty in the use of objective pronouns is to determine the form the *French verb* requires, for it is often different from the English verb, and this applies not only to simple verbs but to verbal expressions like *être fâché de*, to be sorry for. Attention in *reading*, learning the preposition (when there is one) *with the verb*, are great helps. The following very common verbs may be committed to memory:—

173. Taking the **accusative** (no preposition).

écouter,	to listen to.
regarder,	to look at.
chercher,	to look for.
envoyer chercher,	to send for.
attendre,	to wait for, to expect.
rencontrer,	to meet, or meet with.

174. Taking **à** in French, and **no preposition in English.**

nuire à,	Past Part.	**nui,**	to injure.
résister à,			to resist.
obéir à,		**obéi,**	to obey.
ressembler à,			to resemble, be like.
survivre à,		**survécu,**	to survive.
succéder à,			to succeed (come after).
plaire à,		**plu,**	to please.
déplaire à,		**déplu,**	to displease.

175. These verbs take Y for the *neuter*, and *lui* and *leur* for the *personal* object.

Il y a résisté,	*He has resisted it (them).*
Il lui a résisté,	*He has resisted him (her).*

176. The following take the *accusative* of the *thing* and the *dative* of the *person*:—

Conseiller une chose à une personne,			*to advise a thing to a person*, i.e., *to advise a person to do a thing.*
Demander une chose à une personne,			*to ask a thing of a person (a person for a thing).*
Commander	„	„	*to command*, &c.
Permettre	„	„	*to allow*, &c.
Défendre	„	„	*to forbid*, &c.

EXAMPLE.—*I asked him for a book;* turn, *I have asked a book of* (to) *him.*—Je lui ai demandé un livre.

I asked him for it = Je le lui ai demandé.

If the complement is an Infinitive, these verbs govern DE.

Je *leur* demande *de* me répondre,	*I ask them to answer me.*
Son père *lui* a défendu *de* sortir,	*His father has forbidden him to go out.*

177. Most verbs governing *à* take conjunctive forms, **except verbs of motion.**

Il vint à moi, *He came up to me.* | Il courut à elle, *He ran to her.*

Also, *être à*, to belong to, and *penser à*, to think about.

Ce chien est à moi,	*That dog is mine.*
Je pense à vous,	*I am thinking of you.*

178. The emphatic repetition of the subject * *myself, thyself*, &c., are—*moi-même, toi-même, lui-même, elle-même, soi-même* (indefinite), *nous-mêmes, vous-même*, yourself, *vous-mêmes*, yourselves, *eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes.*

* They may also be objects, but their use is then less common.

These pronouns must be distinguished from the reflexive forms, *me, te, se,* &c. The reflexive verb and its complements will be studied later on. (309, &c.)

EXERCISE 42.

Ce chapeau n'est pas à moi.—J'ai rencontré un ancien ami chez le maire de notre arrondissement.—Je ne pensais guère à lui.—Est-ce que ce jeune homme a plu à Madame votre mère?—Oui, il lui a beaucoup plu.—Sa femme est morte au mois de juin, et il ne lui a pas survécu six semaines.—Cette montre va bien maintenant, Monsieur Carié, l'horloger, l'a nettoyée lui-même. Avez-vous obéi à vos parents?—Oui, je leur ai obéi.—Avez-vous écouté le discours de Monsieur Mourès?—Non, je ne l'ai pas écouté avec beaucoup d'attention.—Comme cet enfant ressemble à son père.—Je ne trouve pas qu'il lui ressemble beaucoup.—Nous avons demandé une bouteille de cidre à ce paysan et il nous l'a refusée. Pourquoi la lui avez-vous demandée?—Mon père puis-je sortir ce soir?—Non, mon enfant, je vous le défends; il fait (*is*) trop froid.—Mon petit garçon est malade, j'ai envoyé chercher le médecin, je l'attends à chaque instant.—Le dîner est servi, l'avez-vous annoncé à Madame?—Je le lui ai dit moi-même.

Have they obeyed their master?—Yes, they have obeyed him.—Did he give you my message?—No, he did not give it to me himself.—Why did he not give it to you?—I asked your brother[2] for ten francs,[1] and he lent them to me at once.—Your little girl is very like you.—I think (*find*) that she is like her mother.—He did not survive the loss of his children.—He did not survive it six months.—Did your parents forbid you to play in the garden?—Yes, they forbade it me.—Did my friend please your cousin (*fem.*).—No, he did not please her at all (*du tout*).—Have you looked at those views of Nice?—Yes, I have looked at them attentively.—Has the doctor arrived?—No, but I expect him by

the five o'clock train (*the train of five o'clock*).—He promised me that he would come (*qu'il viendrait*) himself.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

179. A *Relative Pronoun* relates to a noun or pronoun placed before it, called the *antecedent*; as, *Dieu* QUI *a créé le monde*, God *who* created the world.

FOR BOTH GENDERS AND NUMBERS; FOR PERSONS AND THINGS.

	EXAMPLES.
SUBJECT—	
QUI, *who, which.*	L'homme qui parle, *The man who speaks.*
	L'histoire qui m'amuse, *The story which amuses me.*
DIRECT OBJECT (*Acc.*)—	
QUE, *whom, which.* (Never omitted.)	L'homme que j'ai vu, *The man (whom) I have seen.*
	Le roman que j'ai lu, *The novel (which) I have read.*

180. QUI is never elided, so that QU' always stands for QUE, the accusative.

QUE cannot be used after prepositions.

QUI may be the object of a preposition if the antecedent is a **person** or persons, and if the phrase is **simple**; as,

L'homme de qui je parle,	*The man of whom I am speaking.*
Les messieurs avec qui j'ai voyagé,	*The gentlemen with whom I travelled.*

QUI is also used absolutely for *celui qui*; as, Qui veut la fin veut les moyens, *He who desires the end will accept the means.* And also between two verbs; as, Je sais qui vous aimez, *I know whom you love.*

181. *Qui* and *Que* agree in gender, number, and person with their antecedent, which affects the agreement of **verbs, participles, and adjectives.**

Moi qui **suis** votre ami,	*I who am your friend.*
Les personnes qui **sont** venues,	*The persons who are come.*
Votre mère qui **est** si heureuse de vous voir,	*Your mother who is so glad to see you.*

182. We have seen that Participles conjugated with *être* agree like adjectives with the *subject.* With AVOIR, on the contrary, they agree with the *direct object* (*accusative*) when it goes before them as in the case of the personal pronouns. **(155-6.)**

183. QUE being the **accusative**, the following participle of a transitive verb agrees with it; as,

Les livres **que** j'ai **lus**,	*The books I have read.*
Les amis **que** j'ai rencontrés,	*The friends I met.*
L'orange **que** l'enfant a mangée,	*The orange the child ate.*

184. No agreement if the Object is Indirect.

La dame **à qui** j'ai parlé,	*The lady to whom I spoke.*

EXERCISE 43.

This Exercise is as much on the agreement of the verb with its subject, and the agreement of participles, as on the relative pronoun. Notice particularly those participles which take être *in French but* to have *in English.*

Avez-vous remarqué la dame qui est entrée avec ma mère?—Non, je ne l'ai pas remarquée.—L'amie de qui vous avez reçu ce bel album, est partie pour le Havre.—J'ai visité la belle propriété que ce riche banquier a achetée.—Marie et Jeanne sont les deux élèves qui travaillent le mieux.—Les journaux parisiens qui donnent cette nouvelle sont arrivés hier soir.—C'est une dame qui est aimée et respectée de tout le monde.—La demoiselle que vous avez rencontrée chez moi, est une de mes meilleures élèves.—La lettre que j'ai écrite ce matin est partie par le courrier de quatre heures.—Savez-vous qui on a choisi?

The ships you see arrived (*are arrived*) yesterday morning from Toulon.—Show me the exercises you have written.—The review Mr Ferron lent me is very interesting.—There are (*Voilà*) some trees which have grown [2] well [1].—That banker has bought the estate which we visited last [2] year [1].—I know whom they (*on*) have appointed.—The gentlemen you met at my uncle's house have left (*are departed*) for America.—My son has blunted the tools the joiner lent him.—The tools which I find the most useful are the saw, the hammer, and the chisel.—The new school which has been built at the end (*bout*) of the village is not yet open.

185. *Singular.* *Plural.*

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*
LEQUEL	LAQUELLE	LESQUELS	LESQUELLES
DUQUEL	DE LAQUELLE	DESQUELS	DESQUELLES
AUQUEL	À LAQUELLE	AUXQUELS	AUXQUELLES

This pronoun may replace both *qui* and *que* for clearness or emphasis, for it shows the gender and number of the antecedent (but not case). Its principal use, however, is after prepositions, and referring to things or abstract nouns.

La paille sous laquelle il avait caché les objets volés.
The straw under which he had hidden the stolen articles.

186. DONT often replaces *duquel, de laquelle,* &c., and *de qui* in simple sentences.

187. WHOSE has no exact equivalent in French; it is generally translated by *dont,* of whom. The fact that *dont* is not a *possessive,* causes the noun in the following clause to be placed **after the verb** when it is its **object**; the order is the same as in English when it is the **Subject**—

Le monsieur **dont vous avez rencontré le fils.**
The gentleman whose son *you have met* (of whom *you have met* the son).
Le monsieur **dont le fils** vous a parlé.
The gentleman whose son *spoke to you.*

It is natural to have the SUBJECT **before** the verb and the OBJECT **after** it.

188. If *whose* is preceded by a *preposition,* it is clear that the latter governs the following noun and *not* the relative pronoun.

The gentleman *with whose son* you have travelled.
Le monsieur *avec le fils duquel* (NOT dont) vous avez voyagé (*with the son of whom*).

DONT never **follows the noun** in the relative clause, even when it translates *of which* :—The church *the steeple of which* is so high, *L'église* dont le clocher *est si élevé* (**not** *le clocher dont*).

189. Où, where, is also used as a relative pronoun, but almost exclusively for **time** and **place**; its equivalents are, *where, in* (*into*) *which, at which, on which, when.*

La chambre où je couche,	The room in which I sleep.
Le jour où il est mort,	The day on which he died.

It is also used with DE and PAR ; as,

La ville d'où (not *dont*) il est venu.
The town from which he came.

La route par où (or *par laquelle*) je suis venu.
The road by which I came.

190. The familiar English construction :—*The town he came from, the road I came by,* with the *relative* omitted and the *preposition* at the end, is **impossible** in French.

EXERCISE 44.

Je n'ai pas encore reçu l'argent sur lequel je compte pour régler cette facture.—Le livre auquel il a donné son nom n'est pas digne de lui.—Les lois auxquelles nous obéissons ne sont pas toujours justes.—William Wallace est un patriote écossais qui a laissé un grand nom, mais dont nous ne savons (*know*) pas grand'chose.

—Shakespeare est un grand écrivain anglais dont tout le monde connaît (*knows*) les ouvrages mais de la vie privée duquel on ne sait que peu de chose (*we know but little*).—L'heure où nous naissons (*are born*) est un premier pas vers la tombe.—Il arriva à Athènes le jour où la guerre fut déclarée.—Evitez les fautes où je suis tombé.—Voilà le col par où l'armée française a passé (il y a) huit jours (*ago*).

He is (*C'est*) a friend on whose fidelity I rely.—It is an event of which no mention is made (*il n'est pas fait mention*) in history.—The drawer into which I put the papers was not locked.—The artist whose pictures you admire so much (*tant*, after verb), died (*is died*) in poverty (*dans la misère*).—That is (*C'est*) a place where I have been (*am gone*) several times to spend my holidays.—Do you know (*Connaissez-vous*) the country from which he comes (*vient*)?—Have you visited the town we are speaking of?—I do not remember (*Je ne me rappelle plus*) the road by which we came.—That is (*Voilà*) the man whose story I told you.—The chair on which you are sitting (*seated*) is not strong (*solide*).—The table at which he was working (*Imp.*) was covered with (*encombré de*) books and newspapers.—I have seen in the papers the news of the wreck of a steamer, the engines of which were made in our works.

191. WHAT, as a compound relative equaling THAT WHICH, is rendered by,

CE QUI, subject (*nom.*).
CE QUE, direct object (*acc.*).
CE DONT, object of verb taking *de*.
CE À QUOI, object of verb taking *à*.

The above cases refer only to the *second* pronoun (the true relative), **ce**, the antecedent, being *invariable* in any case.

192. These forms occur in the beginning, and also in

the middle of sentences. In the latter case, CE may be omitted when there is a preposition expressed.

Il m'a dit ce qui était arrivé,	*He told me what had happened.*
Je sais ce que vous avez fait,	*I know what you have done.*
Ce qui me plaît c'est la tranquillité,	*What pleases me is quietness.*
Ce que vous me demandez est impossible,	*What you are asking of me is impossible.*
Ne savez-vous pas de quoi ils parlent? (not *dont* without *ce*)	*Do you not know what they are talking about?*
Je vous donnerai ce dont vous aurez besoin,	*I will give you what you need.*
Je devine à quoi vous pensez,	*I guess what you are thinking of.*
Parlons de ce qui vous amène,	*Let us speak of what brings you.*

193. The presence of *tout,* all, does not alter these forms :—

All (*that*) you have said is true,	*Tout ce que vous avez dit est vrai.*
All *that* glitters is not gold,	*Tout ce qui reluit n'est pas or.*

Beware of omitting *ce que*; as, All you have done, *Tout* ce que *vous avez fait.*

194. CE QUI, CE QUE, &c., also translate *which,* when the antecedent is a *clause* and not a single noun; as, He forgot his books, *which* vexed the master, *Il avait oublié ses livres, ce qui fâcha le maître.*

NOTE.—In translating WHAT, it is absolutely necessary to understand the relation in which it stands to the verb in the relative clause, and if the second pronoun (*that* WHICH) is in the objective, the *case* or *preposition* the French verb governs.

EXERCISE 45.

Il ne m'a pas dit ce qu'il avait acheté.—Je voudrais (*should like*) savoir ce qui vous amène.—Racontez-moi tout ce que vous avez fait.—Ce qu'il nous avait demandé était impossible.—Mon père a promis de me donner tout ce dont j'aurai besoin.—Quelques-uns de ces jardins ne sont enclos que de haies, ce qui égaie la rue (V. Hugo).—Lisez (*read*) cet article et dites-nous (*tell*)

ce que vous en pensez.—Tout ce qu'il a tenté lui a réussi.—Regardez ce que ces ouvriers ont fait.—Je pense à ce que vous m'avez dit.—Je ne sais (*don't know*) de quoi garnir ce chapeau.—J'aime tout ce qui est beau.

Do you know (*Savez-vous*) what I have given to my grandfather for his birthday?—I guess what you have bought.—Show me all you have written.—What he says (*dit*) is absurd.—Tell (*dites*) me what he asked you for.—All you have done is well done.—He has forgotten all he knew (*savait*).—I do not know (*sais*) what has (*is*) happened.—Speak to me of what interests you most.—I want (*veux*) to know (*savoir*) what he is talking (*speaking*) about (*of*).—That child has been punished for a fault he did not commit, which is very unjust.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

195. Interrogative Pronouns resemble relatives to a great extent, but their **use** and **case forms** are **very different.**

Qui? is used for **persons only,** and is invariable—that is, it can be used in any case to translate *who? whom?* (*whose?* will be, *of* or *to whom?* as before).

Qui est là?	*Who is there?*
Qui avez-vous vu?	*Whom have you seen?*
De qui parlez-vous?	*Of whom are you speaking?* (*Who are you speaking of?*)
A qui est ce mouchoir?	*Whose handkerchief is this?* (*To whom is this handkerchief?*)

196. On the contrary, the neuter what has three cases:—

Nominative.	**Qu'est-ce qui?**	What?
Accusative.	**Que? (Qu' ?)**	What?
After a preposition.	**—— quoi?**	— what?

Qu'est-ce qui vous est arrivé?	*What has happened to you?*
Que vous a-t-il fait?	*What has he done to you?*
De quoi avez-vous besoin?	*What do you need?*

197. WHAT alone is **quoi**, exclamative or interrogative; as,

Quoi! vous ne saviez pas cela? *What! you did not know that?*

The pupil MUST learn to reflect on the CASE of *what?*

198. NOTE.—The above pronouns are often replaced (especially in familiar conversation) by the following (periphrastic) forms:—

Instead of *qui?* (personal)—

Nominative.	**Qui est-ce qui?**	Who?
Accusative.	**Qui est-ce que? (qu'?)**	Whom?
Indirect (after preposition).	**A qui est-ce que?**	To whom?
	De qui est-ce que?	Of whom?

For *what?* (neuter)—

Nominative.	**Qu'est-ce qui?** (*only form*)	What?
Accusative.	**Qu'est-ce que?**	What?
Indirect.	De quoi est-ce que? (*not so much used*).	Of what?

199. It will be seen from the above, that the difference between the personal and the neuter forms lies in the first pronouns: QUI in the former, QU' in the latter. The last pronoun is really a relative; *qui*, subject; *que*, objective in both instances. Notice that with these periphrastic forms in the objective, the inversion disappears in the following subject and verb:—

Qui avez-vous vu?	Whom did you see? (have you seen?)
Qui est-ce que vous avez vu?	
Qu'a-t-il fait?	What did he do? (has he done?)
Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait?	

200. LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, &c., and its contractions, DUQUEL and AUQUEL, &c., are also interrogative pronouns translating *which?* (DONT **is never interrogative.**)

Lequel de ces livres a-t-il choisi?	*Which of these books has he chosen?*
J'ai écrit à un de mes amis.—Auquel?	*I have written to one of my friends.—To which?*

201. Notice that these pronouns may be plural, which is not shown in English, except occasionally by the agreement of the verb.

Lesquels de ces livres avez-vous choisis ?	*Which (two or more) of these books have you chosen ?*
Lesquels de ces chevaux sont les meilleurs ?	*Which of these horses* are *the best ?*

EXERCISE 46.

A qui allez-vous envoyer ce sac de pommes ?—Qui vous a dit que je n'étais pas en ville ?—Qui ont-ils accusé de ce crime ?—Qui est-ce qui est entré dans ma chambre en mon absence ?—Que cherchez-vous ?—Qu'est-ce que vous cherchez ?—Qu'est-ce qui vous a mis en colère ?—Qu'ont-ils fait hier ?—Qu'avez-vous perdu ?—Qu'est-ce qui a fait ce bruit ?—A qui avez-vous réclamé cet argent ?—De quoi aura-t-il besoin ?—De qui est-ce que vous avez reçu cette dépêche ?—J'ai loué une de ces maisons.—Laquelle ?—Pour lequel de vos enfants avez-vous acheté cette grammaire française ?—Comment traduit-on : "Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça ?"—Cela se rend simplement par : "What's that ?"

Write the sentences in both forms when possible.

Who wrote (*has written*) that book ?—Whom did you meet in Paris ?—Who told you that ?—Whom are you angry with ?—Whose gloves are those ? (*To whom are those gloves ?*)—From (*to*) whom did you ask that information ?—What did you give him ?—What did he give you ?—What has made (*rendu*) the children ill ?—What has happened to your brother ?—What is written on the wall ?—With what have you done that (*cela*) ?—One of my sisters is married.—Which ?—Two of my cousins (*fem.*) are married.—Which ?—Which of my cousins are you speaking of ?—To which of those tradesmen have you written ?—What are you thinking about (*of*) ?—To whom did you hand (*remis*) the money ?—What shall we play at ?—What ! you are not yet gone (*departed*) ?

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE *QUEL*.

202. The *Interrogative Adjective* precedes a noun, and agrees with it in gender and number.

Singular.		*Plural.*			
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*		
QUEL	QUELLE	QUELS	QUELLES	*what?*	or *which?*
DE QUEL	DE QUELLE	DE QUELS	DE QUELLES	*of what?*	or *of which?*
À QUEL	À QUELLE	À QUELS	À QUELLES	*to what?*	or *to which?*

Quel jour?	*What*, or *which day?*
De quelle ville?	*From what*, or *which town?*
A quels jeux?	*At what*, or *which games?*

This adjective is used as a pronoun before the verb *être*, rendering *what? which?* and even *who?*

Note the difference in construction.

Quels sont ces vaisseaux?	*What ships are those?*
Quel est ce monument?	*What building is that?*
Quels sont ces messieurs?	*Who (What) are those gentlemen?*
Quelle est cette dame?	*Who (What) is that lady?*

We can also say,

Qui sont ces messieurs?
Qui est cette dame?

203. As in the case of relative pronouns, the preposition cannot come at the end.

What gentleman were you talking TO?
A quel monsieur parliez-vous?

204. QUEL! is also exclamative, and is never followed by *a*.

What a man!	Quel homme!
What a house!	Quelle maison!
What a fine river!	Quel beau fleuve! *or*, Quelle belle rivière!

The article has also this force with an adjective; as, *Oh, la belle rivière!*

EXERCISE 47.

General revision of preceding pronouns and adjectives.

What country does he come from? (*vient-il?*) What has made (*rendu*) you so pale?—I do not know (*ne sais pas*) what has made me so ill.—Which of those shawls do you think (*find*) the prettier (*prettiest*)?—I do not know which to choose.—Which of those young ladies is the minister's daughter?—What books are those on your table?—Which of those sticks is yours?—Which of those sticks are yours?—Which way did he go? (*Of what side is he gone?*)—What newspapers have you brought?—Of which of these novels have you made (*fait*) a translation?—What bad weather!—What a naughty boy!—To which of these regiments does he belong?

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

205. We have already noticed CE as a demonstrative adjective; it is also a pronoun, as in the compounds CE QUI, &c. It occurs alone only in a few expressions and before *être*.

C'est mon frère,	*He is my brother.*
C'est vrai,	*It is true.*
Ce sera un plaisir pour moi,	*It will be a pleasure for me.*
Sur ce, bon soir!	*Well now, good night!*

There may be another verb before *être*.

Ce doit être vrai,	*It must be true.*
Ç'a été terrible,	*It was terrible.*

206. It is compounded with CI (old form of *ici*, here) and with LÀ, there; CECI, this (here); CELA (no accent) that (there).

These pronouns are used for things pointed at, but not named. CELA is more used than CECI, except when there is contrast. CELA, the further object, or what is

past ; ceci, the nearer, or what is *to come.* They refer also to statements and phrases—

Rendez-moi cela,	*Give me back that.*
Cela n'est pas vrai,	*That is not true.*
Voyez-vous ceci ? (cela ?)	*Do you see this ?*
Ecoutez ceci,	*Listen to this (what I am going to say).*
Ceci est beau, cela est laid,	*This is pretty, that is ugly.*

207. Ce forms with the disjunctive pronouns *lui, elle, eux, elles,* the following compounds :—

CELUI,	*he, him, the one, that.*
CELLE,	*she, her, the one, that.*
CEUX, CELLES,	*they, them, the ones, those.*

They are invariable as regards case.

208. English Equivalents :—

(*a.*) The possessive with noun understood.

My house and my neighbour's (house),

render,

My house and that of my neighbour,
Ma maison et celle de mon voisin.

209. (*b.*) *He, him, she, her, the one,* &c., before a relative pronoun.

He who studies best,	*Celui qui travaille (travaillera) le mieux.*
The prize will be for him who makes the fewest mistakes,	*Le prix sera pour celui qui fera le moins de fautes.*
I will give this to the one I love best,	*Je donnerai ceci à celui (celle) que j'aime le mieux.*
What book do you want ?	*Quel livre voulez-vous ?*
The one I lent you,	*Celui que je vous ai prêté.*
Those who come first shall have the first pick,	*Ceux (celles) qui viendront les premiers (premières) auront le premier choix.*
What engravings have you brought ?	*Quelles gravures avez-vous apportées ?*
Those I spoke to you about,	*Celles dont je vous ai parlé.*

210. (*c.*) The same construction as in (*a*), but expressed in English by *that of, or from, those of, or from,* &c., or before any clause which can be introduced by DE.

What wines do you prefer?—Those of France.	*Quels vins préférez-vous?—Ceux de France.*
Which garden is the larger?—The front one.	*Lequel des deux jardins est le plus grand?—Celui de devant.*
What house?—The one opposite.	*Quelle maison?—Celle d'en face.*

211. Note that the latter construction is often rendered by the adjective alone :—

Which horse?—The black one. *Quel cheval?—Le noir* (not *un*).

Sometimes we must introduce a relative pronoun and a verb.

Which park?—The one near the river.	*Quel parc?—Celui qui se trouve près de la rivière.*

These constructions need considerable experience of the language, but the pupil can at least learn to recognise them when met with.

212. CI and LÀ are added to *celui,* &c., for emphasis or contrast, but **never when** DE, or a RELATIVE PRONOUN **follows** :—

CELUI-CI, *this one;* &c. CELUI-LÀ, *that one.* &c.

These adverbial particles are also added to nouns in contrast :—

Cette maison-ci et celle-là, *This house and that one.*

but,

Cette maison-ci et celle de votre père,	*This house and your father's.*
Cette maison-ci et celle que j'ai achetée,	*This house and the one I have bought.*

The following clause so determines the sense that the use of *là* would be absurd.

213. CELUI-LÀ also translates *the former,* and CELUI-CI *the latter.*

EXERCISE 48.

Take great care to get the right gender and number of the pronouns.

Qui vous a dit cela ?—Prenez (*take*) ceci, laissez cela. —Quelle serviette dois-je (*shall I*) prendre ?—Celle qui se trouve sur ma commode.—Ce malheureux a perdu toute sa fortune et aussi celle de sa femme.—Parmi mes élèves j'aime surtout ceux qui sont travailleurs, francs et intelligents.—Laquelle de ces montres préférez-vous ? —J'ai choisi celle-ci.—J'ai choisi celle que vous avez à la (*in your*) main.—Cet hôtel-ci est trop petit pour moi et celui-là est trop cher.—Voici le compte du boucher et celui de l'épicier.—Je réglerai celui-ci mais pas celui-là. —Avez-vous lu les traductions de Pope ?—Non, mais je connais (*know*) celles de Delille.

It is impossible.—That is impossible.—Which do you prefer, Racine's tragedies or Corneille's ?—I like best (*no article*) those of Racine.—My children are turbulent, my neighbour's are naughty.—I have corrected all these compositions ; this one is the best.—Which is the most advanced of your pupils ?—The one who has just read (*vient de lire*).—Which is the most expensive[2] picture[1] in your gallery ?—That one.—What does that fellow want ? (What does he want (*veut-il*) that one ?)— It is not that (fellow) (*one*) who will win the race.—Of all those songs (*romance,* fem.) it is the one you sang last night that I like the best (*le mieux*).—Racine and Corneille are equally admirable ; the former shows us men as they are, the latter depicts them (*dépeint*) as they ought (*devraient*) to be.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

Indefinite Pronouns.

214. *Indefinite Pronouns* are never joined to a noun, and are the following:—

On, *people, they, we, one.*
Quelqu'un, m., quelqu'une, f., *some one, any one.*
Quelques-uns, m., quelques-unes, f., *some, a few.*
Chacun, m., chacune, f., *each.*
Autrui,* *others, other people.*
Personne, *nobody, anybody.*
Quelque chose, m., *something.*
Rien, *nothing, anything.*
Quoi que, *whatever* (with subjunctive) (237).

* Generally governed by a preposition.

215. On is used with the verb in the third person singular, and when no particular person is designated as the subject of it; as, *on dit,* they say.

On is a most important word in French. It is always subject, and often allows an active construction when the English is passive; as,

I am told,	*On me dit.*
It is not allowed,	*On ne le permet pas.*

216. *N.B.*—The pronoun *on* takes *l* with an apostrophe (*l'*) after the words *et, si, où, que, qui,* and *quoi,* except when the following word is *le, la,* or *les;* as,

Si l'on dit cela,	*If they say that.*
Si on le dit,	*If they say so.*

This *l'* is not absolutely necessary, and in modern French there is a tendency to drop it.

[On derives from the Latin *homo,* Old French, om; the *l'* is therefore the article; thus *l'on* is cognate with *l'homme. Cf.* German *Mann* and *man.*]

217. PERSONNE, as a pronoun, is always masculine and singular. It is used with the negative *ne* before the verb to express *nobody, no person;* as,

PERSONNE ne le sait,	*Nobody knows it.*
Je NE connais PERSONNE ici,	*I know no one here.*

and without it, in interrogative sentences and those expressing doubt, to mean *any person, anybody;* as, Y a-t-il PERSONNE de parfait? *Is anybody perfect?*

Je doute que PERSONNE le persuade, { *I doubt whether anyone will persuade him.*

218. When *personne* means a person, a man or woman, people, it is a feminine noun, and when *quelque chose* means *some* THING *or other,* or *whatever thing,* it is feminine. *Chose,* a thing, is always feminine.

219. RIEN, used with the negative, means *nothing;* and without it, in interrogative sentences and those expressing doubt, it means *anything* or *something;* as,

RIEN NE lui plaît,	*Nothing pleases him.*
Il NE m'a RIEN donné,	*He gave me nothing.*
Je doute que RIEN le persuade,	{ *I doubt whether anything will persuade him.*

220. *Personne* and *rien* used alone, always mean *nobody* and *nothing.*

Qu'a-t-il dit?—Rien.
Qui avez-vous vu?—Personne.

Rien is also used as a masculine noun, and means *a trifle—*

UN RIEN le fâche,	*Any trifle vexes him.*

[RIEN derives from *rem,* acc. of *res,* a thing.]

221. QUELQUES-UNS (*unes*) takes EN with the verb of which it is the object; as,

Donnez-m'en quelques-uns,	*Give me a few.*
J'en ai acheté quelques-unes,	*I have bought a few.*

222. Indefinite pronouns followed by an adjective require DE before the latter—

Quoi de nouveau?	*What news?*
Rien de beau,	*Nothing fine.*

EXERCISE 49.

Nous avons vu quelque chose de bien joli.—"Ah! la belle chose (que de) (*to*) savoir quelque chose!" (Molière).—Il ne dit jamais rien d'intéressant.—On voit (*sees*) bien que cet homme est fou.—On est venu demander des nouvelles de votre santé.—Je ne puis (*can't*) y parvenir quoi que je fasse (*do*).—Vous avez là de bien belles prunes; je vous prie de m'en donner quelques-unes.—Chacun de mes camarades a remporté deux ou trois prix.—Aucun domestique n'assistait au repas; chacun se servait soi-même et servait les autres. (E. About).—Quelques-unes de ces dames sont étrangères.—Personne ne l'a vue sortir.—Ne faites (*do*) pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez (*would like*) pas qu'on vous fît (*should do*).

Second conjugation should be known at this stage.

People speak (*dit*) in (*of*) one way and often act in another.—They say that the queen will be soon here.—Some one related to me all the particulars of the adventure.—A few are displeased with (*of*) the last measure.—Each of my brothers has now a situation.—A good heart rejoices (*se réjouit*) at (*of*) the success of others.—Nobody condemns him.—Nothing will give (*fera*) them (*a*) greater pleasure.—A person asked [for] you during your absence.—What did they give you?—Nothing.—We saw nothing pretty.—Show me something useful.

Indefinite Adjectives.

223. Among the indefinite adjectives, the following are always joined to a noun:—

QUELQUE, *some, whatever.*
CHAQUE, *each, every.*
QUELCONQUE, *any, whatever* (is put after a noun).
CERTAIN, masc., CERTAINE, fem., *certain.**

* CERTAINS is occasionally used as a pronoun—

Certains le disent, *Some people say so.*

224. QUELQUE, before a noun, is put in the same number, and means *some, a few;* as,

Vous avez fait QUELQUES fautes, } *You made some (a few) mistakes.*

225. *Quelque,* with *que* before the next verb, governs the subjunctive, and means *whatever;* as,

QUELQUES talents QU'on ait, WHATEVER *talents one may have.*

226. *Quel que,* whatever, followed by the verb *être,* to be, is written in two words, and the first of them agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb; as,

QUELLE QUE soit sa fortune, WHATEVER *his fortune may be.*

227. *Quelque,* before an adjective, an adverb, or a participle past, is invariable, and means *however, howsoever;* as,

QUELQUE mécontents qu'ils soient, } HOWEVER *displeased they may be.*

228. *Quelque,* invariable, is also used before a numeral; as,

Quelque cinq cents francs, *Some (about) 500 francs.*

229. *Quelconque* is sometimes used in the plural—

Deux points quelconques étant donnés, } *Any two points being given.*

EXERCISE 50.

Learn the Subjunctive Mood of avoir, être, *and the 1st and 2nd conjugations.*

Prêtez-moi un roman quelconque pour tuer le temps. Quels que soient vos ennuis, il ne faut pas (*you must not*) perdre courage.—Quelque difficile que paraisse (*appear*) ce travail on en viendra à bout avec le temps (*it will be done in time*).—"Ma raison me le dit chaque jour, mais la raison n'est pas ce qui règle l'amour."

(Molière).—Je ne veux (*will*) pas écouter vos raisons, quelles qu'elles soient.—J'ai planté quelques arbres dans mon jardin.—Quelques-uns des arbres que j'ai plantés sont morts.

Some historians say so (*it*).—Whatever fault you have committed, they will forgive (*it*) you.—However cunning they are, they are sometimes deceived.—He will give the boy a prize of some sort.—Send me those goods, whatever they may be.—Every day I tell him to (*of*) do it.—Give me any book in the meantime (*en attendant*).—Certain people (*gens*, fem. plur.) think the contrary.—We lost some three hundred men.

230. The following *indefinite adjectives* are sometimes joined to a noun as adjectives, and sometimes are used alone as pronouns :—

NUL, m., NULLE, f., *none, not one,* } require *ne* before the verb.
AUCUN, m., AUCUNE, f., *nobody, none,* }
L'UN L'AUTRE, m., L'UNE L'AUTRE, f., *one another.*
MÊME, *same, self, like, very.*
TEL, m., TELLE, f., *such, such a one, he who, she who.*
PLUSIEURS, *several* (invariable).
TOUT, m., TOUTE, f., *every, each, any, any one.*
(TOUT . . . QUE, *however, as,* requires the Indicative.)

231. L'UN L'AUTRE, is used in speaking of two. LES UNS LES AUTRES, LES UNES LES AUTRES, of more than two. Prepositions are only put before *l'autre*; as, *Ils sont fâchés l'un contre l'autre,* They are angry with each other.

These pronouns are used in connection with reflexive verbs, and will be mentioned when they are treated (319).

232 With, L'UN ET L'AUTRE, *both,**
L'UN OU L'AUTRE, *either,*
NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE, *neither,*

a preposition is repeated before both pronouns; as,
À L'UN ET À L'AUTRE, *to both.*
NI DE L'UN NI DE L'AUTRE, *from neither.*

* BOTH, is also expressed by *tous deux*, or *tous les deux.*

233. TOUT, as an indefinite adjective, is generally used in the singular, and never takes an article; as,

TOUT homme vertueux,	*Every virtuous man.*
De TOUTE (s) espèce (s),	*Of every kind (Of all kinds).*

The article always comes **after** TOUT, TOUTE, *all, whole,* and their plurals, TOUS, TOUTES, *all, every;* as,

Tout LE monde, *Everybody.*	Tous LES hommes, *All men.*
Toute LA journée, *All day.*	Tous LES jours, *Every day.*
Toute UNE armée, *A whole army.*	Toutes LES fois, *Every time.*

234. *Tout*—adverb, *quite, entirely,* is invariable; as,

Elles étaient TOUT interdites, *They were quite thunderstruck.*

but, before an adjective or participle feminine, beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirated, it agrees with the noun or pronoun for the sake of euphony; as,

Elles étaient TOUTES surprises,	*They were quite surprised.*
Elle était TOUTE honteuse,	*She was quite ashamed.*

REMARK.—Ils étaient TOUT contents, means, *They were* greatly *pleased.* Ils étaient TOUS contents, *They were* all *pleased.*

235. *Tout*—a substantive, signifies *the whole,* and is masculine; as,

Divisez le TOUT en quatre, *Divide the whole into four.*

236. TEL, takes the indefinite and partitive articles before it—

Un tel homme.	*De tels romans.*
Une telle maison.	*De telles fautes.*

237. Some *indefinite adjectives* and *pronouns* are always followed by QUE, and govern the subjunctive; as,

QUI QUE, *whoever;* only used with *être,* to be, in the first and second persons singular and plural; and in
QUI QUE CE SOIT, *whoever (it may be).*
QUEL QUE, *whoever;* used with *être,* to be, only in the third persons singular and plural.
QUOI QUE, object of any Subjunctive.

Thus we say :—

Qui que vous soyez, *Whoever you may be.*

but,

Quel qu'il soit, *Whoever he may be.*
Qui que ce soit, *Whoever* IT *may be.*

(more vague, the person not known.)

Quoi que vous en disiez, *Whatever you may say about it.*

EXERCISE 51.

All words having a negative sense *require* NE *before the accompanying verb.*

"Voyons, faut-il (*must I*) les tuer tous deux?" (Courier).—Aucun doute qu'ils ne reviennent (*will return*) en plus grand nombre.—Nul homme vivant ne le sait (*knows*).—Elle était tout heureuse d'avoir reçu une lettre de son fiancé.—Je ne montrerai ce cachet à qui que ce soit.—Arrête-toi, passant, qui que tu sois, et songe à ceci, que tu seras un jour ce que je suis.—"Une telle action ne saurait s'excuser (*cannot be excused*) et tout homme d'honneur s'en doit scandaliser" (*ought to be scandalised at it*) (Molière).—J'aime Paris et Bruxelles, je les ai habités l'un et l'autre.—On ne donnera de récompense ni à l'un ni à l'autre.

No reason can (*ne peut*) justify falsehood.—None would dare do it.—No argument can convince him of it.—None of those ladies have come.—They (*f.*) study in emulation (*à l'envi*) of one another.—Such a lesson will be useful to them (*conjunctive*).—Several accidents on the railway are mentioned (215) in yesterday's paper.—Several of my friends have assisted me.—She was all trembling when I got her out (*l'ai fait descendre*) of the carriage.—You shall not enter here, whoever you are.—The deputies were all displeased with their reception.—I have read both of those novels.

THE VERB

French verbs are divided into six kinds:—*Auxiliary, Active, Passive, Neuter, Reflected,* and *Impersonal* or *Unipersonal.*

238. The *Auxiliary* verbs, which help to conjugate others, are AVOIR, to have, and être, to be.

239. IMPORTANT REMARK.—In practising verbs remember that **all prepositions** govern the **Infinitive,** except **en,** *in, on, by, while,* which takes the **Present Participle.**

As-tu peur de tomber?	*Are you afraid of falling?*
Il fut puni pour avoir désobéi,	*He was punished for disobeying.*
En lisant,	*While reading. By reading.*

240. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb

AVOIR, to have.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT OF THE INFINITIVE.	
Avoir,	*To have.*	**Avoir eu,**	*To have had.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	
Ayant,	*Having.*	**Ayant eu,**	*Having had.*

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Eu, *m.*, **eue,** *f.*, had.*

* EU agrees like any other participle when it has a transitive force; as,

La peine que j'ai eue,	*The trouble I have had.*
Quels malheurs il a eus!	*What misfortunes he has had!*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
J'ai,	*I have.*	J'ai eu,	*I have had.*
tu as,	*thou hast.*	tu as eu,	*thou hast had.*
il, *or* elle a,	*he*, or *she has.*	il a eu,	*he has had.*
nous avons,	*we have.*	nous avons eu,	*we have had.*
vous avez,	*you have.*	vous avez eu,	*you have had.*
ils, *or* elles ont,	*they have.*	ils ont eu,	*they have had.*

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
J'avais,	*I had (used to have), &c.*	J'avais eu,	*I had had, &c.*
tu avais,		tu avais eu,	
il avait,		il avait eu,	
nous avions,		nous avions eu,	
vous aviez,		vous aviez eu,	
ils avaient,		ils avaient eu,	

PRETERITE (PASSÉ DÉFINI).		PAST ANTERIOR.	
J'eus,*	*I had, &c.*	J'eus eu,	*I had had, &c.*
tu eus,		tu eus eu,	
il eut,		il eut eu,	
nous eûmes,		nous eûmes eu,	
vous eûtes,		vous eûtes eu,	
ils eurent,		ils eurent eu,	

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
J'aurai,	*I shall have, &c.*	J'aurai eu,	*I shall have had, &c.*
tu auras,		tu auras eu,	
il aura,		il aura eu,	
nous aurons,		nous aurons eu,	
vous aurez,		vous aurez eu,	
ils auront,		ils auront eu,	

* The Preterite is often replaced by the Past Indefinite in conversation, as we have already seen. The *Preterite* is the *narrative* or *historic tense*.—The Past Anterior will be explained later on.

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
J'aurais,	*I should have, &c.*	J'aurais eu,	*I should have had, &c.*
tu aurais,		tu aurais eu,	
il aurait,		il aurait eu,	
nous aurions,		nous aurions eu,	
vous auriez,		vous auriez eu,	
ils auraient,		ils auraient eu,	

Imperative.

Aie,	*Have (thou).*
qu'il ait,	*let him have.*
ayons,	*let us have.*
ayez,	*have (ye).*
qu'ils aient,	*let them have.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		PAST OR PERFECT.	
Que j'aie,	*That I may* * *have, &c.*	Que j'aie eu,	*That I may* * *have had, &c.*
que tu aies,		que tu aies eu,	
qu'il ait,		qu'il ait eu,	
que nous ayons,		que nous ayons eu,	
que vous ayez,		que vous ayez eu,	
qu'ils aient,		qu'ils aient eu,	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que j'eusse,	*That I might* * *have, &c.*	Que j'eusse eu,	*That I might* * *have had, &c.*
que tu eusses,		que tu eusses eu,	
qu'il eût,		qu'il eût eu,	
que nous eussions,		que nous eussions eu,	
que vous eussiez,		que vous eussiez eu,	
qu'ils eussent,		qu'ils eussent eu,	

* *May* and *might* are the accepted translations of the Subjunctive tenses, but they are apt to be very misleading. As a point of fact the French Subjunctive is not thus rendered once in a hundred times.

241. Negative Construction.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Ne pas avoir, *or* N'avoir pas,	*Not to have.*	Ne pas avoir eu, *or* N'avoir pas eu,	*Not to have had.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
N'ayant pas,	*Not having.*	N'ayant pas eu,	*Not having had.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je n'ai pas,*	*I have not, &c.*	Je n'ai pas eu,	*I have not had, &c.*
tu n'as pas,		tu n'as pas eu,	
il n'a pas,		il n'a pas eu,	
nous n'avons pas,		nous n'avons pas eu,	
vous n'avez pas,		vous n'avez pas eu,	
ils n'ont pas,		ils n'ont pas eu,	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Je n'avais pas, &c.	*I had not. &c.*	Je n'avais pas eu, &c.	*I had not had. &c.*

PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.	
Je n'eus pas, &c.	*I had not. &c.*	Je n'eus pas eu, &c.	*I had not had. &c.*

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Je n'aurai pas, &c.	*I shall not have. &c.*	Je n'aurai pas eu, &c.	*I shall not have had. &c.*

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je n'aurais pas, &c.	*I should not have. &c.*	Je n'aurais pas eu, &c.	*I should not have had. &c.*

* See Note (275).

Imperative.

N'aie pas,	*Do not have.*
qu'il n'ait pas,	*Let him not have.*
n'ayons pas,	*Let us not have.*
n'ayez pas,	*Do not have.*
qu'ils n'aient pas,	*Let them not have.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Que je n'aie pas.
que tu n'aies pas.
qu'il n'ait pas.
&c.

PERFECT.

Que je n'aie pas eu.
que tu n'aies pas eu.
qu'il n'ait pas eu.
&c.

IMPERFECT.

Que je n'eusse pas.
que tu n'eusses pas.
qu'il n'eût pas.
&c.

PLUPERFECT.

Que je n'eusse pas eu.
que tu n'eusses pas eu.
qu'il n'eût pas eu.
&c.

242. Interrogative Form.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

Ai-je?
as-tu?
a-t-il?*
avons-nous?
avez-vous?
ont-ils?
} &c. *Have I?*

PAST INDEFINITE.

Ai-je eu?
as-tu eu?
a-t-il eu?
avons-nous eu?
avez-vous eu?
ont-ils eu?
} &c. *Have I had?*

IMPERFECT.

Avais-je? *Had I?*
&c. &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Avais-je eu? *Had I had?*
&c. &c.

PRETERITE.

Est-ce que j'eus?
eus-tu?
eut-il? &c.
} &c. *Had I?*

PAST ANTERIOR.

Not used in the Interrogative form.

* See Remark (280-1).

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Aurai-je?	*Shall I have, &c.*	Aurai-je eu?	*Shall I have had? &c.*
Auras-tu?		auras-tu eu?	
Aura-t-il?*		aura-t-il eu?	
&c.		&c.	

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Aurais-je?	*Should I have?*	Aurais-je eu?	*Should I have had? &c.*
&c.	*&c.*	&c.	

There is no Interrogative form of the INFINITIVE, IMPERATIVE, or SUBJUNCTIVE Moods.

243. Interrogative Form Negatively.

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
N'ai-je pas?	*Have I not? &c.*	N'ai-je pas eu?	*Have I not had? &c.*
n'as-tu pas,?		n'as-tu pas eu?	
n'a-t-il pas?		n'a-t-il pas eu?	
n'avons-nous pas?		n'avons-nous pas eu?	
n'avez-vous pas?		n'avez-vous pas eu?	
n'ont-ils pas?		n'ont-ils pas eu?	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
N'avais-je pas?	*Had I not?*	N'avais-je pas eu?	*Had I not had? &c.*
&c.	*&c.*	&c.	

PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.
Est-ce que je n'eus pas?	*Had I not? &c.*	*Not used.*
N'eus-tu pas?		
n'eut-il pas?		
&c.		

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
N'aurai-je pas?	*Shall I not have. &c.*	N'aurai-je pas eu?	*Shall I not have had? &c.*
&c.		&c.	

* See Remark (280-1).

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
N'aurais-je pas? &c.	*Should I not have? &c.*	N'aurais-je pas eu? &c.	*Should I not have had? &c.*

244. AVOIR forms the compound tenses of ALL **transitive verbs** in the **active voice.** This stands to reason, for the use of ÊTRE gives the **passive voice.** It is also used with most neuter verbs.

245. *Avoir* also enters into many idiomatic expressions, and has many uses which differ from English; as,

Qu'avez-vous?
Qu'est-ce que vous avez? } What is the matter with you?

Je n'ai rien, { There is nothing the matter with me.

avoir faim,	to be hungry (*have hunger*).
avoir soif,	to be thirsty.
avoir peur (*de*),	to be afraid (of).
avoir chaud,	to be warm (to feel warm).
avoir froid,	to be cold.
avoir raison (*de*),	to be right (in).
avoir tort (*de*),	to be wrong (in).
avoir besoin (*de*),	to need (have need of).
avoir sommeil,	to be (feel) sleepy.
avoir honte (*de*),	to be ashamed (of).
avoir beau (*faire*),	*to do* (or any verb) in vain.

246. And for sensations in parts of the body:—

avoir froid aux mains,	to have cold hands.
avoir mal à la tête,	to have a headache.
avoir mal aux dents,	to have toothache.
avoir mal au cœur,	to feel sick.
avoir le mal de mer,	to be sea-sick.
avoir un point de côté,	to have a stitch in the side.
&c.	&c.

And of age:—

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai quatorze ans,	I am fourteen.

N.B.—Be careful to practise these expressions in DIFFERENT TENSES; as,

Vous AUREZ faim,	*You will be hungry.*
J'AI EU peur,	*I was afraid.*
Quoique j'AIE raison,	*Although I am right.*
&c.	*&c.*

247. Note also —

Avoir l'air (*de*),	to look (as if).
Avoir bonne (mauvaise) mine,	to look well (ill).
Avoir envie (*de*),	to have a mind (wish).
Avoir soin (*de*),	to take care.

GOT, after *to have,* is not translated.

I have got *some money,* J'ai de l'argent.

Y AVOIR, is treated among the Impersonal Verbs (322).

EXERCISE *52.*

J'aurai plus de patience à (*in*) l'avenir.—Rome a eu des rois, des consuls et des empereurs.—Les soldats de Léonidas eurent le courage de mourir à leur poste.—Nous avons eu recours à sa bonté.—J'ai besoin de lui parler.—Votre neveu aura bientôt besoin d'argent.—J'aurais eu peur si j'avais été à votre place.—Il avait honte de sa mauvaise conduite.—Il avait beau parler, on ne l'écoutait plus.—J'ai le mal de mer chaque fois que je passe la Manche.—Vous avez mauvaise mine, mon ami, qu'avez-vous?—J'ai bien mal à la tête.—Vous auriez tort de voyager en cette saison.—Nous avons mal aux pieds d'avoir tant marché.—Cette dame a l'air aimable.

You have had much trouble.—How old are you?—I am sixteen.—I shall be seventeen next[2] month[1].—What a fright I got! (*have had*).—She has a mind to go out.—The servant will take care to wake you at half past six.—Are you not ashamed to have said such a thing?—No, I was (*Past Indefinite*) right in saying

(*of say*) it.—What is the matter with you?—I am very sleepy.—The child is crying because he is cold.—Although you are (*Subjunctive*) in the right, do not bring an action against (*à*) your neighbour.—I have a stitch in (*de*) [my] side from having run so long.—I have been several times to (*in*) America and (*I*) have never been sea-sick.—You look as if you did not believe me (*de ne pas me croire*).

248. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb

ÊTRE, to be.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT INFINITIVE.	
Être,	*to be.*	Avoir été,	*To have been.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	
Étant,	*Being,*	Ayant été,	*Having been.*

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Été, *been* (invariable).

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je suis,	*I am, &c.*	J'ai été,	*I have been, &c.*
tu es,		tu as été,	
il, *or* elle est,		il a été,	
nous sommes,		nous avons été,	
vous êtes,		vous avez été,	
ils, *or* elles sont,		ils ont été,	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
J'étais,	*I was, &c.*	J'avais été,	*I had been, &c.*
tu étais,		tu avais été,	
il était,		il avait été,	
nous étions,		nous avions été,	
vous étiez,		vous aviez été,	
ils étaient,		ils avaient été,	

PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.	
Je fus,	*I was, &c.*	J'eus été,	*I had been, &c.*
tu fus,		tu eus été,	
il fut,		il eut été,	
nous fûmes,		nous eûmes été,	
vous fûtes,		vous eûtes été,	
ils furent,		ils eurent été,	

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Je serai,	*I shall be, &c.*	J'aurai été,	*I shall have been, &c.*
tu seras,		tu auras été,	
il sera,		il aura été,	
nous serons,		nous aurons été,	
vous serez,		vous aurez été,	
ils seront,		ils auront été,	

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je serais,	*I should be, &c.*	J'aurais été,	*I should have been, &c.*
tu serais,		tu aurais été,	
il serait,		il aurait été,	
nous serions,		nous aurions été,	
vous seriez,		vous auriez été,	
ils seraient,		ils auraient été,	

Imperative.

Sois,	*Be (thou.)*
qu'il soit,	*Let him be.*
soyons,	*let us be.*
soyez,	*be (you).*
qu'ils soient,	*let them be.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Que je sois,	*That I may be, &c.*	Que j'aie été,	*That I may have been, &c.*
que tu sois,		que tu aies été,	
qu'il soit,		qu'il ait été,	
que nous soyons,		que nous ayons été,	
que vous soyez,		que vous ayez été,	
qu'ils soient,		qu'ils aient été,	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je fusse,	*That I might be, &c.*	Que j'eusse été,	*That I might have been, &c.*
que tu fusses,		que tu eusses été,	
qu'il fût,		qu'il eût été,	
que nous fussions,		que nous eussions été,	
que vous fussiez,		que vous eussiez été,	
qu'ils fussent,		qu'ils eussent été,	

249. Negative Construction.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Ne pas être, *or* N'être pas,	*Not to be.*	Ne pas avoir été, N'avoir pas été,	*Not to have been.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
N'étant pas,	*Not being.*	N'ayant pas été,	*Not having been.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je ne suis pas,	*I am not, &c.*	Je n'ai pas été,	*I have not been, &c.*
tu n'es pas,		tu n'as pas été,	
il n'est pas,		il n'a pas été,	
nous ne sommes pas,		nous n'avons pas été,	
vous n'êtes pas,		vous n'avez pas été,	
ils ne sont pas,		ils n'ont pas été,	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Je n'étais pas, &c.	*I was not. &c.*	Je n'avais pas été, &c.	*I had not been. &c.*

PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.	
Je ne fus pas, &c.	*I was not. &c.*	Je n'eus pas été, &c.	*I had not been. &c.*

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Je ne serai pas, &c.	*I shall not be. &c.*	Je n'aurai pas été, &c.	*I shall not have been. &c.*

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je ne serais pas, &c.	*I should not be. &c.*	Je n'aurais pas été, &c.	*I should not have been. &c.*

Imperative.

Ne sois pas,	*Do not be.*
qu'il ne soit pas,	*Let him not be.*
ne soyons pas,	*Let us not be.*
ne soyez pas,	*Do not be.*
qu'ils ne soient pas,	*Let them not be.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.
Que je ne sois pas.
&c.

PERFECT.
Que je n'aie pas été.
&c.

IMPERFECT.
Que je ne fusse pas.
&c.

PLUPERFECT.
Que je n'eusse pas été.
&c.

250. Interrogatively.

Indicative.

PRESENT.
Suis-je?
es-tu?
est-il?
sommes-nous?
êtes-vous?
sont-ils?
&c. — *Am I?*

PAST INDEFINITE.
Ai-je été?
as-tu été?
a-t-il été?
avons-nous été?
avez-vous été?
ont-ils été?
&c. — *Have I been?*

IMPERFECT.
Étais-je? *Was I?*
&c. *&c.*

PLUPERFECT.
Avais-je été? *Had I been?*
&c. *&c.*

PRETERITE.
Est-ce que je fus?
fus-tu?
fut-il?
&c.
&c. — *Was I?*

PAST ANTERIOR.
Not used.

FUTURE.
Serai-je? *Shall I be?*

FUTURE PERFECT.
Aurai-je été? *Shall I have been?*

Conditional.

PRESENT.
Serais-je? *Should I be?*

PAST.
Aurais-je été? *Should I have been?*

There is no Interrogative form of the other Moods.

251. Interrogative Form Negatively.

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Ne suis-je pas?	*Am I not? &c.*	N'ai-je pas été?	*Have I not been? &c.*
n'es-tu pas?		n'as-tu pas été?	
n'est-il pas?		n'a-t-il pas été?	
ne sommes-nous pas?		n'avons-nous pas été?	
n'êtes-vous pas?		n'avez-vous pas été?	
ne sont-ils pas?		n'ont-ils pas été?	

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
N'étais-je pas? *Was I not?* &c. *&c.*	N'avais-je pas été? *Had I not* &c. *been? &c.*

PRETERITE.	PAST ANTERIOR.
Est-ce que je / ne fus pas? *Was I not?* &c. *&c.*	*Not used.*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PAST.
Ne serai-je pas? *Shall I not* &c. *be? &c.*	N'aurai-je pas été? *Shall I not* &c. *have been? &c.*

Conditional.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Ne serais-je pas? *Should I* &c. *not be? &c.*	N'aurais-je pas été? *Should I not* &c. *have been? &c.*

EXERCISE 53.

I am [a] soldier.—I was pleased.—I have been blamed.—We are captives.—They were happy.—Though they were (*Subjunctive*) humble.—We were surprised.—Be just without forgetting (*Infinitive*) to (*of*) be indulgent.—To be is better (*vaut mieux*) than to have been.—We are destined to death.—Venice was (*Pret.*) for a long time (*longtemps*) the richest [2] city [1] in Europe.—Let us be pleased with (*of the*) others, they

will be pleased with (*of*) us.—The Gauls were (*Imp.*) of high stature (*taille, f.*).—Do not be lazy.—Have we not been good (*sage*)?—Are you not tired?

REGULAR VERBS.

252. There are FOUR CONJUGATIONS in French, which are distinguished by the termination of the Present of the Infinitive.

The first ends in	ER,	as,	**parler,**	*to speak.*
„ second „	IR,	„	**finir,**	*to finish.*
„ third „	OIR,	„	**recevoir,**	*to receive.*
„ fourth „	RE,	„	**vendre,**	*to sell.*

All verbs consist of a root, or invariable part, which contains their meaning, and of terminations which vary according to tense and person.

The formation of Tenses.

253. There are five tenses, which serve to form all the others, and they are called for that reason *primitive tenses,* and the others, *derivative tenses.*

Primitive.	*Derivative Tenses.*		
I. The INFINITIVE PRESENT forms:	I. The FUTURE,	by changing R, OIR, or RE, into RAI; as,	
		parle*r*,	je parle*rai.*
		fini*r*,	je fini*rai.*
		recev*oir*,	je recev*rai.*
		vend*re*,	je vend*rai.*
	II. The CONDITIONAL,	by changing R, OIR, or RE, into RAIS; as,	
		parle*r*,	je parle*rais.*
		fini*r*,	je fini*rais.*
		recev*oir*,	je recev*rais.*
		vend*re*,	je vend*rais.*

Primitive. — *Derivative Tenses.*

II. The PARTICIPLE PRESENT forms:

I. The three persons plural of the INDICATIVE PRESENT, by changing ANT into ONS, EZ, ENT; as,

parl*ant*, nous parl*ons*, vous parl*ez*, ils parl*ent*.
finiss*ant*, nous finiss*ons*, vous finiss*ez*, ils finiss*ent*.

EXCEPTION.—Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the 3rd pers. pl. from the 1st pers. sing. of the same tense, by changing *s* into VENT; as,

je reçoi*s*, ils reçoi*vent*.

II. The IMPERFECT of the INDICATIVE, by changing ANT into AIS; as,

parl*ant*,	je parl*ais*.
finiss*ant*,	je finiss*ais*.
recev*ant*,	je recev*ais*.
vend*ant*,	je vend*ais*.

III. The PRESENT of the SUBJUNCTIVE, by changing ANT into E; as,

parl*ant*,	que je parl*e*.
finiss*ant*,	que je finiss*e*.

EXCEPTION.—Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation change EVANT into OIVE; as, rec*evant*, que je reç*oive*: they form regularly the 1st and 2nd person plural from the part. pres.; as, recev*ant*, que nous recev*ions*, que vous recev*iez*.

OBSERVATION.—The Subjunctive Present may be formed simply by taking away NT from the termination of the 3rd pers. pl. of the Indicative Present; as,

ils parl*ent*,	que je parle.
ils reçoiv*ent*,	que je reçoive.

Primitive.	*Derivative Tenses.*	
III. The Participle Past forms:	The Compound Tenses,	by means of the auxiliary verbs avoir and être; as, *avoir* parlé, j'*ai* parlé, j'*avais* fini, j'*eus* reçu, j'*aurai* vendu.
IV. The Present of the Indicative forms:	The Imperative,	by omitting the pronouns, and suppressing the *s* of the singular for the 1st Conj.; as, tu *parles*, *parle.* nous *finissons*, *finissons.* vous *recevez*, *recevez.*
V. The Preterite forms:	The Imperfect of the Subjunctive,	by adding *se* to the 2nd person singular; as, tu parlas, que je parlas*se.* tu finis, que je finis*se.* tu reçus, que je reçus*se.* tu vendis, que je vendis*se.*

254. First Conjugation in *ER.*

PARLER, to speak.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Parler,	*to speak.*	Avoir parlé,	*to have spoken.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	
Parlant,	*speaking.*	Ayant parlé,	*having spoken.*

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Parlé, *spoken.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je parle,	*I speak, &c.* *	J'ai parlé,	*I have spoken, &c.*
tu parles,		tu as parlé,	
il parle,		il a parlé,	
nous parlons,		nous avons parlé,	
vous parlez,		vous avez parlé,	
ils parlent,		ils ont parlé,	

* I speak, I do speak, *or* I am speaking.

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Je parlais,	*I was speaking, &c.*	J'avais parlé,	*I had spoken, &c.*
tu parlais,		tu avais parlé,	
il parlait,		il avait parlé,	
nous parlions,		nous avions parlé,	
vous parliez,		vous aviez parlé,	
ils parlaient,		ils avaient parlé,	

PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.	
Je parlai,	*I spoke, &c.*	J'eus parlé,	*I had spoken, &c.*
tu parlas,		tu eus parlé,	
il parla,		il eut parlé,	
nous parlâmes,		nous eûmes parlé,	
vous parlâtes,		vous eûtes parlé,	
ils parlèrent,		ils eurent parlé,	

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Je parlerai,	*I shall speak, &c.*	J'aurai parlé,	*I shall have spoken, &c.*
tu parleras,		tu auras parlé,	
il parlera,		il aura parlé,	
nous parlerons,		nous aurons parlé,	
vous parlerez,		vous aurez parlé,	
ils parleront,		ils auront parlé,	

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je parlerais,	*I should speak, &c.*	J'aurais parlé,	*I should have spoken, &c.*
tu parlerais,		tu aurais parlé,	
il parlerait,		il aurait parlé,	
nous parlerions,		nous aurions parlé,	
vous parleriez,		vous auriez parlé,	
ils parleraient,		ils auraient parlé,	

Imperative.

Parle,*	*Speak (thou).*
qu'il parle,	*let him speak.*
parlons,	*let us speak.*
parlez,	*speak (you).*
qu'ils parlent,	*let them speak.*

* PARLES, before Y and EN :—Parles-en, *Speak of it ;* Penses-y, *Think of it.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Que je parle,	*That I may speak, &c.*	Que j'aie parlé,	*That I may have spoken, &c.*
que tu parles,		que tu aies parlé,	
qu'il parle,		qu'il ait parlé,	
que nous parlions,		que nous ayons parlé,	
que vous parliez,		que vous ayez parlé,	
qu'ils parlent,		qu'ils aient parlé,	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je parlasse,	*That I might speak, &c.*	Que j'eusse parlé,	*That I might have spoken, &c.*
que tu parlasses,		que tu eusses parlé,	
qu'il parlât,		qu'il eût parlé,	
que nous parlassions,		que nous eussions parlé,	
que vous parlassiez,		que vous eussiez parlé,	
qu'ils parlassent,		qu'ils eussent parlé,	

255. The Imperfect Subjunctive is so ugly that it is often replaced by the Present Subjunctive in conversation (except in 3rd sing.), even when this is ungrammatical. This applies in a lesser degree to the other conjugations (679).

Conjugate in the same manner :—

accorder,	*to grant.*	demander,	*to ask.*
admirer,	*to admire.*	frapper,	*to strike.*
amuser,	*to amuse.*	gagner,	*to gain.*
emprunter,	*to borrow.*	habiter,	*to inhabit.*
chercher,	*to look for, seek.*	orner,	*to adorn.*
donner,	*to give.*	priver,	*to deprive.*
&c.	*&c.*	&c.	*&c.*

256. The 1st Conjugation is *the* living conjugation of French verbs. Most scientific and technical words, and all verbs from other languages and new terms, conform to this model. Such are :—

pédaler,	*to ride a cycle.*	stopper,	*to stop (nautical).*
télégraphier,	*to telegraph.*	toaster,	*to drink a toast.*
photographier,	*to photograph.*	dérailler,	*to run off the rails.*
&c.	*&c.*	*&c.*	&c.

257. IMPORTANT NOTE.—As it is necessary to have some practice of the Subjunctive, and MAY being no guide, as has been said, some idea of the use of this Mood must now be given. The following brief hints will permit the construction of a certain number of phrases.

The Subjunctive is used :—

(*a.*) After IMPERSONAL VERBS and EXPRESSIONS ; as,

IL FAUT, *It is necessary*, MUST.

Thus, *You must look for it*, is rendered, *It is necessary that you seek it*,—

Il faut que vous le cherchiez.

It is lucky that you found it, *Il est heureux que vous l'ayez trouvé.*

It is impossible for us to arrive in time, *Il est impossible que nous arrivions à temps.*

(*b.*) After verbs and expressions denoting EMOTIONS (joy, sorrow, &c.); as,

I am sorry he is gone, *Je regrette qu'il soit parti.*

He is glad you did it, *Il est content que vous l'ayez fait.*

(*c.*) After certain CONJUNCTIONS ; as,

QUOIQUE,	*although.*	AFIN QUE,	*in order that.*
SANS QUE,	*without.*	AVANT QUE,	*before.*

Although you speak well, *Quoique vous parliez bien.*

Without his giving anything (past time), *Sans qu'il donnât rien.*

(*d.*) After verbs of WISHING and COMMANDING ; as,

I wish him to be punished, *Je veux qu'il soit puni.*

He wants you to speak French, *Il désire que vous parliez français.*

The above will suffice in the meantime.

Apply these rules **whatever tense** you have in **English**, on condition that **que** and the **subject** be expressed in French.

EXERCISE 54.

Mes frères, il ne faut pas que nous redoutions l'approche de la mort.—Mes enfants, je désire que vous m'écoutiez avec attention.—Je vous ai dit cela afin que vous ne soyez pas blâmés de (*by*) votre maître.—Je l'ai connu avant qu'il habitât Edimbourg.—Nous regrettons bien sincèrement que vous n'habitiez plus notre ville.—Il est malheureux que vous ne cherchiez pas à faire des progrès.—Parlons français.—Il n'a pas réussi dans le commerce, quoique son frère lui ait prêté des capitaux.—Je ne le rencontre jamais sans qu'il cherche à m'emprunter de l'argent.—Oh ! mais je ne veux pas que vous lui en prêtiez ; il est regrettable que vous ayez fait sa connaissance.

All ages will praise the devotion of Leonidas.—My son, I do not wish you to borrow money.—Thou wilt find difficulties.—Let us praise the virtues of our ancestors.—He will blame you.—The captain will stop at the entrance of the harbour.—The woodcutters had cut down several trees before the messenger arrived.—You must work, my children.—I am sorry you work so little.—It is lucky that the poor peasant has found his cow.—I do not like this town although I have lived in (*inhabited*) it [for a] long time.—I cannot (*je ne puis*) go out without your asking me where I am going (*je vais*). I shall have done my exercise before you come home (*rentrer*).—Speak more distinctly.

258. Second Conjugation in *IR*.

FINIR, to finish.

This conjugation has the rather embarrassing peculiarity of adding an augmentation to the stem in the Present Participle and all the parts which correspond with it, viz., Plural of Present Indicative, the whole of Imperfect Indic., Imperative, except 2nd singular, all the Present Subjunctive. These forms are really composed of three parts :—The true stem, the increase of the stem, and the true ending ; thus, **fin-iss-ant, nous fin-iss-ons, &c.**

Infinitive.

Finir, *to finish.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Finissant,	*finishing.*	**Fini,**	*finished.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Je finis,	*I finish,*	**Je finissais,**	*I was finishing,*
tu finis,		**tu finissais,**	
il finit,		**il finissait,**	
nous finissons,	*&c.*	**nous finissions,**	*&c.*
vous finissez,		**vous finissiez,**	
ils finissent,		**ils finissaient,**	

PRETERITE.		FUTURE.	
Je finis,	*I finished,*	**Je finirai,**	*I shall finish,*
tu finis,		**tu finiras,**	
il finit,		**il finira,**	
nous finîmes,	*&c.*	**nous finirons,**	*&c.*
vous finîtes,		**vous finirez,**	
ils finirent,		**ils finiront,**	

Conditional.		Imperative.	
Je finirais,	*I should finish,*	**Finis,**	*finish (thou).*
tu finirais,		**qu'il finisse,**	*let him finish.*
il finirait,		**qu'elle finisse,**	*let her finish.*
nous finirions,	*&c.*	**finissons,**	*let us finish.*
vous finiriez,		**finissez,**	*finish (you).*
ils finiraient,		**qu'ils finissent,**	*let them finish.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Que je finisse.	**Que je finisse.**
que tu finisses.	**que tu finisses.**
qu'il finisse.	**qu'il finît.**
que nous finissions.	**que nous finissions.**
que vous finissiez.	**que vous finissiez.**
qu'ils finissent,	**qu'ils finissent.**

The compound tenses are exactly as in *parler*, formed with *avoir* and the Past Participle *fini*; as, *J'ai fini*, &c.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

agir,	*to act.*	jouir,	*to enjoy.*
amortir,	*to deaden, weaken.*	nourrir,	*to feed, entertain.*
bâtir,	*to build.*	obéir,	*to obey.*
blanchir,	*to bleach.*	punir,	*to punish.*
choisir,	*to choose.*	réfléchir,	*to reflect.*
démolir,	*to demolish.*	remplir,	*to fill.*
grossir,	*to enlarge.*	tarir,	*to dry up.*
guérir,	*to cure.*	trahir,	*to betray.*

259. Many regular verbs of this conjugation are derived from adjectives; as,

adoucir,	*to soften,*	from	*doux, douce.*
grandir,	*to grow,*	,,	*grand.*
chérir,	*to cherish,*	,,	*cher.*
pâlir,	*to turn pale,*	,,	*pâle.*
&c.			*&c.*

Note.—It is a common error for beginners to omit the augmentation iss especially when the stem ends in s. Such are :—

réussir,	*to succeed, to get on.*	**réussissant,**	*succeeding.*
choisir,	*to choose.*	**choisissant,**	*choosing.*
saisir,	*to seize.*	**saisissant,**	*seizing.*

EXERCISE 55.

Il faut que vous réfléchissiez.—Marie, vous remplissez toujours trop cette carafe.—Cette tour a été solidement bâtie.—J'espère que vous réussirez.—Ma fille, je veux que tu choisisses une belle étoffe pour la robe de ta petite sœur.—Ils punissent souvent injustement leurs enfants.—Mon fils, tu agis mal.—Mes fils, vous agissez mal.—Ces sources tarissent quelquefois en été.—Le chagrin a blanchi ses cheveux avant l'âge.—Ces lettres trahissent la bassesse de son âme.

All that we build is of short duration.—Fear enlarges objects.—(*The*) good books cure the diseases of the mind.—You will bless Providence which has dried your tears.—If you reflected (*Imp.*) a little, you would not entertain (*any* = *aucune*) hatred against any one.—A good education fills the mind with good thoughts.—God will punish the ungrateful (*plur.*).—Age had not weakened in (*chez*) Cato the love of his (*la*) country.—I am glad you are succeeding so well.—You must seize the first opportunity.—Here are some nice biscuits; choose some.

260. Third Conjugation in *OIR*.

RECEVOIR, to receive, to get.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
Recevant, *receiving.*	Reçu,* *received.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Je reçois,	*I receive (I get),* &c.	Je recevais,	*I was receiving,* &c.
tu reçois,		tu recevais,	
il reçoit,		il recevait,	
nous recevons,		nous recevions,	
vous recevez,		vous receviez,	
ils reçoivent,		ils recevaient,	
PRETERITE.		**FUTURE.**	
Je reçus,	*I received,* &c.	Je recevrai,	*I shall receive,* &c.
tu reçus,		tu recevras,	
il reçut,		il recevra,	
nous reçûmes,		nous recevrons,	
vous reçûtes,		vous recevrez,	
ils reçurent,		ils recevront,	

* A cedilla is placed under the ç, when that letter is followed by *o* or *u*, that it may preserve the sound it has in the Infinitive present. See (6).

Conditional.		Imperative.	
Je recevrais,	*I should receive, &c.*	Reçois,	*Receive (thou).*
tu recevrais,		qu'il reçoive,	*let him receive.*
il recevrait,		qu'elle reçoive,	*let her receive.*
nous recevrions,		recevons,	*let us receive.*
vous recevriez,		recevez,	*receive (you).*
ils recevraient,		qu'ils reçoivent,	*let them receive.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Que je reçoive.	Que je reçusse.
que tu reçoives.	que tu reçusses.
qu'il reçoive.	qu'il reçût.
que nous recevions.	que nous reçussions.
que vous receviez.	que vous reçussiez.
qu'ils reçoivent.	qu'ils reçussent.

Compound tenses as before, with AVOIR and the Past Participle REÇU.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

apercevoir, *to perceive, to see.* | décevoir,* *to deceive.*
concevoir, *to conceive.* | percevoir, *to collect taxes, &c.*

261. The 3rd conjugation is really a group of irregular verbs. There are only these five belonging to the so-called regular form. DEVOIR, *to owe,* and REDEVOIR, *to be still owing a balance after making a part payment,* are also considered regulars of the 3rd conjugation, but the absence of **c** makes them look rather different.

EXERCISE 56.

We receive the *Figaro* every morning.—They receive [their friends on] (*the*) Thursday.—Did you get my letter?—Yes, I got it this morning.—He must get this message before twelve o'clock (*noon*).—I cannot (*ne puis*) conceive such blindness.—He has been disappointed in his expectation.—From that hill one sees

* Rare, except in the Past Participle *déçu*, disappointed. The usual sense of *deceive* is *tromper*.

the Holy City (*Ville Sainte*).—You will see a little white house at the end (*fond*, masc.) of the valley.—"When you receive (*Fut.*) this letter I shall have lived" (= be dead).—Sir, this letter has been insufficiently stamped (*affranchie*), there is a charge of 2d to pay (*il y a une surtaxe de vingt centimes à percevoir*).

262. Devoir, *to owe, to have to, &c.*

Participles.

PRESENT.

Devant, *owing, having to.*

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Dû, *owed* (*due*), *fem.* Due; *plur.* Dus, *plur. fem.* Dues.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

Je dois,
tu dois,
il doit,
nous devons,
vous devez,
ils doivent,
} &c. = *I owe, &c.*

IMPERFECT.

Je devais, *I owed,*
&c. *&c.*

PRETERITE.

Je dus, *I owed,*
&c. *&c.*

FUTURE.

Je devrai, *I shall owe,*
&c. *&c.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je devrais, *I should owe,*
&c. *&c.*

Imperative.

Dois,	*owe.*
qu'il doive,	*let him owe.*
devons,	*let us owe.*
devez,	*owe.*
qu'ils doivent,	*let them owe.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Que je doive.	que vous devions.
que tu doives.	que vous deviez.
qu'il doive.	qu'ils doivent.

IMPERFECT.

Que je dusse,
&c.

263. DEVOIR is a **complete verb** having all the usual compound tenses. Besides its primary meaning, *to owe,* it means *I am to, I have to, I must* (weaker than IL FAUT), *I am obliged to*; also *must,* an inference; and in the Conditional, *I ought* or *should.* The following examples will better explain its force :—

Je dois l'apprendre,	I have to (am to, must) learn it.
Il doit venir ce soir.	He is to come this evening.
Je dois partir,	I am obliged to go.
Il dut rendre l'argent,	He had to (was obliged to) return the money.
Il doit le savoir,	He must know it (*I infer so*).
Vous devez être fatigué,	You must be tired.
Il devrait nous le dire,	He ought to tell it to us.
Vous devriez me le rendre,	You ought to (should) return it to me.

264. The fact of *devoir* having compound tenses often makes the construction different from English. The English verbs *should* and *ought,* having no past participle, **have no compound tenses,** so that past time is expressed by using the **Perfect of the Infinitive** of the following verb. Compare carefully :—

Il a dû vous voir	He must HAVE SEEN you.
Il aurait dû vous le dire,	He ought to (should) HAVE TOLD you so.

Notice the simple Infinitive in all cases in French.

Note the following conversational and pluperfect forms :—

Ils ont dû rentrer chez eux,	They were obliged to go home.
Ils avaient dû „ „	They had been „ „
Ils avaient dû nous voir,	They must have seen us. (Pluperfect time prior to something past). We infer that they *had seen* us.

265. OUGHT, **not** *remonstrance,* or *advice,* is rendered by the Present:—

On doit honorer son père et sa mère,	One ought to honour one's father and mother.

EXERCISE 57.

Be very careful to get the true English equivalent.

Ces commerçants me doivent deux cents francs.—Ils doivent me les donner demain.—Ils auraient dû me payer (il y a longtemps) (*long ago*).—Ils devraient en avoir honte.—J'étais malade hier ; j'ai dû quitter mon bureau à deux heures.—Ne devez-vous pas dîner ce soir chez Monsieur le Président de la Chambre ?—J'ai reçu une invitation mais j'ai dû la refuser, à mon grand regret, à cause de la maladie de ma femme qui devait m'accompagner.—Voulez-vous faire un petit voyage en Italie avec moi ?—Merci, il doit y faire (*be*) trop chaud à cette saison de l'année.—On doit aimer sa patrie et être prêt à la servir en toute occasion.—Je vous dois une reconnaissance éternelle, mon fidèle, mon unique ami.—Il dut reconnaître ses torts.—Au quinze octobre il devra deux termes à son propriétaire.—Il a dû se trouver bien gêné pour ne pas payer son loyer.—Je regrette que vous deviez tant d'argent [sur la place de] (*in*) Paris. (Omit *la place* ; it is a commercial expression = a city considered as a commercial centre.)—Devant partir le lendemain au point du jour, je me couchai (*went to bed*) de bonne heure (*early*).

How much do you owe (in) (*on the place of*) Edinburgh ?—I owe (there = y) [about] a hundred pounds sterling (get the right form of *hundred*).—You ought to pay your debts.—You ought to have paid them last year.—I am to pay half of them (*Conjunctive*) next[2] month[1].—You must have received a letter from me yesterday (*I infer as much, for I posted it*). — Yes, and I was to answer (*to*) it this evening.—The shop

opposite is always full of people; my neighbour must be making (*gain*) a great deal (*much*) of money.—That lawyer is too rich; he must have cheated his clients.—I was obliged to leave all my luggage on the ship, for the sea was too rough (*bad*) to land it in the boats.—You must have been greatly annoyed (at that) (*of it*).—How much do I owe you?—You will owe me [about] a thousand francs by (*at*) the end of the year.—My father is glad I do not owe you more (*davantage*).—He should be ashamed of giving (*Infinitive*) you so little money.—They are to start at daybreak to-morrow.—This traveller will have to pay the customs dues (*acquitter les droits d'entrée*).—On (*at*) my arrival I sought him at his hotel; he was no longer there (*il n'y était plus*); he must have left (*partir*) the day before (*la veille*) on (*en*) receiving the telegram from his confederate. (*What tense is* must have left? *It refers to an action prior to a past action.*)

266. Fourth Conjugation in *RE*.

VENDRE, to sell.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
Vendant, *selling.*	Vendu, *sold.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Je vends,	*I sell, &c.*	Je vendais,	*I was selling, &c.*
tu vends,		tu vendais,	
il vend,		il vendait,	
nous vendons,		nous vendions,	
vous vendez,		vous vendiez,	
ils vendent,		ils vendaient,	
PRETERITE.		FUTURE.	
Je vendis,	*I sold, &c.*	Je vendrai,	*I shall sell, &c.*
tu vendis,		tu vendras,	
il vendit,		il vendra,	
nous vendîmes,		nous vendrons,	
vous vendîtes,		vous vendrez,	
ils vendirent,		ils vendront,	

Conditional.		Imperative.	
Je vendrais,	*I should sell, &c.*	Vends,	*Sell (thou).*
tu vendrais,		qu'il vende,	*let him sell.*
il vendrait,		qu'elle vende,	*let her sell.*
nous vendrions,		vendons,	*let us sell.*
vous vendriez,		vendez,	*sell (you).*
ils vendraient,		qu'ils vendent,	*let them sell.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Que je vende.	Que je vendisse.
que tu vendes.	que tu vendisses.
qu'il vende.	qu'il vendît.
que nous vendions.	que nous vendissions.
que vous vendiez.	que vous vendissiez.
qu'ils vendent.	qu'ils vendissent.

Note the **u** of the Past Participle and the **is** of the Preterite.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

attendre,	*to wait.*	pendre,	*to hang.*
confondre,	*to confound.*	perdre,	*to lose.*
correspondre,	*to correspond.*	rendre,	*to render, return.*
descendre (être),	*to come down.*	répandre,	*to spread, shed.*
entendre,	*to hear.*	répondre,	*to answer.*
fendre,	*to split.*	suspendre,	*to suspend.*
fondre,	*to melt, burst.*	tendre,	*to stretch.*
mordre,	*to bite.*	tondre,	*to shear.*

267. *Battre,* to beat, *se battre,* to fight, and its compounds *abattre,* to fell, *combattre,* to fight, to oppose, &c., take only one **t** in the singular Present Indicative and 2nd singular Imperative; thus,

PRESENT.	IMPERATIVE.
Je bats.	Bats.
tu bats.	qu'il batte.
il bat.	&c.
nous battons.	
vous battez.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
ils battent.	Battu, *beaten.*

PRETERITE.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
Je battis.	Que je batte.
&c.	&c.

268. *Rompre,* to break, and its compounds *corrompre,* to corrupt, *interrompre,* to interrupt, take **t** in 3rd singular :—

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Je romps.	Romps.
tu romps.	qu'il rompe.
il rompt.	&c.
nous rompons.	
&c.	

EXERCISE 58.

Ces rochers sont fendus de toutes parts par l'action de l'eau et de la gelée.—Toute la neige n'est pas encore fondue sur les montagnes.—Ce hardi voyageur est descendu dans le cratère du volcan.—Nous entendîmes le bruit formidable de l'explosion.—Le pauvre petit berger a été cruellement mordu par un chien enragé.—Il ne faut pas que vous battiez ainsi ce malheureux enfant.—Les mœurs des anciens étaient souvent bien corrompues.—Tout est rompu entre nous.—Il vous interrompra pour sûr. — Quelques fruits pendaient encore aux branches des arbres.—Quand me rendrez-vous ce que je vous ai prêté ?—Ne vendez pas la peau de l'ours avant de l'avoir tué (Prov.).

The enemy (*plur.*) has been beaten in all the engagements (*rencontre, f.*).—The lamp shed (*Imp.*) a gentle light in all the room.—You have not answered (*to*) my question.—I am sorry you have not answered it.—I will (*veux*) not have you lose (*that you lose*) your money in (*at the*) gambling.—He has broken [off] with all his old (*ancien*) companions.—He must split this wood.—"All is broken [off between us] my son-in-law."—The servant (*f.*) has gone down to the cellar to get (*seek*) some white wine.—Joseph was (*Pret.*) sold by his brethren.

269. Table of the more common Terminations of French Verbs.

	1st Conj.	*2nd Conj.*	*3rd Conj.*	*4th Conj.*
INFINITIVE, *Present.*	ER	IR	OIR	RE
Participle Present.	ANT	,,	,,	,,
Participle Past.	É	I	U	,,
INDICATIVE, *Present.*	E	S	,,	,,
	ES	S	,,	,,
	E	T	,,	*
	ONS	,,	,,	,,
	EZ	,,	,,	,,
	ENT	,,	,,	,,
Imperfect.	AIS	,,	,,	,,
	AIS	,,	,,	,,
	AIT	,,	,,	,,
	IONS	,,	,,	,,
	IEZ	,,	,,	,,
	AIENT	,,	,,	,,
Preterite.	AI	IS	US	as for the
	AS	IS	US	2nd Conj.
	A	IT	UT	
	ÂMES	ÎMES	ÛMES	
	ÂTES	ÎTES	ÛTES	
	ÈRENT	IRENT	URENT	
Future.	†RAI	,,	,,	,,
	RAS	,,	,,	,,
	RA	,,	,,	,,
	RONS	,,	,,	,,
	REZ	,,	,,	,,
	RONT	,,	,,	,,

* The T or D of the stem; if not T or D in stem add T; as, *il rompt.*

† This R is really the *r* of the Infinitive; the remainder of the ending is the verb *avoir*; *ai, as, a,* (av)*ons,* (av)*ez, ont,* and Conditional (av)*ais,* &c. Thus the French used to say, *I have to speak,* for *I shall speak*—JE PARLER AI. All trace of the Latin Future has disappeared in modern French; *cf.* J'IRAI (*ire ai*) and *ibo.*

CONDITIONAL.	*RAIS	,,	,,	,,
	RAIS	,,	,,	,,
	RAIT	,,	,,	,,
	RIONS	,,	,,	,,
	RIEZ	,,	,,	,,
	RAIENT	,,	,,	,,
IMPERATIVE, 2nd per.	E (or ES, 254)	S	,,	,,
	E	,,	,,	,,
	ONS	,,	,,	,,
	EZ	,,	,,	,,
	ENT	,,	,,	,,
SUBJUNCTIVE, *Pres.*	E	,,	,,	,,
	ES	,,	,,	,,
	E	,,	,,	,,
	IONS	,,	,,	,,
	IEZ	,,	,,	,,
	ENT	,,	,,	,,
Imperfect.	ASSE	ISSE	USSE	as for the 2nd Conj.
	ASSES	ISSES	USSES	
	ÂT	ÎT	ÛT	
	ASSIONS	ISSIONS	USSIONS	
	ASSIEZ	ISSIEZ	USSIEZ	
	ASSENT	ISSENT	USSENT	

REMARKS ON THE FOREGOING TABLE.

270. The Participle Present **always** ends in ANT.

271. The Imperfect of the Indicative, the Future, the Conditional, and the Present of the Subjunctive, have **always** the terminations given in the table, of whatever conjugation the verb may be, but the stem of the verb may vary in irregulars.

272. The terminations of the Imperfect of the Indicative and those of the Conditional are the same, because the latter derive from the Imp. of *avoir*, as explained in the footnote.

* See footnote (†) on previous page.

273. The first and second person plural of the Preterite, and the third person singular of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, have always a circumflex over the last vowel before the terminations MES, TES, T. The 3rd sing. Imp. Sub. is **always** the same and 3rd sing. Preterite plus the circumflex accent.

274. The following part of the terminations of the Imperfect Subjunctive, SSE, SSES, T, SSIONS, SSIEZ, SSENT, is always the same, and is adapted to the verbs of the different conjugations by prefixing the vowels A, I, or U, which are found throughout the terminations of their respective Preterites,—in this manner:

1st	CONJUGATION	A	SSE
2nd and 4th	,,	I	SSES
3rd	,,	U	
		Â Î Û	T
		A	SSIONS
		I	SSIEZ
		U	SSENT

Conjugation of a Verb used Negatively.

275. To conjugate a verb negatively, *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* after it, in simple tenses, except in the *Infinitive Present*, when both negatives are generally put before the verb;* in compound tenses, the auxiliary is preceded by *ne*, and followed by *pas*.†

[PAS, which has now become by long use a negative adverb necessary to the negative form of almost all verbs, was originally a noun—(*un*) *pas*, a step, a pace, (Latin, *passus*) added for emphasis; as, *Je n'irai pas*, I will not go *a step*. So with *point*, a point, spot, &c. In old

* For emphasis or contrast *pas* may come last; as, *Etre ou n'être pas*, "To be or not to be."

† *Ne* is the only true negative, and some verbs and a few constructions still reject *pas*; as, *Je ne puis comprendre*, I can't understand; *Il ne sait que faire*, he does not know what to do.

French many other nouns were used in this way, such as (*une*) *goutte*, a drop; (*une*) *mie*, a crumb. "*Le roi ne voulait mie les écouter.*" (Froissart). The king would not listen to them. We still say, *Je n'y vois goutte*, I cannot see at all; *cf.* English *I don't care a straw*; *it does not matter a button.*]

276. The same order is observed with other negatives; such as, *ne . . . point*, not at all; *ne . . . plus*, no more, no longer; *ne . . . jamais*, never; *ne . . . rien*, nothing, &c.

Note the common expression *ne . . . que* only; nothing but:—

Il ne parle que français,	He only speaks French.
Je n'ai eu que du pain,	I have had nothing but bread.

277. *NE PAS PARLER*, not to speak.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT OF INFINITIVE.
*Ne pas parler, *not to speak.*	N'avoir pas parlé, { *not to have spoken.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
Ne parlant pas, *not speaking.*	N'ayant pas parlé, { *not having spoken.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je ne parle pas,†	*I do not speak, &c.*	Je n'ai pas parlé,	*I have not spoken, &c.*
tu ne parles pas,		tu n'as pas parlé,	
il ne parle pas,		il n'a pas parlé,	
nous ne parlons pas,		nous n'avons pas parlé,	
vous ne parlez pas,		vous n'avez pas parlé,	
ils ne parlent pas,		ils n'ont pas parlé,	
IMPERFECT.		**PLUPERFECT.**	
Je ne parlais pas,	*I was not speaking, &c.*	Je n'avais pas parlé,	*I had not spoken, &c.*
tu ne parlais pas,		tu n'avais pas parlé,	
il ne parlait pas,		il n'avait pas parlé,	
nous ne parlions pas,		nous n'avions pas parlé,	
vous ne parliez pas,		vous n'aviez pas parlé,	
ils ne parlaient pas,		ils n'avaient pas parlé,	

* See footnotes (* †) on previous page.

PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.	
Je ne parlai pas,	*I did not speak, &c.*	Je n'eus pas parlé,	*I had not spoken, &c.*
tu ne parlas pas,		tu n'eus pas parlé,	
il ne parla pas,		il n'eut pas parlé,	
nous ne parlâmes pas,		nous n'eûmes pas parlé,	
vous ne parlâtes pas,		vous n'eûtes pas parlé,	
ils ne parlèrent pas,		ils n'eurent pas parlé,	

FUTURE.		PERFECT FUTURE.	
Je ne parlerai pas,	*I shall not speak, &c.*	Je n'aurai pas parlé,	*I shall not have spoken, &c.*
tu ne parleras pas,		tu n'auras pas parlé,	
il ne parlera pas,		il n'aura pas parlé,	
nous ne parlerons pas,		nous n'aurons pas parlé,	
vous ne parlerez pas,		vous n'aurez pas parlé,	
ils ne parleront pas,		ils n'auront pas parlé,	

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je ne parlerais pas,	*I should not speak, &c.*	Je n'aurais pas parlé,	*I should not have spoken, &c.*
tu ne parlerais pas,		tu n'aurais pas parlé,	
il ne parlerait pas,		il n'aurait pas parlé,	
nous ne parlerions pas,		nous n'aurions pas parlé,	
vous ne parleriez pas,		vous n'auriez pas parlé,	
ils ne parleraient pas,		ils n'auraient pas parlé,	

Imperative.

Ne parle pas,	*Do not speak.*
qu'il ne parle pas,	*let him not speak.*
ne parlons pas,	*let us not speak.*
ne parlez pas,	*do not speak.*
qu'ils ne parlent pas,	*let them not speak.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Que je ne parle pas.	Que je n'aie pas parlé.
que tu ne parles pas.	que tu n'aies pas parlé.
qu'il ne parle pas.	qu'il n'ait pas parlé.
que nous ne parlions pas.	que nous n'ayons pas parlé.
que vous ne parliez pas.	que vous n'ayez pas parlé.
qu'ils ne parlent pas.	qu'ils n'aient pas parlé.

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Que je ne parlasse pas.	Que je n'eusse pas parlé.
que tu ne parlasses pas.	que tu n'eusses pas parlé.
qu'il ne parlât pas.	qu'il n'eût pas parlé.
que nous ne parlassions pas.	que nous n'eussions par parlé.
que vous ne parlassiez pas.	que vous n'eussiez pas parlé.
qu'ils ne parlassent pas.	qu'ils n'eussent pas parlé.

EXERCISE 59.

Remember that, as we have seen, the conjunctive objective pronouns must come immediately in front of the verb, therefore the NE *precedes them.*

Je ne lui en ai pas parlé,	*I have not spoken to him of it.*
Ne les lui montrez pas,	*Do not show them to him (her).*

Nous ne vous l'avons pas dit pour ne pas vous faire de la peine.—"Ne me parlez jamais en faveur d'un infâme." (Corneille).—Quoique je n'en parle point, j'y pense bien souvent.—Il ne vous en demandera pas.—Je ne leur en aurais pas donné.—C'est une lettre insolente, je n'y répondrai pas.—Mon ami m'envoie (*sends*) des journaux français, mais je ne les reçois pas très régulièrement.—Je ne lui répondis rien car je ne comprenais pas (*understand*) un mot de sa langue.—L'oncle de Gil Blas ne lui avait donné que quarante ducats.

Do not light any fire.—I have not kept those papers.—I have only ten francs about (*on*) me.—They did not mark the linen.—We had not forgotten our promise.—He did not give me the address of this gentleman.—He did not give it me.—You have not yet done (*finished*) your exercise.—They will not sell their house.—I have not received any letter from Paris.—I have not received any.—We did not perceive the object of his request.—The doctor's medicine (*remedy*) has not cured them of their fever.—I do not wish to see them.—We have not blamed you for it (*of it*).—He only said two words to me (*meaning very little*).

Conjugation of a Verb used Interrogatively.

278. To conjugate a verb *interrogatively*, the pronoun, which is the subject of it, is placed after the verb, with a hyphen between them; as, *Parlez-vous?* Do you speak?

279. When the first person singular of a verb ends with *e* mute, an *acute accent* is placed over it, and it is then sounded accordingly; as, *Parlé-je?* Do I speak?*

280. When the third person singular ends with a vowel, a *-t-* with two hyphens is always placed between the verb and pronoun for the sake of euphony; as, *Parle-t-il?* Does he speak? *Parla-t-il?* Did he speak?

281. [This T is really the true ending of the 3rd singular, and ought never to have been written in this absurd way. It should have been retained as in other tenses. In old French we find *il parlet, il ad,* for *il at.*]

282. In *compound tenses,* the pronoun is placed after the auxiliary, to which it is also joined by a hyphen; as, *Avons-nous* parlé? Have we spoken?

283. When a noun is the subject of the verb, a pronoun, agreeing with it in gender and number, is placed after the verb with a hyphen; and the noun remains before it; as, VOTRE SŒUR *parlait-elle?* Was your sister speaking?

284. The direct inversion may take place after some interrogative words; as, *Que fit le roi?* What did the king do? *Où naquit ce prince?* Where was this prince born? *Quand reviendra votre sœur?* When will your sister return?

* This form of the 1st person of this conjugation with *é* is never used in conversation. It is rare even in literature (286).

285. We have seen that instead of this mode of interrogation, we use often the words, *est-ce que*, with the subject before the verb; as, EST-CE QUE *je parle?* Do I speak? EST-CE QUE *votre sœur parle?* Does your sister speak?

286. With verbs which have but one syllable in the 1st person singular of the Present Indicative, it is indispensable to use this form of interrogation; as, EST-CE QUE *je vends?* Do I sell? EST-CE QUE *je mens?* Do I tell a falsehood: instead of *vends-je? mens-je?* Also, EST-CE QUE *je parle?* EST-CE QUE *j'offre?* Do I offer? (an irregular of 2nd conjugation ending in *e*).

287. However, we are allowed by custom to say: *Fais-je?* Do I do? *Vois-je?* Do I see? *Vais-je?* Do I go? *Dois-je?* Must I? *Suis-je?* Am I? *Ai-je?* Have I?

288. Verbs are used interrogatively only in the Indicative and Conditional Moods, as exemplified in the following.

289. *DONNER*, **to give, used Interrogatively.**

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Donné-je?			
est-ce que je donne?	*Do I give?* &c.	Ai-je donné?	*Have I given?* &c.
donnes-tu?		as-tu donné?	
donne-t-il?		a-t-il donné?	
donnons-nous?		avons-nous donné?	
donnez-vous?		avez-vous donné?	
donnent-ils?		ont-ils donné?	
IMPERFECT.		**PLUPERFECT.**	
Donnais-je?	*Was I giving?* &c.	Avais-je donné?	*Had I given?* &c.
donnais-tu?		avais-tu donné?	
donnait-il?		avait-il donné?	
donnions-nous?		avions-nous donné?	
donniez-vous?		aviez-vous donné?	
donnaient-ils?		avaient-ils donné?	

PRETERITE.

Donnai-je?	*Did I give?*
donnas-tu?	*didst thou give?*
donna-t-il?	*did he give?*
donnâmes-nous?	*did we give?*
donnâtes-vous?	*did you give?*
donnèrent-ils?	*did they give?*

The Past Anterior is not used interrogatively.

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Donnerai-je?	*Shall I give?* &c.	Aurai-je donné?	*Shall I have given?* &c.
donneras-tu?		auras-tu donné?	
donnera-t-il?		aura-t-il donné?	
donnerons-nous?		aurons-nous donné?	
donnerez-vous?		aurez-vous donné?	
donneront-ils?		auront-ils donné?	

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Donnerais-je?	*Should I give?* &c.	Aurais-je donné?	*Should I have given?* &c.
donnerais-tu?		aurais-tu donné?	
donnerait-il?		aurait-il donné?	
donnerions-nous?		aurions-nous donné?	
donneriez-vous?		auriez-vous donné?	
donneraient-ils?		auraient-ils donné?	

EXERCISE 60.

Notice that Objective Pronouns precede the verb or auxiliary in the usual way in Interrogative constructions.

Pourquoi ce négociant a-t-il vendu ces marchandises à si bon compte? (*so cheap*).—C'est qu'il avait besoin d'argent.—Il a voulu vous emprunter trois mille francs; les lui avez-vous prêtés?—Les lui auriez-vous prêtés si vous les aviez eus?—Les élèves ont-ils répondu à cette question?—Y ont-ils répondu?—Quand partira ce régiment?—D'où sont venues ces troupes?—De quel projet de loi parlait le ministre?—Que vous en a dit Monsieur votre père?—Sa Majesté recevra-t-elle l'ambassadeur d'Italie aujourd'hui?—Que désirent ces

étrangers?—Qu'est-ce que ces enfants demandent?—Qu'a votre ami?—Il a mal à la tête.—Qu'est-ce qu'il a?—Rien du (*at*) tout.

Does this little girl sell matches?—Did he remark our absence?—Have they redeemed the captives?—Does your sister speak French?—Has this boy answered[2] well[1]?—Have I deserved such a punishment?—Am I too indulgent, or too severe?—Will the masons finish that wall to-morrow?—Would my friend receive this parcel to-night if I sent (*Imp.*) it now?—Would he have got it this morning if I had sent it last night?—My customer wished to see those samples; did you send them to him?—What is the matter with your little boy?—He has toothache.—There is nothing the matter with him.—Of what vessel was the admiral speaking?—Of the one you visited yesterday.

Conjugation of a Verb used Interrogatively and Negatively.

290. In this instance, the second negative, *pas* or *point*, is placed after the personal pronoun in all tenses.

291. *RENDRE*, to render, to give back.

CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Est-ce que je ne rends pas? (*instead of* ne rends-je pas?)	*Do I not render?* &c.	N'ai-je pas rendu?	*Have I not rendered?* &c.
ne rends-tu pas?		n'as-tu pas rendu?	
ne rend-il pas?		n'a-t-il pas rendu?	
ne rendons-nous pas?		n'avons-nous pas rendu?	
ne rendez-vous pas?		n'avez-vous pas rendu?	
ne rendent-ils pas?		n'ont-ils pas rendu?	

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Ne rendais-je pas ? &c.	N'avais-je pas rendu ? &c.
PRETERITE.	PAST ANTERIOR.
Ne rendis-je pas ? &c.	(*Not used.*)
FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
Ne rendrai-je pas ? &c.	N'aurai-je pas rendu ? &c.

Conditional.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Ne rendrais-je pas ?	N'aurais-je pas rendu ?

EXERCISE 61.

Observe that Objective Pronouns are placed after NE *and before verb or auxiliary, as usual.*

L'avocat vous a demandé ces papiers ; ne les lui avez-vous pas encore envoyés ? Pourquoi le commis ne les a-t-il pas cherchés ?—Il les a cherchés mais il ne les a pas trouvés.—Pourquoi les matelots n'ont-ils pas hissé la grand'voile ?—Ne l'ont-ils pas encore hissée ? —Monsieur votre frère n'a-t-il pas de bicyclette ?— N'en a-t-il pas encore acheté ?—Pourquoi n'en a-t-il pas loué une au (*by the*) mois ?—N'avez-vous pas entendu un bruit suspect dans le verger ?—Monsieur le ministre est-il toujours à la campagne ?—N'en est-il pas revenu ?—Ne lui a-t-on pas envoyé son courrier ?— Son secrétaire ne dépouille-t-il pas sa correspondance ? —Il veut (*wants*) acheter des terrains en Amérique.— Que ne lui ai-je pas dit pour l'en dissuader !—Que n'aurions-nous pas fait pour conjurer ce malheur ?

Am I not taller than you ?—Has he not spent all his money ?—Have you no change ?—Have they not done better than yesterday ?—Will not our soldiers retake the fortress ?—Has not the performance amused you ? —Shall we not have the pleasure to (*of*) see your

mother?—Have you not sold your park?—Do you not hear the cries of the crowd?—Why did your father not buy you a bicycle rather than a pony? — He will buy me them both.—Did not the captain say that we should arrive about (*vers*) (*the*) three o'clock? —Where has the servant put my umbrella?—Have you not looked for it in your room?—The boy is asking for his books.—Has not the bookseller sent them to us?— Did you not order them?

Conjugation of Passive Verbs.

292. The conjugation of *passive verbs* consists of the simple or compound tenses of the verb *être*, to be, and of the Participle Past of an active verb.

293. The Past Participle used with *être* agrees in gender and number with the subject, and in the Infinitive and Participles with the noun to which it refers; as, *La ville était condamnée à être brûlée le samedi* (Michelet).

294. Remember that JE, TU, NOUS, VOUS, may be *feminine;* participles and adjectives agree with VOUS in the singular when it stands for one person, *Vous êtes blâmé* (*blâmée*).

295. *ÊTRE BLÂME*, to be blamed.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT INFINITIVE.
Être blâmé, *to be blamed.*	Avoir été blâmé, *to have been blamed.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
Étant blâmé, *being blamed.*	Ayant été blâmé, *having been blamed.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.			PAST INDEFINITE.		
Je suis	blâmé, *m.*	*I am blamed.*	J'ai été	blâmé, *m.*	*I have been blamed.*
tu es	blâmée, *f.*		tu as été	blâmée, *f.*	
il *or* elle est			il *or* elle a été		
nous sommes	blâmés, *m.*		n. avons été	blâmés, *m.*	
vous êtes	blâmées, *f.*		vous avez été	blâmées, *f.*	
ils *or* elles sont			ils *or* elles ont été.		

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
J'étais	blâmé, *m.*	*I was blamed.*	J'avais été	blâmé, *m.*	*I had been blamed.*
tu étais	blâmée, *f.*		tu avais été	blâmée, *f.*	
il *or* elle était			il *or* elle avait été		
nous étions	blâmés, *m.*		n. avions été	blâmés, *m.*	
vous étiez	blâmées, *f.*		vous avez été	blâmées, *f.*	
ils *or* elles étaient			ils *or* elles avaient été		

PRETERITE.			PAST ANTERIOR.		
Je fus	blâmé, *m.*	*I was blamed.*	J'eus été	blâmé, *m.*	*I had been blamed.*
tu fus	blâmée, *f.*		tu eus été	blâmée, *f.*	
il *or* elle fut			il *or* elle eut été		
nous fûmes	blâmés, *m.*		n. eûmes été	blâmés, *m.*	
nous fûtes	blâmées, *f.*		v. eûtes été	blâmées, *f.*	
ils *or* elles furent			ils *or* elles eurent été		

FUTURE.			PERFECT.		
Je serai	blâmé, *m.*	*I shall be blamed.*	J'aurai été	blâmé, *m.*	*I shall have been blamed.*
tu seras	blâmée, *f.*		tu auras été	blâmée, *f.*	
il *or* elle sera			il *or* elle aura été		
nous serons	blâmés, *m.*		n. aurons été	blâmés, *m.*	
vous serez	blâmées, *f.*		v. aurez éte	blâmées, *f.*	
ils *or* elles seront			ils *or* elles auront été		

Conditional.

PRESENT.			PAST.		
Je serais	blâmé, *m.*	*I should be blamed.*	J'aurais été	blâmé, *m.*	*I should have been blamed.*
tu serais	blâmée, *f.*		tu aurais été	blâmée, *f.*	
il *or* elle serait			il aurait été		
nous serions	blâmés, *m.*		n. aurions été	blâmés, *m.*	
vous seriez	blâmées, *f.*		v. auriez été	blâmées, *f.*	
ils *or* elles seraient			ils *or* elles auraient été		

Imperative.

Sois	blâmé, *m.*	*Be (thou) blamed.*
qu'il *or* qu'elle soit	blâmée, *f.*	
soyons	blâmés, *m.*	
soyez	blâmées, *f.*	
qu'ils *or* qu'elles soient		

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Que je sois	blâmé, *m.*	Que j'aie été	blâmé, *m.*
que tu sois	blâmée, *f.*	que tu aies été	blâmée, *f.*
qu'il soit		qu'il ait été	
que nous soyons	blâmés, *m.*	que nous ayons été	blâmés, *m.*
que vous soyez	blâmées, *f.*	que vous ayez été	blâmées, *f.*
qu'ils soient		qu'ils aient été	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je fusse	blâmé, *m.*	Que j'eusse été	blâmé, *m.*
que tu fusses	blâmée, *f.*	que tu eusses été	blâmée, *f.*
qu'il fût		qu'il eût été	
q. n. fussions	blâmés, *m.*	q. n. eussions été	blâmés, *m.*
que vous fussiez	blâmées, *f.*	q. vous eussiez été	blâmées, *f.*
qu'ils fussent		qu'ils eussent été	

296. Interrogative and Negative constructions as before **(249-251)**:—

Suis-je blâmé?	Je ne suis pas blâmé.
Ne suis-je pas blâmé?	Je n'ai pas été blâmé.

297. Take care to use the **Preterite Passive** when referring to a **definite action** in narrative style :—

La ville fut prise,	*The town was taken.*
Les maisons furent pillées,	*The houses were pillaged.*

In conversation use the Past Indefinite :—

Il a été blessé,	*He was hurt (wounded).*
Ils ont été punis,	*They were punished.*

298. In the Imperfect Passive the Participle is often little more than an adjective :—

Il était blessé,	*He was (lying) wounded.*
La maison était détruite,	*The house was in ruins (destroyed).*
La ville était prise,	*The town was in the hands of the enemy.*

The same sense may occur in the Present, *La ville est prise,* but this may be the Historic Present equal to *fut prise.* Great care is necessary in the use of the tenses of the Passive Voice.

299. Notice also that the subject of the Passive verb can only be the direct object of the active. Otherwise use *On* as subject :—

I am told,	On me dit.

EXERCISE 62.

Un drapeau blanc fut hissé sur l'hôtel de ville.—A l'arrivée de cette nouvelle les portes de la ville furent fermées.—Strafford fut accusé du crime de lèse-majesté. —Ses forces étaient minées par la maladie.—Le roi était affligé de la situation de son favori.—Cet assassin a été enfin arrêté.—Pensez-vous qu'il soit condamné? —Oh oui, il sera condamné à mort, pour sûr.—Je regrette que ce brave homme n'ait pas été récompensé de sa peine.—Les récompenses seront distribuées

dimanche.—La reine était abattue de tant de souffrances.—Jeanne d'Arc fut brûlée sur la place publique de Rouen.—Ils ont peur d'être poursuivis.

The Dutch fleet was beaten after a desperate struggle. —Although he has been condemned to death, he will not be executed.—I give you this letter of introduction in order that you may be well received by the minister. The letters will be delivered in an hour.—They were accused of a great crime.—Our troops have been praised and rewarded by (*of*) the king.—Here are (*Voici*) the prizes which have been awarded to the pupils of the highest class.—The town was taken by storm (*d'assaut*) [on] the third day.—Were the inhabitants not frightened by the noise of the cannonade? That lady is loved by the poor (*plur.*) and esteemed by everybody.—That play is well written, but it is not very amusing.

NEUTER VERBS.

300. A *Neuter Verb* expresses *being*, or a *state of being*, or an *action* confined to the *actor*. They can have no direct object:—

Je suis, *I am.* Il dort, *he sleeps.* Vous courez, *you run.*

301. They are conjugated in the same manner as active verbs, and the great majority take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

J'ai dormi,	*I have slept.*
Nous avons couru,	*We ran.*
Elle avait marché,	*She had walked.*

302. A dozen always take ÊTRE, and many more take *avoir* to express the *action*, and *être* the *state resulting from the action*.

The following take *être* only, but it will be noticed that the action always results in a state or position of the actor :—

aller,	to go.	**partir,**	to depart, to start.
arriver,	to arrive.	**retourner,**	to go back.
entrer,	to enter.	**sortir,**	to go out.
mourir,	to die.	**tomber,**	to fall.
naître,	to be born.	**venir,**	to come.

And these compounds :—

rentrer,	to come in again. / to come home.	**intervenir,**	to interfere.
repartir,	to set off again.	**parvenir,**	to succeed, to reach
ressortir,	to go out again.	**revenir,**	to return, come back.
retomber,	to fall down again. / to fall back.	**survenir,**	to come up (by chance) (unexpectedly). / to supervene.
devenir,	to become.		

Other compounds of *venir* take *avoir* (388); as,

J'ai prévenu, *I have warned, informed.*

303. Notice that with *devenir* what becomes the *object.*

Que sont devenus vos frères ? What has become of your brothers ?
(What are your brothers become ?) *Frères* is the subject.
Je ne sais (pas) ce qu'ils sont devenus. I do not know what has become of them.

The following also take *être,* but are less common :—

décéder,	to die.
échoir,	to fall due.
éclore,	to be hatched, to blow (of a flower).

304. The importance of these verbs can hardly be exaggerated, for most of them are among the commonest in the language. That the student may practise them

at once the above list is repeated in the 3rd person plur. or 3rd sing. fem. Past Indefinite to show the Past Participles and their agreement. Bear in mind that a **past participle** with **être** always agrees with the **subject** (except when reflexive).

Ils sont allés,	They went.
Ils sont arrivés,	They arrived.
Elle est entrée,	She entered.
Elle est morte,	She died.
Ils sont partis,	They departed.
Ils sont sortis,	They went out.
Elles sont tombées,	They fell.
Elles sont venues,	They came.
Ils sont rentrés,	They came home.
Ils sont repartis,	They set off again.
Elle est ressortie,	She went out again.
Elle est retombée,	She fell down again.
Ils sont devenus,	They became.
Ils sont intervenus,	They interfered.
Ils sont parvenus,	They reached (succeeded).
Elles sont revenues,	They returned.
Elle est survenue,	She came up.

Also,

Elle est décédée,	She is dead.
La traite est échue,	The draft is due.
La fleur est éclose,	The flower is open (blown).

305. The following *ought* to take *avoir* when the *past action* is expressed, but the French generally use them with *être*.

accourir,	to come running. / to gather (a crowd).
passer,	to pass.
monter,	to go up, ascend.
descendre,	to come down.
rester,	to remain, to stay.
Ils sont accourus,	They gathered round (hastily). / They came running up.
Elle est passée,	She (It) (has) passed.
Nous sommes restés,	We remained.

306. In some the distinction is clearer :—

Elle est demeurée,	She remained.
Elle a demeuré,	She has resided (lived).
Elle est beaucoup grandie,	She is much grown.
Elle a beaucoup grandi dernièrement,	She has grown much lately.
La rivière est baissée,	The river is lower (than it was).
La rivière a baissé,	The river has subsided.

The complete list of these verbs is very long. The above will suffice.

307. Participles which take *être* can be used **alone,** like the participles of transitive verbs taken in a passive sense. They often form absolute clauses like the Latin Ablative Absolute.

Le fossé passé, il restait le mur à escalader,	When the moat was crossed, there still remained the wall to scale.
Parvenus au sommet, les voyageurs se reposèrent,	Having reached the summit, the travellers rested.
Arrivée sur la place, la foule s'écarta respectueusement devant elle,	When she reached the square, the crowd made way for her respectfully.

308. When any of these verbs are used transitively they must take *avoir*.

Le domestique a monté votre valise,	*The servant has carried your trunk upstairs.*
J'ai descendu les rideaux,	*I have taken down the curtains.*
Il a passé la soirée à lire,	*He spent the evening in reading.*

EXERCISE 63.

(*a.*) Les voyageurs sont arrivés vers (les) huit heures.—Ils sont repartis à midi et demi.—Ils sont restés chez nous quatre heures et demie.—Quel âge avez-vous, mon petit ami, et où êtes-vous né?—J'ai onze ans et je suis né au Havre.—Avez-vous toujours votre père?—Non, monsieur, il est mort l'année dernière.—Et votre mère,

qu'est-elle devenue ?—Elle est entrée à l'hôpital il y a huit jours, et mon frère qui est marin est allé rejoindre son vaisseau à Brest.—Je suis descendu ce matin à sept heures et quart.—Quand nous sommes arrivés à la gare le train était déjà parti.—La flotte de la Manche a passé devant notre port ce matin.—Elle est passée depuis plusieurs heures.

(*b.*) Qu'étaient devenus vos frères ?—Ils étaient allés voir mon oncle en Algérie.—Les enfants ont beaucoup grandi à la campagne.—Comme tu es grandie, ma mignonne !—Le cortège présidentiel est (*a correctly*) passé à midi. — Après avoir visité la caserne, le ministre de la guerre est remonté en voiture.—Les députés sont repartis pour Paris par le train de six heures trente.—Nous serions restés plus longtemps à Paris si nos moyens nous l'avaient permis.—Quoiqu'ils soient arrivés depuis huit jours, ils ne sont pas encore venus me voir.—Nous ne sommes pas intervenus dans la discussion.—Elle n'est pas parvenue à le lui faire comprendre.—Arrivés de la veille, ils ignoraient encore la fatale nouvelle.

(*a.*) His sons have gone (*aller en* or *partir pour*) to America.—I went to his house (*chez lui*) at nine in (*of*) the morning, but he had already gone out.—My friends have put up (*got down*) at the Continental Hôtel.—After visiting (*have visited*) the palace and gardens of Versailles, we returned to Paris.—She did not come down from her room before eleven.—At what time did you (*plur.*) get home last night ?—We got home at twelve o'clock (*at night*) **(142)**.—What has become of your French Grammar ?—I do not know (*sais*) what has become of (it) (*the subject*).—We climbed (*mounted*) to the summit of the tower.

(*b.*) The officers have gone (*entered*) into (*dans*) the barracks.—Several persons had come running up at the sound of the shots.—My neighbour died last year, and his family has become destitute (*fallen into misery*). —How long (*until what hour*) did you (*fem. plur.*) stay

at the ball?—We stayed until two in the morning.—Louise, how old are you, and where were you born?—I am thirteen, and I was born at Dieppe.—The travellers have reached the top of the hill.—When the battle was over (*the struggle finished*) **(307)** the victors encamped on the field (*of battle*).—When the father was dead **(307)** the sons dug up (*vous retournent*) the field.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

309. A *Reflexive* (or *reflected*) Verb is one in which the action is reflected or thrown back upon the actor, which thus becomes also the object of the action; as, *I hurt myself, He flatters himself.* Such verbs take the ordinary objective pronouns in the 1st and 2nd persons, ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, but the special reflexive pronoun SE in the 3rd person for both genders and numbers.*

310. They are invariably conjugated with ÊTRE, which, however, always means **to have**; thus the **participle agrees** with the **objective pronoun** when it is the **direct object** (accusative).

Elle s'est flattée,	She HAS flattered herself.
Ils se sont loués,	They HAVE praised themselves.
Vous vous êtes blessé,	You HAVE hurt YOURSELF.
Vous vous êtes blessés,	You HAVE hurt YOURSELVES.

311. *SE FLATTER*, to flatter oneself.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Se flatter,† *to flatter oneself.*	S'être flatté, *or* flattée,*f.* } *to have flattered oneself.*

* The disjunctive forms, *soi-même, moi-même,* &c., may be added for emphasis, but their use is comparatively rare (178); e.g., *Se flatter soi-même*; *vous vous flattez vous-mêmes.*

† SE is not an essential part of a Reflexive Infinitive; on the contrary, a suitable pronoun must always be used; as, *Il ne faut pas vous flatter*, You must not flatter yourself (better than the Subjunctive in this case).

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Se flattant, *flattering oneself.*	S'étant flatté, *or* flattée, *f.* } *having flattered oneself.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je me flatte, tu te flattes, il se flatte, nous nous flattons, vous vous flattez, ils se flattent,	*I flatter myself, &c.*	Je me suis flatté, tu t'es flatté, il s'est flatté, nous nous sommes flattés, vous vous êtes flattés, ils se sont flattés,	*I have flattered myself, &c.*
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Je me flattais, tu te flattais, il se flattait, nous nous flattions, vous vous flattiez, ils se flattaient,	*I was flattering myself, &c.*	Je m'étais flatté, tu t'étais flatté, il s'était flatté, nous nous étions flattés, vous vous étiez flattés, ils s'étaient flattés,	*I had flattered myself, &c.*

PRETERITE.	PAST ANTERIOR.
Je me flattai. &c.	Je me fus flatté. &c.
FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
Je me flatterai. &c.	Je me serai flatté. &c.

Conditional.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Je me flatterais. &c.	Je me serais flatté. &c.

Imperative.

Flatte-toi,	*Flatter thyself.*
qu'il se flatte,	*let him flatter himself.*
flattons-nous,	*let us flatter ourselves.*
flattez-vous,	*flatter yourselves.*
qu'ils se flattent,	*let them flatter themselves.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Que je me flatte.	Que je me sois flatté.
&c.	&c.
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Que je me flattasse.	Que je me fusse flatté.
&c.	&c.

312. The Negative and Interrogative constructions are formed as with any other verb :—

NEGATIVELY.

Ne pas se flatter,	*Not to flatter oneself.*
ne pas s'être flatté,	*not to have flattered oneself.*
ne se flattant pas,	*not flattering oneself.*
ne s'étant pas flatté,	*not having flattered oneself.*
Je ne me flatte pas,	*I do not flatter myself.*
&c.	*&c.*
Je ne me suis pas flatté,	*I have not flattered myself.*
&c.	*&c.*

IMPERATIVE (151-152).

Ne te flatte pas,	*Do not flatter thyself.*
qu'il ne se flatte pas,	*let him not flatter himself.*
ne nous flattons pas,	*let us not flatter ourselves.*
ne vous flattez pas,	*do not flatter yourselves (yourself).*
qu'ils ne se flattent pas,	*let them not flatter themselves.*

INTERROGATIVELY.

Est-ce que je me flatte?	*Do I flatter myself? &c.*	Me suis-je flatté?	*Have I flattered myself? &c.*
te flattes-tu?		t'es-tu flatté?	
se flatte-t-il?		s'est-il flatté?	
nous flattons-nous?		n. sommes-nous flattés?	
vous flattez-vous?		vous êtes-vous flatté(s)?	
se flattent-ils?		se sont-ils flattés?	

And so for other tenses.

NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.

Est-ce que je ne me flatte pas ?
Ne te flattes-tu pas ?
Ne se flatte-t-il pas ?
&c. } *Do I not flatter myself?* &c.

Ne me suis-je pas flatté ?
Ne t'es-tu pas flatté ?
&c. } *Have I not flattered myself?* &c.

313. The above may be styled an **accidentally reflected** verb, that is, it merely *happens* to have its subject also for its object; it might have some other object; thus, *I flatter myself*, or *I flatter him*.

314. Many of these, although perfectly simple from the French point of view, become more or less idiomatic as compared with English.

TRUE ACCIDENTALS.

se blesser,	to wound (hurt) oneself.
se voir	to see oneself.
se louer,	to praise oneself.
se laver,	to wash oneself.
s'habiller,	to dress (oneself).
se déshabiller,	to undress (oneself).

SOMEWHAT IDIOMATIC.

lever,	to raise.	**se lever,**	to raise oneself. to get up.
enrhumer,	to give a cold.	**s'enrhumer,**	to give oneself a cold. to catch cold.
promener,	to take (someone) for a walk.	**se promener,**	to go out oneself.
baisser,	to lower.	**se baisser,**	to stoop.
arrêter,	to stop (with object).	**s'arrêter,**	to stop (intrans.)
endormir,	to lull to sleep.	**s'endormir,**	to fall asleep.
coucher,	to put to bed.	**se coucher,**	to go to bed.

315. Compare the following transitive and reflexive uses :—

J'ai lavé l'enfant, I have washed the child.	**Je me suis lavé,** I have washed myself.
Elle a déshabillé le malade, She has undressed the patient.	**Elle s'est déshabillée,** She has undressed (herself).
Ce courant d'air nous a enrhumés, That draught gave us a cold.	**Nous nous sommes enrhumés,** We (have) caught cold.

316. A verb may be reflected with an indirect object (dative) without any change of form except that the participle DOES NOT AGREE with the reflexive pronoun.

Je me suis acheté des gants, { I (*f.*) have bought (for) myself some gloves.

If the direct object precedes, the participle agrees with it.

Je me les suis achetés, I have bought them for myself.

Les gants que je me suis achetés, { The gloves (which) I bought myself.

Compare :—

Les gants que je lui ai achetés, { The gloves I bought him (her).

(It will be seen from this example that *être* really does mean *avoir, to have.*)

Such are :—

se faire,	to make for oneself.
se procurer,	to get for oneself.
se dire,	to say to oneself.
se donner,	to give (to) oneself.
s'imaginer,	to fancy, to take into one's head.
se promettre,	to promise to oneself.
se faire mal,	to hurt oneself (do harm to).

EXERCISE 64.

Adhere strictly to the principle that the Past Participle of a reflected verb can only agree with the direct object (acc.) if it precede.

Ces pauvres ouvriers se sont gravement blessés.—Cette petite fille s'est fait mal en tombant dans l'escalier.—Cette dame se donne des airs ridicules.—Je me suis enrhumée hier soir en revenant du concert.—Mes enfants, habillez-vous vite, l'heure avance.—La canonnière s'était arrêtée à l'entrée du port.—Nous nous étions procuré une carte du théâtre de la guerre.—Marie s'est blessée au doigt en jouant avec un canif neuf dont le ressort est trop dur.—Ces étrangers se sont promenés dans Paris toute la journée.—Nous nous sommes arrêtés un instant pour demander la cause d'un grand rassemblement qui s'était formé au coin de la rue Royale.—Elle s'est baissée pour ramasser son mouchoir.—Désirée, couchez vite les enfants.—Mes enfants, je veux que vous vous couchiez de bonne heure.—Il faut que vous vous procuriez un meilleur dictionnaire.—Jeanne, il est temps de vous lever (notice *vous*).—Pourquoi ne vous êtes-vous pas levée de meilleure heure?—Adrienne s'est fait un joli tablier.

I easily [2] catch [1] cold.—Do not catch cold.—The first frost (*cold* plur.) of winter always gives me a cold.—I have put the children to bed.—I should have gone to bed earlier had I known (*su*) that I should have had (*that it was necessary*) (*fallait*) to get up (Infin. *with suitable pronoun*) so soon (*si matin*).—I took an hour's walk (walked for *pendant* an hour) in (*at*) the Bois de Boulogne this afternoon.—We should have bathed if the water had not been so cold.—Those boys have not washed themselves before sitting down (*avant de se mettre*) to table.—I fell asleep at the fireside (*corner of the fire*).—Don't go to sleep!—They said to themselves that we should be out (*gone out*).—Why did you (*fem.*) not buy yourself a pair of gloves as (*puisque*) you were

(*Imp.*) in town ?—Why (*Mais*) I have bought them (*for myself*).—I have promised myself to (*de*) make some fine excursions into the Highlands (*mountains*) this summer.—Maggie (*Marguerite*) has made herself a pair of mittens.

RECIPROCAL VERBS.

317. The *Reflexive Verb* has also the reciprocal or mutual force without any change of form. Of course this can occur only in the plural.* Thus, **Ils se flattent,** often means, They flatter each other. **Vous vous aimez,** You love each other. They may also be indirect; **Ils se sont dit des compliments,** They paid each other compliments; **Nous nous sommes rendu mutuellement des services,** We mutually obliged each other.

318. The agreement of the Participle follows the same rules.

Les cadeaux qu'elles se sont envoyés, } *The presents they sent each other.*

Nous nous sommes rencontrés à Nice, } *We met at Nice.*

319. If necessary, *l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre, les uns les autres, l'un à l'autre, les uns aux autres* **(231)** or *mutuellement, réciproquement,* may be used for clearness, but in most cases they can be dispensed with.

Aimez-vous les uns les autres, } Love one another.

It will readily be seen that *Aimez-vous* would be neither sufficiently clear nor sufficiently emphatic in this case, whereas, Ne vous regardez pas comme cela, *Do not look at each other like that,* is plain enough.

Ils se sont blessés réciproquement, } They wounded each other.

* A *reciprocal verb* is sometimes used in the singular with on; *On s'entre-tue là-bas,* They are killing each other over there.

Contrast:—

Ils se sont nui à eux-mêmes, { They have done harm to themselves.

Ils se sont nui l'un à l'autre, They have injured each other.

Ils se sont nui les uns aux autres, } They have injured one another.

NOTE.—Idiomatic and Essentially Reflexive Verbs will be dealt with later on (606, &c.) and Essentially Reciprocal Verbs (612).

EXERCISE 65.

Ces deux peuples se sont fait beaucoup de mal.—Ils se sont rendu les cadeaux qu'ils s'étaient faits.—Ces jumeaux s'aiment trop, on ne voit (*sees*) jamais l'un sans l'autre.—Ils se flattent de réussir.—Ils se flattent mutuellement et cherchent à se tromper.—Nous nous sommes vus tous les jours pendant des années.—Ils se sont fiancés pendant les vacances et maintenant ils s'écrivent (*write*) tous les deux jours.—Ces officiers se sont battus en duel à cause des injures qu'ils s'étaient dites, et ils se sont blessés assez sérieusement.—Ils se sont promis de ne plus s'exposer ainsi sans appui.—Les loups ne se mangent pas entre eux (Prov.).

They have written to each other very often, and they have made each other presents occasionally.—They esteem each other, but they do not love each other.—We have not met since Christmas.—Those ladies said many amiable things to each other; I think they were trying to (*de*) deceive each other.—We have injured each other without knowing (*Inf.*) it.—They helped (*secouru*) each other mutually by all the means in their power (*pouvoir*).

IMPERSONAL OR UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

320. These verbs are only used in the 3rd per. sing. Some take *avoir*, others *être*, in their compound tenses, but the Past Participle suffers no change; as, *Il a plu*, it rained; *il est arrivé*, it happened. They otherwise follow the conjugation to which they belong.

321. List of the most common Unipersonal Verbs, or Verbs used Impersonally.

Il y a,	*there is, there are.*	Il pleut,*	*it rains, is raining.*
Il se trouve,	*there is found.*	Il neige,†	*it snows.*
Il s'agit (de),	*the question is.*	Il grêle,	*it hails.*
Il paraît,*	*it appears.*	Il tonne,	*it thunders.*
Il semble,	*it seems.*	Il gèle,†	*it freezes.*
Il importe,	*it matters, is important.*	Il dégèle,†	*it thaws.*
		Il fait,*	*it is (of the weather).*
Il convient,*	*it becomes, is suitable, proper.*	Il fait beau,	*it is fine.*
		Il fait mauvais temps,	*it is bad weather.*
Il faut, (328),	*it is necessary, must.*	Il fait du soleil,	*it is sunny.*
Il arrive,	*it happens.*		

Besides these, a large number of verbs can be used impersonally (668-9).

322. *Y AVOIR,* there to be.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Y ayant,	*there being.*	Y ayant eu,	*there having been.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Il y a,	*there is* or *are.*	Il y a eu,	*there has been*
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Il y avait,	*there was* or *were.*	Il y avait eu,	*there had been.*
PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.	
Il y eut,	*there was* or *were.*	Il y eut eu,	*there had been.*
FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Il y aura,	*there will be.*	Il y aura eu,	*th. will have been.*

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Il y aurait,	*there would be.*	Il y aurait eu,	*th. wd. have been.*

(No *Imperative.*)

* Verbs thus * are irregular, and will be found in their alphabetical order according to their conjugation.

† Offer certain peculiarities to be mentioned shortly (332, 338).

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Qu'il y ait.	Qu'il y ait eu.
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Qu'il y eût.	Qu'il y eût eu.

323. The same verb used negatively, *Ne pas y avoir*, or *N'y avoir pas.*

Il n'y a pas, *there is not.*	Il n'y a pas eu, *th. has not been.*
Il n'y avait pas, *there was not.*	Il n'y avait pas eu, *there had not been.*
Il n'y eut pas, *there was not.*	Il n'y eut pas eu, *th. had not been.*
Il n'y aura pas, *th. will not be.*	Il n'y aura pas eu, *there will not have been.*
Il n'y aurait pas, *th. wd. not be.*	Il n'y aurait pas eu, *there would not have been.*
Qu'il n'y ait pas.	Qu'il n'y ait pas eu.
Qu'il n'y eût pas.	Qu'il n'y eût pas eu.

324. The same verb used interrogatively.

Y a-t-il? *is there?*	Y a-t-il eu? *has there been?*
Y avait-il? *was there?*	Y avait-il eu? *had there been?*
Y eut-il? *was there?*	Y eut-il eu? *had there been?*
Y aura-t-il? *will there be?*	Y aura-t-il eu? *will th. have been?*
Y aurait-il? *would there be?*	Y aurait-il eu? *wd. th. have been?*

325. The same verb used interrogatively and negatively.

N'y a-t-il pas? *is there not?*	N'y a-t-il pas eu? *has th. not been?*
N'y avait-il pas? *was there not?*	N'y avait-il pas eu? *had there not been?*
N'y eut-il pas? *was there not?*	N'y eut-il pas eu? *hd. th. not been?*
N'y aura-t-il pas? *will th. not be?*	N'y aura-t-il pas eu? *will there not have been?*
N'y aurait-il pas? *wd. th. not be?*	N'y aurait-il pas eu? *would there not have been?*

326. *Il y a* is used of time and distance :—

Il y a huit jours de cela,	*That was a week ago.*
Combien y a-t-il d'ici à Londres?	*How far is it from here to London?*

327. Do not confound *Il y a,* there is (are) with *Voici,* and *voilà,* which equal *See, Behold*; thus,

There is a book on the table,	Il y a un livre sur la table.
There is the book you lent me,	Voilà (Voici) le livre que vous m'avez prêté.

328. *FALLOIR,* to be necessary (must).

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
None.	Fallu.

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Il faut,	*it is necessary.*	Il a fallu,	*it has been necessary.*
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Il fallait,	*it was necessary.*	Il avait fallu,	*it had been nec.*
PRETERITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.	
Il fallut,	*it was necessary.*	Il eut fallu,	*it had been necessary.*
FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Il faudra,	*it will be necessary.*	Il aura fallu,	*it will have been nec.*

Conditional.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Il faudrait,	*it wd. be necessary.*	Il aurait fallu,	*it wd. have been nec.*

(No *Imperative*).

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Qu'il faille.	Qu'il ait fallu.
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Qu'il fallût.	Qu'il eût fallu.

329. The verb *falloir*, to be necessary, is used either with the conjunction *que* and the subjunctive, in which case the subject of the first verb in English becomes the subject of the second verb in French; as, *Il faut que* JE *sorte*, I must go out; or with the Infinitive, and then the pronoun, which is the subject of the first verb in English, is expressed by *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, placed between *il* and *faut*; as, *Il* ME *faut sortir*, I must go out. The former is the most used.

The Infinitive alone is often clear enough; *Il faut travailler*, We (you, they) must work; especially with reflexive verbs as the pronoun shows to whom the action relates:—

Mes enfants, il faut vous coucher, } *Children, you must go to bed.*
Il faudra nous dépêcher, *We shall have to make haste.*

330. To want, may be translated by *falloir*, in this manner:—

Il *me* faut une grammaire, *I want a grammar.*
Il *lui* faut du papier, *He wants some paper.*

331. NOTICE the idiomatic expressions, **Peu s'en faut**, or, **Il s'en faut de peu**, *It wants but little = nearly*; **Peu s'en est fallu**, *It wanted but little*, &c.; and **Il s'en faut de beaucoup**, *far from* (but NOT *beaucoup s'en faut*), **Tant s'en faut**, *far from it.*

They govern the Subjunctive, and *Peu, &c.*, requires *ne*; as, **Peu s'en fallut qu'il n'en mourût**, *He nearly died of it.* They do not affect the phrase when they come at the end; as, **Je ne suis pas content de vous, tant s'en faut**, *I am not pleased with you, far from it.*

EXERCISE 66.

Il faut que les enfants soient obéissants.—Quel temps fait-il?—Il pleut ce matin, et il fait beaucoup de vent. —De quoi s'agit-il?—Il s'agit du départ de ce régiment pour le Tonkin.—N'y a-t-il pas encore de la neige sur

les montagnes?—Si, et il y en a déjà même dans la plaine.—Que faut-il faire pour vous contenter?—Il y aura un grand feu d'artifice le quatorze juillet à l'occasion de la Fête Nationale.—Il importe qu'un général inspire de la confiance à ses hommes.—Il ne semble pas que cette nouvelle soit vraie.—"Adieu, beau ciel, il faut mourir" (C. Delavigne).—Si B. ne se fit pas (*did not get*) tuer pour les Bourbons en 1830, il s'en fallut de bien peu (E. About).

It is important to (*of*) give (to) children good examples.—It rains often at (*in*) this season.—It has rained all night.—It is necessary to tell him.—There is a gentleman at the door.—It does not become a child to (*of*) contradict his parents.—There was a grand ball at their house (*chez eux*) last [2] week [1].—Does it still snow?—It seems to me (*conj.*) that you have done [3] very [1] well [2].—There will be (a review in the park) [2] [on] Monday [1].—What do you want?—I want twenty pounds for my journey.—What must I give you for your trouble?—They must be punished for (*of*) their negligence.—Must I show you the road?—Is there any one in the drawing-room?—There must be an error in the account.—You must sell me your house.—How much do you want? (*ask you of it*).—The master is far from being pleased with his pupils.

Observations on some Verbs of the First Conjugation and their Peculiar Orthography.

332. All verbs ending in GER, as *manger*, to eat, take an *e* mute after the *g* before the vowels *a*, *o*, of the termination, in order to soften that consonant, so that it may preserve the sound which it has in the Infinitive Present; as, *Nous mange**o**ns*, *mang**e**ant*, *Je mang**e**ais*, *il chang**e**a*, *il neig**e**ait*.

333. Verbs ending in CER, as *menacer*, to menace;

placer, to place; take a cedilla under the *c* before the vowels *a* and *o* of the termination, to give the *c* the soft pronunciation of *s*, so that it may preserve the sound which it has in the Infinitive Present; as, *Je commençais*, I began; *nous commençons*, we begin.

Both these classes are very numerous.

EXERCISE 67.

Let us spare his feelings.—I was arranging your books.—He encouraged me to (*à*) continue.—Let us not think (*songer*) of it (*to it*).—The robbers divided the booty.—Abridge your story.—You will judge of the effect.—He announced to us the issue of the affair.—We begin generally at nine o'clock.—They broke open the door.—He traced a line on the map to indicate the position of the enemy.

Verbs ending in ELER and ETER.

334. Verbs in *eler* and *eter* double the *l* or *t* before the mute endings *e, es, ent,* and throughout the **Future** and **Conditional**; as,

335. *Appeler*, to call. *Jeter*, to throw.

J'appelle.	J'appellerai.	Je jette.	Je jetterai.
tu appelles.		tu jettes.	
il appelle.	Appelle.	il jette.	Jette.
n. appelons.	qu'il appelle.	nous jetons.	qu'il jette.
v. appelez.	appelons.	vous jetez.	jetons.
ils appellent.	appelez.	ils jettent.	jetez.
	qu'ils appellent.		qu'ils jettent.
J'appelais.		Je jetais.	
	Que j'appelle.		Que je jette.
J'ai appelé.	q. n. appelions.	J'ai jeté.	q. n. jetions.

336. Such are:—

amonceler,	*to heap up.*
atteler,	*to harness.*
chanceler,	*to stagger.*
épeler,	*to spell.*
rappeler,	*to recall.*
renouveler,	*to renew.*
se rappeler,	*to remember.*
cacheter,	*to seal.*
décacheter,	*to break the seal, to open.*
feuilleter,	*to turn over the leaves.*
haleter,	*to pant.*
projeter,	*to project, to intend.*
soufflеter,	*to box the ears.*
voleter,	*to flutter.*

337. Note.—*Epeler,* means to spell out like a child in school; in other cases, *écrire* is generally used; as, *How do you spell that word?* Comment écrivez-vous (écrit-on) ce mot?

338. The following take a grave accent instead of doubling the *l* or *t* (**341**):—

geler,	*to freeze.*
dégeler,	*to thaw.*
celer,	*to conceal.*
déceler,	*to reveal.*
harceler,	*to harass.*
marteler,	*to hammer.*
modeler,	*to mould.*
peler,	*to peel.*
acheter,	*to buy.*
banqueter,	*to banquet.*
becqueter,	*to peck* (*birds*).
déchiqueter,	*to tear to shreds.*
démanteler,	*to dismantle.*
épousseter,	*to dust.*
étiqueter,	*to label.*
racheter,	*to redeem, to buy back.*

And a few more less common.

Examples:—Il gèle, *it is freezing*; il dégèle, *it is thawing*; je pèle une pomme, *I am peeling an apple*; J'achèterai, *I shall buy*; il rachètera, *he will redeem*; ils becquètent, *they peck.*

339. When *tt, ll,* or *ê,* occur, there is **no change**; as, regretter, *to regret*; quereller, *to quarrel*; exceller, *to excel*; arrêter, *to stop*; mêler, *to mix*; bêler, *to bleat*, &c.; *e.g.*, Nous regrettons, ils se querellaient, il excellait, les moutons bêlent.

340. Verbs in *éler* and *éter* change to *èle* and *ète* (342); as, révéler, *to reveal*; répéter, *to repeat*; inquiéter, *to annoy, to disquiet*; empiéter, *to encroach*; *e.g.*, il révèle, ils répètent, qu'il inquiète, tu empiètes.

EXERCISE 68.

Who calls me?—This name reminds me of an adventure.—We shall renew acquaintance (*no art.*) when he arrives (*will arrive*).—I have called you three times.—This action reveals a kind heart.—It will freeze tonight.—He throws the blame on me.—I shall throw this water [away].—He encroaches upon the ground of others.—I shall buy a new umbrella.—I must seal this parcel.—Throw this match into the fire-place.

341. Verbs having a mute *e* in the stem take a grave accent before a mute ending: MENER, to lead, *je mène, ils mènent, il mènera*, &c.

Such are:—

amener,	*to bring.*	lever,	*to raise.*
peser,	*to weigh.*	se lever,	*to get up.*
semer,	*to sow.*	achever,	*to finish.*
parsemer,	*to strew.*	sevrer,	*to wean.*

342. *É* changes into *è* except in the Fut. and Cond. (some authors use *è* even then, but the Académie says *é*). *Céder*, to yield, *je cède, Je céderai* (or *cèderai*) (18, 20).

Such are:—

régner,	*to reign.*	régler,	*to rule, settle.*
espérer,	*to hope.*	sécher,	*to dry.*
préférer,	*to prefer.*	protéger,	*to protect.*
lécher,	*to lick.*	posséder,	*to possess.*

343. VERBS ending in YER, as *payer*, to pay, change

the *y* into *i* before an *e* mute ; as, *Je paie*,* *je paierai*, I pay, I shall pay.†

344. As in those verbs the letter *y* makes part of the root, in the 1st and 2nd person plural of the Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive, the *y* is followed by an *i*, which belongs to the terminations *ions, iez*, of those two tenses ; as, *nous payions, vous payiez*, we paid, you paid.

Such are :—

balayer,	*to sweep.*	essayer,	*to try.*
effrayer,	*to frighten.*	essuyer,	*to wipe, endure.*
employer,	*to use.*	nettoyer,	*to clean.*
ennuyer,	*to weary, tire.*	noyer,	*to drown.*

345. Envoyer, to send, and **renvoyer,** to send back, deviate from the preceding observations in the Future and Conditional, which are irregular, making, **J'enverrai, j'enverrais; je renverrai, je renverrais,** and not *j'envoierai.*

346. As in the verbs ending in ÉER, such as *agréer*, to accept, the letter *é* accented makes part of the root, in the Present of the Indicative, Imperative, Present of the Subjunctive, and Past Participle in the masculine, the *é* is followed by another *e*, which belongs to the terminations of those tenses ; as, *J'agré-*E, *il agré-*E, *ils agré-*ENT, &c.

Hence, the Past Participle in the masculine being *agré-é*, the feminine of it, with the addition of the usual *e* mute, will be *agréée*, with three *e*'s.

* *Il paie* is also spelt *Il paye*, &c., but other verbs should follow the rule.

† This rule applies to all French verbs, the Participle Present of which ends in *yant* : *voir*, to see ; *voyant*, seeing ; *que je voie*, that I may see ; *fuir*, to fly ; *fuyant*, flying ; *que je fuie*, that I may fly.

347. These verbs have also two *e*'s in the Future and Conditional, before the terminations RAI, RAIS; as, *J'agrée*-RAI, *j'agrée*-RAIS.

These verbs are few in number :—

créer,	*to create.*	gréer,	*to rig.*
récréer,	*to recreate, amuse.*	suppléer,	*to make up for, to supply.*

EXERCISE 69.

Il espère réussir.—Les marins espérèrent gagner le rivage.—Il n'achèvera pas sa lecture ce soir.—J'ai réglé cette facture.—Le foin sèche au soleil.—La femme a été créée pour être la compagne de l'homme.—On m'envoie le "Temps" de Paris tous les jours.—Lève-toi donc, ta paresse m'ennuie.—Je vous prie d'agréer, Monsieur, mes salutations empressées.

I shall pay you at the end of this year.—Death frightens the guilty.—We employed then two hundred men.—I shall use all my influence in his favour.—I shall send you my servant.—This novel tires me to death (*à mourir*).—I shall try to (*of*) come at six o'clock.—Valour makes up for (*to the*) number.—God created (*Past Ind.*) heaven and earth.—This offer has been accepted.—You will try in vain to make straight (*redresser*) that tree.—They will only yield to force.—(*The*) Queen Victoria has reigned (*reigns since*) sixty years.—I always get up early.

348. As in the verbs ending in UER, such as, *tuer*, to kill, *u* makes part of the root, in the 1st and 2nd person plural of the Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive, the *i* of the terminations *ions, iez,* takes a diæresis, in order to show that *u* is to be sounded separately from those terminations ; as, *nous tuïons, vous tuïez,* we killed, you killed ; *que vous continuïez,* that you continue ; *que nous remuïons,* that we move.

Such are :—

atténuer,	*to attenuate.*	contribuer,	*to contribute.*
attribuer,	*to attribute.*	distribuer,	*to distribute.*

349. As in the verbs ending in IER, such as *prier,* to pray, the letter *i* makes part of the root, in the 1st and 2nd person plural of the Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive, the *i* is followed by another *i,* which belongs to the terminations of those two tenses ; as, Nous *pri-ions,* vous *pri-iez,* we prayed, you prayed.

Such are :—

congédier,	*to dismiss.*	remercier,	*to thank.*
étudier,	*to study.*	crier,	*to shout.*
oublier,	*to forget.*	plier,	*to bend.*

And many more.

EXERCISE 70.

Il faut que vous contribuïez au succès de l'entreprise. —Il ne faut pas que nous atténuïons la gravité de la situation.—Croyez-vous que nous oubliions tout ce que vous avez fait pour nous ? — Nous remerciions ce monsieur de sa bonté.

You must contribute to his advancement.—We were distributing the rewards.—We must not continue to (*à*) play —We were studying in your library.—You were forgetting your appointment.—We must thank them for their reception.—Why were you shouting ?—You must not forget to post that letter (*throw that letter to the post*).—The floor bent under the weight.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

350. Verbs are *irregular,* when they deviate in the formation of their tenses from the general rules, or differ in their terminations from the model conjugation to which they belong ; they are *defective,* when they are not used in certain tenses or persons.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

351. *ALLER*, to go.

Part. Pres. Allant.		Part. Past, Allé (être).	
Ind. *Pres.*	Je *vais.*	Cond. *Pres.*	J'*irais.*
	tu *vas.*	Imper.	
	il *va.*		Va.
	nous allons.		qu'il aille.
	vous allez.		allons.
	ils *vont.*		allez.
Imp.	J'allais.		qu'ils aillent.
Pret.	J'allai.	Subj. *Pres.*	Que j'*aille.*
Fut.	J'*irai.*		que tu *ailles.*
	tu *iras.*		qu'il *aille.*
	il *ira.*		que nous allions.
	nous *irons.*		que vous alliez.
	vous *irez.*		qu'ils *aillent.*
	ils *iront.*	*Imp.*	Que j'allasse.

352. The Imperative *va* takes *s* before *y*, and *en*; *Vas-y*, Go there (to it). *Vas en acheter*, Go and buy some. No hyphen in the latter case, as *en* depends on *acheter*.

353. The Present and Imperfect are much used before an Infinitive, as in English, to express the near Future; as,

Je vais lire,	I am going to read.
Il allait partir,	He was going to start.

This form may even translate the English Future :—

Je vais le faire demain,	I shall do it to-morrow.
Je vais vous le dire,	I will tell you.

354. Remember to use the right pronoun when the following verb is reflexive :—

Je vais **me** promener,	*I am going for a walk.*
Nous allions **nous** promener,	*We were going out for a walk.*

355. *J'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été,* are sometimes used for *je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé*; but the verb *être* expresses that one has returned from the place, whilst *aller* means that one is still there; as, *J'ai été à Paris,* implies my return from it; *il est allé à Paris,* gives to understand that he is at present staying in that city.

356. *S'EN ALLER,* to go away.

Infinitive.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
S'en aller, *to go away.*	S'en être allé,* *to have gone away.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
S'en allant, *going away.*	S'en étant allé, *having gone away.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je m'en *vais,*	*I go, or am going away, &c.*	Je m'en suis allé,	*I have gone away, &c.*
tu t'en *vas,*		tu t'en es allé,	
il s'en *va,*		il s'en est allé,	
nous nous en allons,		n. nous en sommes allés,	
vous vous en allez,		vous vous en êtes allés,	
ils s'en *vont,*		ils s'en sont allés,	

* The pronouns cannot immediately precede the Past Participle, *s'en allé* is NOT POSSIBLE. This remark is general to all reflexive forms.

IMPERFECT.
Je m'en allais,
I was going away.

PLUPERFECT.
Je m'en étais allé,
I had gone away.

PRETERITE.
Je m'en allai,
I went away.

PAST ANTERIOR.
Je m'en fus allé,
I had gone away.

FUTURE.
Je m'en *irai*,
I shall go away.

FUTURE PERFECT.
Je m'en serai allé,
I shall have gone away.

Conditional.

PRESENT.
Je m'en *irais*,
I should go away.

PAST.
Je m'en serais allé,
I should have gone away.

Imperative.

Va-t'en,	*go (thou) away.*
qu'il s'en aille,	*let him go away.*
allons-nous-en,	*let us go away.*
allez-vous-en,	*go (you) away.*
qu'ils s'en aillent,	*let them go away.*

Imperative Negatively.

Ne t'en va pas,
qu'il ne s'en aille pas,
Ne nous en allons pas,
Ne vous en allez pas,
qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas,
} *Don't go away, &c.*

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.
Que je m'en *aille.*
que tu t'en *ailles.*
qu'il s'en *aille.*
que nous nous en allions.
que vous vous en alliez.
qu'ils s'en *aillent.*

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.
Que je m'en sois allé.
que tu t'en sois allé.
qu'il s'en soit allé.
que nous nous en soyons allés.
que vous vous en soyez allés.
qu'ils s'en soient allés.

IMPERFECT.
Que je m'en allasse.

COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.
Que je m'en fusse allé.

357. Whenever *go* means *go away,* use this form. It is sometimes used before an Infinite instead of *je vais.* In many cases there is not much difference between *s'en aller* and *partir.*

358. *Envoyer,* to send, and *renvoyer,* to send back, are only irregular in the Future and Conditional, as noticed before, and make, *j'enverrai, je renverrai*; *j'enverrais, je renverrais.*

There are no other irregular verbs of the First Conjugation.

359. Do not use *and* after *aller* but simply the Inf. of following verb.

EXERCISE 71.

Va-t'en, Azor, tu me salis.—Monsieur Dubois est venu me voir hier; il est resté deux heures; j'ai cru qu'il n'allait jamais partir.—Il ne s'en serait pas allé à la fin s'il n'avait pas eu peur de manquer le train d'Asnières.—Cette comédie n'est pas amusante; allons-nous-en. — Monsieur Michaud vous a-t-il raconté l'aventure qui lui est arrivée dans la forêt de Fontainebleau?—Eh bien, je m'en vais vous la raconter, moi.—Quand m'enverrez-vous l'atlas que je vous ai commandé?—Je vous l'enverrai ce soir, sans faute.

Where are they going?—I am going to write.—They will not go away to-day.—When will you go away?—I will not go to the ironmonger's myself (*disj.*).—I shall send somebody.—You must go and see him.—They will dismiss all their servants.—I would send it back, but I cannot (*ne puis*) find it.—Go away immediately.—Let him go (*there, to it,* conj.) alone.—Don't go away yet, it is not late.—Excuse me (*Pardon*), I must go (*away*); my father is waiting for me.—I was just (*justement*) going to bed when your telegram arrived.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

360. *ACQUÉRIR*, to acquire.

PART. PRES. *Acquérant.*

IND. *Pres.* J'*acquiers*,
tu *acquiers*,
il *acquiert*,
nous acquérons,
vous acquérez,
ils *acquièrent*.

Imp. J'acquérais.

Pret. J'*acquis*,
tu *acquis*,
il *acquit*,
nous *acquîmes*,
vous *acquîtes*,
ils *acquirent*.

Fut. J'*acquerrai*.

PART. PAST, *Acquis*.

COND. *Pr.* J'*acquerrais*.

IMPER. Acquiers,
qu'il acquière,
acquérons,
acquérez,
qu'ils acquièrent.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que j'*acquière*,
que tu *acquières*,
qu'il *acquière*,
que nous acquérions,
que vous acquériez,
qu'ils *acquièrent*.

Imp. Que j'acquisse.

Conjugate in this manner:—

CONQUÉRIR, *to conquer*. This verb is seldom used but in the Infinitive Present, the Preterite, the imperfect of the Subjunctive, and compound tenses.

ENQUÉRIR (S'), *to inquire*. Seldom used but in the Infinitive and compound tenses.

361. *ASSAILLIR*, to assault.

PART. PRES. *Assaillant.*

IND. *Pres.* J'*assaille*,
tu *assailles*,
il *assaille*,
nous assaillons,
vous assaillez,
ils assaillent.

Imp. J'assaillais.

PART. PAST, Assailli.

Pret. J'assaillis,
tu assaillis,
il assaillit,
nous assaillîmes,
vous assaillîtes,
ils assaillirent.

Fut. J'assaillirai.

Cond. *Pr.*	J'assaillirais.	Subj. *Pr.*	Que j'assaille,
			que tu assailles,
Imper.	Assaille,		qu'il assaille,
	qu'il assaille,		que nous assaillions,
	assaillons,		que vous assailliez,
	assaillez,		qu'ils assaillent.
	qu'ils assaillent.	*Imp.*	Que j'assaillisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—tressaillir, *to start.*

362. Bénir, *to bless,* is conjugated like *finir.*

This verb, which is otherwise regular, has two past participles,—the one regular, *béni, bénie*; and the other irregular, *bénit, bénite,* used only when speaking of things consecrated by the prayers of the church; as, *Du pain bénit,* consecrated bread; *de l'eau bénite,* holy water.*

EXERCISE 72.

Il a bientôt perdu par sa mauvaise conduite, la position qu'il avait conquise par son intelligence et son travail assidu.—J'ai acquis la certitude que cet employé me vole.—" Quelques coups de feu partent; à ce bruit Napoléon tressaille; la campagne de Russie est ouverte " (Ségur).—" Bénie soit la mémoire de l'homme dont la probité scrupuleuse vous permit (*allowed*) de rentrer du même coup (*at the same time*) dans le domaine de vos pères " (Sandeau).

They have acquired a great reputation.—You will acquire public [2] esteem [1] by (*in*) doing it.—A conquered [2] country [1].—France acquired during this peace more than ten kings had acquired by their wars.—Why do you start in (*of*) that manner?—He soon squandered (*dissiper*) the fortune which he had so rapidly acquired at the gold mines.—The town was attacked (*assailed*) both by land and sea (*à la fois par mer et par terre*).

* *Bénit, bénite,* is really an adjective, and rarely occurs but in these two expressions; otherwise *béni*; as, *Le prêtre a béni les drapeaux,* The priest blessed the flags.

363. *BOUILLIR,* to boil.

PART. PRES. *Bouillant.*	PART. PAST, Bouilli.
IND. *Pres.* Je *bous,*	COND. *Pr.* Je bouillirais.
tu *bous,*	IMPER. Bous,
il *bout,*	qu'il bouille,
nous bouillons,	bouillons,
vous bouillez,	bouillez,
ils bouillent.	qu'ils bouillent.
Imp. Je bouillais.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je bouille.
Pret. Je bouillis.	*Imp.* Que je bouillisse.
Fut. Je bouillirai.	

364. This verb is seldom used except in the 3rd persons singular and plural. Still we say:—*Je bouillais de rage. Bouillir* is never transitive, say, *faire bouillir*; as, *Je fais bouillir de l'eau,* I boil some water; *nous faisons bouillir de la viande,* we boil some meat; the same may be said of its compound *rebouillir,* to boil again; as, *Faites rebouillir cette viande,* boil that meat again.

ÉBOUILLIR, *to boil away,* is used only in the Infinitive Present and Participle Past.

365. *COURIR,* to run.

PART. PRES. *Courant.*	PART. PAST, *Couru.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *cours,*	COND. *Pr.* Je *courrais.**
tu *cours,*	IMPER. Cours,
il *court,*	qu'il coure,
nous courons,	courons,
vous courez,	courez,
ils courent,	qu'ils courent.
Imp. Je courais.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je coure.
Pret. Je *courus.*	*Imp.* Que je courusse.
Fut. Je *courrai.**	

* The double *r* must be pronounced distinctly.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

accourir,	*to run to.*	encourir,	*to incur.*
concourir,	*to concur.*	parcourir,	*to run over.*
discourir,	*to discourse.*	secourir,	*to succour.*

EXERCISE 73.

"Cours, vole, et nous venge!" (for, *venge-nous,* **151***) (Corneille).—Il perd son temps à discourir.—Nous avons parcouru le parc en tous les sens.—Les pompiers étaient accourus à la première nouvelle du sinistre.—"Une onde qui bout dans une urne trop pleine" (Hugo).

The water does not boil.—Were you to run (*When you would run*) all the way to (*jusqu'à*) the station you would not arrive in (*at*) time.—Where are you running so fast?—You will incur his displeasure.—God has always blessed industry.—I was obliged (*falloir*) to run.—We have gone over all your country.—The (*an*) alarming news has been going about (*runs*) since yesterday among (*in*) the public.—Boil me two eggs (*à la coque*) [in the shell].

366. *CUEILLIR,* to gather.

Part. Pres.	*Cueillant.*	Part. Past,	Cueilli.
Ind. *Pres.*	Je *cueille,* tu *cueilles,* il *cueille,* nous cueillons, vous cueillez, ils cueillent.	Cond. *Pr.*	Je *cueillerais.*
		Imper.	Cueille, qu'il cueille, cueillons, cueillez, qu'ils cueillent.
Imp.	Je cueillais,	Subj. *Pr.*	Que je cueille.
Pret.	Je cueillis.	*Imp.*	Que je cueillisse.
Fut.	Je *cueillerai.*		

Conjugate in this manner :—

accueillir,	*to welcome, to receive.*	se recueillir,	*to muse, to collect one's thoughts,*
recueillir,	*to collect,*		

367. *DORMIR*, to sleep.

Part. Pres. *Dormant.*		Part. Past, Dormi.	
Ind. *Pres.*	Je *dors*,	Cond. *Pres.*	Je dormirais.
	tu *dors*,	Imper.	
	il *dort*,		Dors,
	nous dormons,		qu'il dorme,
	vous dormez,		dormons,
	ils dorment.		dormez,
Imp.	Je dormais.		qu'ils dorment.
Pret.	Je dormis.	Subj. *Pres.*	Que je dorme.
Fut.	Je dormirai.	*Imp.*	Que je dormisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

endormir,	*to lull asleep.*	se rendormir,	*to fall asleep again.*
s'endormir,	*to fall asleep.*		

368. The following and their compounds belong to the same group :—

partir,	*to depart, to start.*	démentir,	*to belie.*
sortir,	*to go out.*	servir,	*to serve, wait on.*
sentir,	*to feel, to smell.*	se servir (de),	*to use.*
pressentir,	*to forebode.*	se repentir (de),	*to repent.*
mentir,	*to lie, falsehood.*	consentir,	*to consent.*

They lose the last letter of the stem in the sing. of Present Ind. and 2nd sing. Imperative *Je pars, Pars* ; *Je sors, Sors* ; *Je sers, Sers* ; but the full stem in other parts :—*Que je parte ; que je serve.* Reflexives follow their own model, but place the pronouns as *se flatter.* Those which govern *de* take *en* as their conjunctive object, those governing *à* take *y*. Such verbs have their reflexive pronoun for direct object.

369. Faillir,* *to fail, to escape narrowly* (*almost*), a defective verb, only used in the following tenses :—

Part. Pres. *Faillant.* Part. Past, *Failli.*

Pret. *Je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit ;*
nous faillîmes, vous faillîtes, ils faillirent.

And all the compound tenses.

Il a failli en mourir, *He nearly died of it.*

* *Il faut*, is old ; *Le cœur me faut*, My heart fails me.

370. FÉRIR,* *to strike,* used only in : *Sans coup férir,* Without striking a blow.

371. FLEURIR, *to blossom,* is regular ; but when it means *to flourish,* it makes *florissant* in the Present Participle, and *florissait, florissaient,* in the Imperfect of the Indicative.

EXERCISE 74.

Je dors mal la nuit depuis quelque temps.—"Le fils de Stamply dort en Russie, depuis cinq ans, sous six pieds de neige" (Sandeau).—"Madame la marquise est servie."—On ne se sert plus guère de plumes d'oie de nos jours.—J'ai failli m'endormir pendant le discours de Monsieur X.—"J'ai failli attendre" (Louis XIV.).—Je pressens des malheurs.—Carthage était, à cette époque, une ville florissante.—Son père ne consentira jamais à ce mariage.—La proposition du ministère fut très mal accueillie de la Chambre.—On ne se repent jamais d'une bonne action.—Le moyen dont ils se sont servis n'est pas honnête.—Il se recueillit un instant avant de répondre.—"Qui (for *celui qui*) sert bien son pays n'a pas besoin d'aïeux" (Voltaire).—L'idée de vaincre sans coup férir souriait toujours à Valens (de Broglie).

They will receive you kindly.—You will not reap (*recueillir*) the fruit of your labour.—That book sends [one] to sleep.—I fell asleep again about (*vers*) the time (*hour*) at which I ought to have got up.—I should have fallen asleep but for (*sans*) my neighbour.—They took the town without striking a blow.—You have used my pen.—The Emperor has consented to (*à*) lay (*poser*) the foundation (*first*) stone of the new bridge.—We nearly missed the train.—I start by the eleven o'clock boat (no elision with *onze*).—His conduct belies his words (*parole*).

* Past Participle *féru* is sometimes used :—*Féru d'amour,* smitten, love sick ; *Un cheval féru,* a lame horse.

372. *FUIR*, to flee, to shun.

PART. PRES. *Fuyant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je fuis,
tu fuis,
il fuit,
nous fuyons,
vous fuyez,
ils *fuient.*

Imp. Je fuyais,
nous fuyions.

Pret. Je fuis,
tu fuis,
il fuit,
nous fuîmes,
vous fuîtes,
ils fuirent.

Fut. Je fuirai,

PART. PAST, Fui.

COND. *Pr.* Je fuirais.

IMPER. Fuis,
qu'il fuie,
fuyons,
fuyez,
qu'ils fuient.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *fuie*,
que tu *fuies*,
qu'il *fuie*,
que nous fuyions,
que vous fuyiez,
qu'ils *fuient.*

Imp. Que je fuisse,
qu'il fuît,

Conjugate in the same manner :—

S'enfuir, *to run away.*

373. Notice that the *en* is not separable as in *s'en aller.* This is important in the compound tenses: **Je m'en suis allé**; but, **Je me suis enfui.**

374. GÉSIR, *to lie,* has only the following tenses and persons :—

PART. Pres. *Gisant.*

IND. Pres. *Il gît, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent.*

Imp. *Je gisais, tu gisais, il gisait,* &c.

Ci-gît (here lies) is used in epitaphs.
The Inf. *gésir* is quite obsolete.

375. *HAÏR*, to hate.

PART. PRES. Haïssant.

IND. *Pres.* Je *hais*,
tu *hais*,
il *hait*,
nous haïssons,
vous haïssez,
ils haïssent.

Imp. Je haïssais.

Pret. Je haïs,
tu haïs,
il haït,
nous *haïmes*,
vous *haïtes*,
ils haïrent.

Fut. Je haïrai.

PART. PAST, Haï.

COND. *Pr.* Je haïrais.

IMPER. *Hais*,
qu'il haïsse,
haïssons,
haïssez,
qu'ils haïssent.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je haïsse.

Imp. Que je haïsse,
qu'il *haït*.

376. This verb is irregular only in the pronunciation of the sing. Pres. Ind. and 2nd sing. Imperative, which is shown by the absence of the diæresis; as the latter is necessary to show the separate vowel of the ending in other tenses, it replaces the circumflex where the latter usually occurs.

377. *MOURIR*, to die (ÊTRE).

PART. PRES. *Mourant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je *meurs*,
tu *meurs*,
il *meurt*,
nous mourons,
vous mourez,
ils *meurent*.

Imp. Je mourais.

Pret. Je *mourus*.

Fut. Je *mourrai*.

COND. *Pr.* Je *mourrais*.

PART. PAST, Mort.

IMPER. Meurs,
qu'il meure,
mourons,
mourez,
qu'ils meurent.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *meure*,
que tu *meures*,
qu'il *meure*,
que nous mourions,
que vous mouriez,
qu'ils *meurent*.

Imp. Que je mourusse.

The double *r* of the Future and Conditional must be pronounced distinctly, as in *Je courrai.*

378. Se mourir, *to be in a dying state,* is seldom used but in the present and imperfect of the Indicative.

Je me meurs, *I am dying, I feel as if I were dying,* or *fainting,* is often met with.

379. Oüir, *to hear.* Mostly used in its compound tenses with another verb in the Infinitive; however we say: Part. past, *oüi.* Ind. pret. *j'oüis, tu oüis,* &c. Subj. imperf. *que j'oüisse, que tu oüisses, qu'il oüit,* &c.

It is most commonly found with dire, *J'ai oüi dire,* I have heard (say).

It is rapidly becoming obsolete.

EXERCISE 75.

"Que vouliez-vous qu'il fît contre trois?" (*What would you have had him do— ?*). — "Qu'il mourût!" (Corneille).—Il faut "ne rien haïr, mon enfant, tout aimer, ou tout plaindre" (Hugo). — Les ennemis s'enfuirent abandonnant armes et bagage.— Qui oüit dire jamais pareille chose?—"Allez, vous devriez mourir de pure honte!" (Molière).—"Va, je ne te hais point" (Corneille).—"Fuyons! comme on dit dans les tragédies" (Pailleron).—Marie-Antoinette est morte en reine.

They take to flight, while their general lies wounded and dying on the field of battle.—If you possess virtues, you will not die altogether (*tout entier*).—I was afraid he (*ne*) would die (*Imp. Subj.*) of his wounds.—I have heard that he is dying of (the) fever.—Let us die (like brave men) [*en braves*].—Let us hate no one.—You hate me! and yet (*pourtant*) I knew and loved your father.—Frederick had fled while his general was gaining a brilliant (*éclatant*) victory.—My two sons have died on (*at*) the field of honour.

380. *OUVRIR*, to open.

PART. PRES. *Ouvrant.*	PART. PAST, **Ouvert.**
IND. *Pres.* J'*ouvre*,	COND. *Pr.* J'ouvrirais.
tu *ouvres*,	
il *ouvre*,	IMPER. Ouvre,
nous ouvrons,	qu'il ouvre,
vous ouvrez,	ouvrons,
ils ouvrent.	ouvrez,
Imp. J'ouvrais.	qu'ils ouvrent.
Pret. J'ouvris.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que j'ouvre.
Fut. J'ouvrirai.	*Imp.* Que j'ouvrisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

couvrir,	*to cover.*	recouvrir,	*to cover again.*
découvrir,	*to discover.*	rouvrir,	*to open again.*
offrir,	*to offer.*	souffrir,	*to suffer.*

Notice particularly the Past Participle of these verbs: **couvert, découvert, offert, souffert.**

381. Do not confound **recouvrir,** *to re-cover, to cover up,* with **recouvrer,** *to recover, get back.*

382. QUÉRIR, *to fetch*; only used in the Infinitive present with the verbs *aller, envoyer, venir.*

It is becoming rare. **Aller chercher** or **faire venir,** translate *to fetch.*

383. SAILLIR, *to project,* has the following tenses and persons :—

PART. PRES. *Saillant.*	PART. PAST, *Sailli.*
IND. Pres. *Il saille, ils saillent.*	Fut. *Il saillera, ils sailleront.*
Imp. *Il saillait, ils saillaient.*	COND. Pr. *Il sailleraît, ils sailleraient.*

384. In the sense of *to gush forth,* SAILLIR is regular, but not much used, JAILLIR is more common.

EXERCISE 76.

"As-tu souffert, as-tu pleuré?" (Mignon).—"Elvire (proper name) que je souffre et que je suis à plaindre!" (Corneille).—Tout le monde sait (*knows*) que c'est Christophe Colomb qui a découvert l'Amérique.—On m'a offert une place à Marseille mais je ne désire pas quitter Paris.—Il n'ouvre jamais la bouche sans dire quelque sottise.—Il a recouvré la santé dans le midi de la France.—Je vais faire (*get*) recouvrir mon vieux parapluie.—Je regrette que vous souffriez tant.—La poudre à canon fut découverte, dit-on, par les Chinois.—Le serin alla se percher sur un angle saillant de la corniche.—Le fer semble jaillir de cette main maudite (de Bornier).

He was opening his (*the*) mouth to (*for*) speak, when he was interrupted by the cries of the crowd.—This balcony will project more than the others.—I shall shut this door; do not open it again as long as (*tant que*) the window remains (*Fut.*) open.—It is the celebrated astronomer Herschel who discovered the planet Uranus.—He had some fine fruit (*plur.*), but he did not offer me any.—The beach was covered with foam, such was the violence of the wind.—That old lady has recovered her sight in an unhoped-for manner.—The servant (*f.*) has gone to fetch some cream.

385. *TENIR*, to keep, to hold.

PART. PRES. *Tenant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je *tiens*,
tu *tiens*,
il *tient*,
nous tenons,
vous tenez,
ils *tiennent*.

PART. PAST, *Tenu.*

Imp. Je tenais.
Pret. Je *tins*,
tu *tins*,
il *tint*,
nous *tînmes*,
vous *tîntes*,
ils *tinrent*.

Fut. Je *tiendrai*,
tu *tiendras*,
il *tiendra*,
nous *tiendrons*,
vous *tiendrez*,
ils *tiendront*.

COND. *Pr.* Je *tiendrais*.

IMPER. Tiens,*
qu'il tienne,
tenons,
tenez,*
qu'ils tiennent.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *tienne*,
que tu *tiennes*,
qu'il *tienne*,
que nous tenions,
que vous teniez,
qu'ils *tiennent*.

Imp. Que je tinsse,
que tu tinsses,
qu'il tînt,
que nous tinssions,
que vous tinssiez,
qu'ils tinssent.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

s'abstenir (de),	*to abstain.*	obtenir,	*to obtain.*
appartenir,	*to belong.*	retenir,	*to detain, to remember.*
contenir,	*to contain.*	soutenir,	*to sustain.*
détenir,	*to keep.*	se tenir,	*to remain.*
entretenir,	*to keep up.*	se tenir debout,	*to stand.*
s'entretenir,	*to converse.*	se tenir tranquille,	*to be quiet.*
maintenir,	*to maintain.*		

386. NOTE.—**Tenir à**, *to value, set store by, to wish.* Je tiens à ce tableau, *I value that picture.* Tenez-vous à sortir ? *Do you wish to go out ?* Oui, j'y tiens beaucoup, *Yes, I wish it very much.*

387. *VENIR*, to come (ÊTRE).

PART. PRES. *Venant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je *viens*,
tu *viens*,
il *vient*,
nous venons,
vous venez,
ils *viennent*.

Imp. Je venais.

PART. PAST, *Venu.*

Pret. Je *vins*,
tu *vins*,
il *vint*,
nous *vînmes*,
vous *vîntes*,
ils *vinrent*.

Fut. Je *viendrai*.

* *Tiens*, *tenez*, are often exclamations, as—"*Tiens, un jour il disait à Barbanpré* . . . . " Why, by the way, he said one day to B—— (Sandeau).

Cond. *Pr.*	Je *viendrais.*	Subj. *Pr.*	Que je *vienne,* que tu *viennes,* qu'il *vienne,* que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils *viennent.*
Imper.	Viens, qu'il vienne, venons, venez, qu'ils viennent.	*Imp.*	Que je vinsse.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

convenir,	*to agree, to suit.*	prévenir,	*to anticipate, to prevent.*
devenir,	*to become.*	se ressouvenir (de),	*to recollect.*
disconvenir,	*to deny.*	revenir,	*to come back.*
intervenir,	*to interfere.*	se souvenir (de),	*to remember.*
parvenir (à),	*to attain.*	subvenir (à),	*to relieve.*

388. It will be noticed that *venir* is conjugated in the same manner as *tenir*, but takes être, as do its compounds, except *prévenir* and *subvenir*, which take *avoir*.

Convenir, to agree, takes *être*; *Convenir*, to suit, *avoir*.

389. Notice the important idiom, **venir de**, *to have just*. Je viens de le voir, *I have just seen him.* Il venait de mourir, *He had just died.* Rare in other tenses. Also, **Il vint à**, *He happened to.*

EXERCISE 77.

Je tenais beaucoup à ce vase japonais que la bonne vient de me casser.—L'empereur tenait un papier à la (*his*) main. — Mes enfants, tenez-vous tranquilles. — Il n'obtiendra jamais le consentement de son père.—Vous devriez vous abstenir de boire du vin pendant quelque temps.—Ce pauvre vieillard est devenu sourd.—Nous sommes convenus du prix de l'hôtel que je vais lui acheter.—Il (*It*) ne m'a pas convenu de payer le tout argent comptant.—"Qui est le grand homme qui a dit cela?—Je ne me souviens pas maintenant de son nom.—

Souviens-toi de m'écrire ces mots" (Molière). — Je soutiens que ce sonnet est fort bon.—Vous ne parviendrez jamais à me convaincre.—"Du lieu qui me retient veux-tu (*would you like?*) voir le tableau?" (Boileau).—Nous nous sommes abstenus de blâmer sa conduite.—Je me tiendrai sur mes gardes. — Il faut que vous reveniez bientôt.—Nous venions de nous lever quand votre dépêche est arrivée.

Abstain from censure (*de blâmer*).—We remained [a] long time on our guard (*pl.*).—I have just met your friend.—He has not come.—I tell you he comes from America.—Whence do they come?—You came too late.—I shall remember your promise.—He will never attain his object.—I wished (*Imp.*) [very] much to see him.—I do not detain you (=you may withdraw).—We will obtain from the consul the papers you need.—When does the prince intend to return?—He will return for the opening of the chase.—I am sorry you (cannot) (*do not*) succeed in (*at*) overcoming that obstacle.—The workmen had just left the works when the boiler burst.—Have you not just received a box of oranges from Algeria?—Yes, it has just arrived.

390. *VÊTIR*, to clothe.

PART. PRES. *Vêtant.*	PART. PAST, *Vêtu.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *vêts*,	COND. *Pr.* Je vêtirais.
tu *vêts*,	IMPER. Vêts,
il *vêt*,	qu'il vête,
nous vêtons,	vêtons,
vous vêtez,	vêtez,
ils vêtent.	qu'ils vêtent.
Imp. Je vêtais.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je vête.
Pret. Je vêtis.	*Imp.* Que je vêtisse.
Fut. Je vêtirai.	

Conjugate in the same manner :—

dévêtir, *to divest, to strip.* | revêtir, *to clothe, to invest.*

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

391. *S'ASSEOIR,* to sit down.

PART. PRES. *S'asseyant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je m'*assieds,*
tu t'*assieds,*
il s'*assied,*
nous nous asseyons.
vous vous asseyez,
ils s'asseyent.

Imp. Je m'asseyais.

Pret. Je m'*assis,*
tu t'*assis,*
il s'*assit,*
nous nous *assîmes,*
vous vous *assîtes,*
ils s'*assirent.*

Fut. Je m'*assiérai,*
tu t'*assiéras,*
il s'*assiéra,*
nous nous *assiérons,*
vous vous *assiérez,*
ils s'*assiéront.*

PART. PAST, *Assis.*

COND. *Pr.* Je m'*assiérais.*

IMPER. Assieds-toi,
qu'il s'asseye,
asseyons-nous,
asseyez-vous,
qu'ils s'asseyent.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je m'*asseye,*
que tu t'*asseyes,*
qu'il s'*asseye,*
que nous nous asseyions,
que vous vous asseyiez,
qu'ils s'*asseyent.*

Imp. Que je m'assisse,
que tu t'assisses,
qu'il s'assît,
que nous nous assissions,
que vous vous assissiez,
qu'ils s'assissent.

This verb is also conjugated :—

S'assoyant.
Je m'assois.
Nous nous assoyons.

Je m'assoyais.
Je m'assoirai.
Que je m'assoie.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Rasseoir, *to set again, to sit down again, to calm.*
Se rasseoir, *to sit down again.*

392. S'ASSEOIR is not an essentially reflexive verb; we have ASSEOIR, transitive, *to settle, to place, to establish.*

393. Notice **être assis,** *to sit, to be seated.* **Je suis assis,** *I am sitting (seated).* **Elle était assise,** *she was sitting.*

394. Choir,* *to fall,* defective. Part. Past, *chu,* m.; *chue,* f.

Déchoir, *to fall off,* defective. Part. Past, *déchu (fallen, decayed).*

Échoir, *to fall to; to be due;* defective.

Part. Pres. *échéant.* Part. Past, *échu.*
Ind. Pres. *il échoit.* Pret. *il échut.* Fut. *il écherra.*
Cond. *il écherrait.* Imp. Subj. *qu'il échût.*

395. *MOUVOIR,* to move.

Part. Pres. Mouvant.
Ind. Pres. Je *meus,*
tu *meus,*
il *meut,*
nous mouvons,
vous mouvez,
ils *meuvent.*
Imp. Je mouvais.
Pret. Je *mus.*
Fut. Je mouvrai.

Part. Past, *Mû,* m., *mue,* f.
Cond. *Pr.* Je mouvrais.
Imper. Meus,
qu'il meuve,
mouvons,
mouvez,
qu'ils meuvent.
Subj. *Pr.* Que je *meuve.*
Imp. Que je musse.

The Infinite and Participles are the only parts much used. The common sense of *to move* is **remuer, bouger**; *to remove from a house,* **déménager**; *to move in,* **emménager.**

Conjugate in the same manner:—

émouvoir, { *to stir up, to move the emotions.*
ému, *moved, touched.*

promouvoir, *to promote.*
promu, *promoted.*

* Fut. *Il cherra* is sometimes met with.

396. Pleuvoir, *to rain*, a unipersonal verb.

Part. Pres. *Pleuvant.*	Part. Past, *Plu.*
Ind. Pres. *Il pleut.*	Cond. Pr. *Il pleuvrait.*
Imp. *Il pleuvait.*	
Pret. *Il plut.*	Subj. Pr. *Qu'il pleuve.*
Fut. *Il pleuvra.*	Imp. *Quil plût.*

Compound tenses, *Il a plu*, &c.

EXERCISE 78.

Tous les assistants étaient profondément émus.—Mon cousin sera promu au rang de colonel à son retour de Madagascar.—"Il pleut, il pleut, bergère, rentrez vos blancs moutons" (adj. of colour first, poetic).—"La cigale, ayant chanté tout l'été, se trouva fort dépourvue* quand la bise fut venue" (La Fontaine).—Nous vîmes (*saw*) arriver plusieurs chevaliers revêtus de la croix.—Cet enfant n'est pas assez chaudement vêtu pour la saison.—On dit que Saint Louis rendait souvent la justice, assis sous un chêne au bois de Vincennes.—Ne vous asseyez pas sur l'herbe, elle est humide de (*with*) rosée.—Il ne faut pas que vous vous y asseyiez.—Je vous aiderai, le cas échéant (*if need should arise*).—Cette traite échoit demain.

I shall not sit down.—Let us sit down under this tree.—You will find your aunt sitting (*seated*) in (*under*) the arbour at the end (*au fond*) of the garden.—Why do you not sit down?—Our bill (is due) (*Pres.*) to-day.—His speech has moved all his audience.—He will be promoted next[2] month.[1]—I think it will rain this morning.—We are going to remove in the month of October.—It rained (*has rained*) all yesterday.—It had been raining (*rained*) all night.—At first (*Dans les premiers temps*) our troops were destitute* of all.—A man, rather (*assez*) ill clad, presented himself before me.

* Dépourvu, *destitute*, unprovided for (397).

397. *POURVOIR*, to provide (FOR).

PART. PRES. *Pourvoyant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je pourvois,
tu pourvois,
il pourvoit,
nous pourvoyons,
vous pourvoyez,
ils *pourvoient.*

Imp. Je pourvoyais.

Pret. Je pourvus.

Fut. Je *pourvoirai.*

PART. PAST, Pourvu.

COND. *Pr.* Je *pourvoirais.*

IMPER. Pourvois,
qu'il pourvoie,
pourvoyons,
pourvoyez,
qu'ils pourvoient.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *pourvoie.*

Imp. Que je pourvusse.

398. *POUVOIR*, to be able.

PART. PRES. Pouvant.

IND. *Pres.* Je *puis, or* je *peux,*
tu *peux,*
il *peut,*
nous pouvons,
vous pouvez,
ils *peuvent.*

Imp. Je pouvais.

Pret. Je *pus.*

Fut. Je *pourrai.*

PART. PAST, *Pu* (inv.).

COND. *Pr.* Je *pourrais.*

No IMPERATIVE.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *puisse,*
que tu *puisses,*
qu'il *puisse,*
q. nous puissions,
que vous puissiez,
qu'ils *puissent.*

Imp. Que je pusse.

REMARK.—The *rr* of Fut. and Cond. not so strongly sounded as in *mourrai* and *courrai.*

399. In the Interrogative form, **Puis-je?** only is used, and in the Negative, **Je ne puis** is more elegant than **Je ne peux pas.** PAS is often omitted after this verb; as, **Je ne puis comprendre,** *I cannot understand.*

400. NOTICE that *Pouvoir* translates both CAN and MAY; as, **Puis-je ?** *May I ?*—It offers the same difficulties of tense use as *devoir* **(263-4).**

J'ai pu,	*I have been able*; I COULD.
N'avez-vous (pas) pu ?	*Could you not ?*
Vous pourriez m'aider,	*You might help me.*
Il aurait pu le faire,	*He might* HAVE DONE *it.*
N'auriez-vous pas pu vous y appliquer ?	*Could you not* HAVE APPLIED *yourself to it ?*

401. NOTICE the reflexive idiom,

Il se peut qu'il vienne (*Sub.*)	*He* MAY *come.*
Cela se peut-il ?	*Can that be ?*
Cela ne se peut pas,	*That cannot be* (*done*).

402. RAVOIR, *to have again, to get back,* is only used in the Infinitive.

EXERCISE 79.

"Je crois (*think*) qu'il est bon de pourvoir Henriette, de choisir un mari" (Molière).—Nous n'avons besoin de rien ; nous sommes pourvus de tout.—"Est-il (*Is there*) un esprit plus bourgeois, et se peut-il de ce même sang que je sois ?" (Molière).—Le malheureux comprit (*understood*) bientôt qu'on l'avait dupé ; il chercha à ravoir son argent mais c'était trop tard.—Je trouve votre abandon cruel ; vous auriez pu rester auprès de nous. Il ne pourra jamais arriver à temps.—Pourrai-je vous demander un service ?—Il est mort sans avoir pu prononcer une parole.—Ne pouvant endurer plus longtemps cette cruelle incertitude, je suis sortie pour demander des nouvelles de mon fils.—Ah ! Monsieur, pouvez-vous me dire ce qu'il est devenu ?—Madame, je regrette de ne pouvoir vous renseigner.—Il n'a jamais pu parvenir à la fortune.—Je ne pense pas qu'il puisse le faire seul.

I left my greatcoat in (*at*) the dressing-room, and I could not get it back at the end of the evening.—The thief ran away without the policeman being able to stop him (*without that, and Sub.*).—Could you not have pursued him?—I should not have been able to catch him.—My brother might have lent me a little money.—He might give you the means of settling in the Colonies. — These crimes cannot (*Fut.*) remain unknown.—We could (*Cond.*) not abandon you in this condition.—I cannot tell you what it is.—He cannot come.—He *may* return to-morrow.—Can I help you?—Can we do anything (*quelque chose*) to help you?

403. *SAVOIR*, to know.

PART. PRES. Sachant.	PART. PAST, *Su.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *sais*, tu *sais*, il *sait*, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.	IMPER. Sache, qu'il sache, sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.
Imp. Je savais.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *sache*, que tu *saches*, qu'il *sache*, que nous sachions, que vous sachiez, qu'ils *sachent*.
Pret. Je *sus*.	*Imp.* Que je susse.
Fut. Je saurai.	
COND. *Pr.* Je saurais.	

404. *Je ne saurais* is often used for *je ne puis* (I cannot): as, *Je ne saurais lui dire*, I cannot tell him.

405. SAVOIR is *to know mentally, to have learned, to know a fact*, NOT a *person* or a *town*.

406. NOTICE **Pas que je sache**, *Not that I know of*;

and, **Je ne sache pas que** (with Sub.), *I am not aware that . . .* ; also, **Vous saurez,** *You must know = Let me inform (tell) you.*

407. SEOIR, *to become, to befit.* PART. Pres. *Seyant.*

IND. Pres. *Il sied, ils siéent.*	COND. *Il siérait, ils siéraient.*
Imp. *Il seyait, ils seyaient.*	SUBJ. Pr. *Qu'il siée, qu'ils siéent.*
Fut. *Il siéra, ils siéront.*	No compound tenses.

408. SEOIR, *to be situated.*

PART. Pres. *Séant.* PART. Past, *Sis, sise.*

EXERCISE 80.

Je sais ce que vous allez dire.—Ne saviez-vous pas que la loi était votée?—Vous ne sauriez croire quelle peine j'ai eue!—"Ainsi, Madame, malgré vos promesses. . . . .—Mes promesses! Je ne sache pas, Monsieur, que je sois jamais descendue jusqu'à vous en faire" (Sandeau).—Quoique vous sachiez bien des choses, vous ne savez pas cela.—Vous saurez que je suis Français et gentilhomme.—A vendre, une maison sise au numéro quatorze de la rue de Moscou.—"Quoi! vous iriez dire à la vieille Emilie, qu'à son âge il sied mal de faire (*pretend to be*) la jolie?" (Molière).

They do not know (*the*) French.—I have been told (*known*) downstairs (*là-bas*) that, to make (*for*) a few purchases, Eliante has gone out (Molière).—I cannot consent to what you propose to me.—That pupil did not know his lesson to-day.—Nothing can give an idea of the beauty of that landscape.—It becomes you less than (*to*) anyone (*personne*) to (*de*) speak thus.—Know that if we are attacked (*active*) we shall know [how] to defend ourselves.

409. *VALOIR,* **to be worth; to be as good as.**

PART. PRES. Valant.	PART. PAST, Valu.
IND. *Pres.* Je *vaux*,	IMPER. Vaux.
tu *vaux*,	qu'il vaille,
il *vaut*,	valons,
nous valons,	valez,
vous valez,	qu'ils vaillent.
ils valent.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *vaille*,
Imp. Je valais.	que tu *vailles*,
Pret. Je valus.	qu'il *vaille*,
Fut. Je **vaudrai.**	que nous valions,
COND. *Pr.* Je **vaudrais.**	que vous valiez,
	qu'ils *vaillent.*
	Imp. Que je valusse.

NOTE, **Il vaut mieux,** *It is better to . . .*
Il vaudrait mieux, *It would be better.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

équivaloir, *to be equivalent.* | revaloir, *to return like for like.*

410. *Prévaloir,* to prevail, makes in the Subjunctive present, *que je prévale, que tu prévales, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent.*

411. *VOIR,* **to see.**

PART. *Pres. Voyant.*	PART. PAST, Vu.
IND. *Pres.* Je vois,	*Imp.* Je voyais.
tu vois,	*Pret.* Je *vis.*
il voit,	*Fut.* Je **verrai.**
nous voyons,	COND. *Pr.* Je **verrais.**
vous voyez,	
ils *voient.*	

IMPER.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *voie*,
Vois,	que tu *voies*,
qu'il voie,	qu'il *voie*,
voyons,*	que nous voyions,
voyez,	que vous voyiez,
qu'ils voient.	qu'ils *voient*.
	Imp. Que je visse.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

entrevoir, *to have a glimpse.* | revoir, *to see again.*

412. *Prévoir,* to foresee, makes in the Future, *je prévoirai, tu prévoiras,* &c.; and in the Conditional, *je prévoirais, tu prévoirais,* &c.

413. *Surseoir,* to put off (a law expression), makes in the Future, *je surseoirai*; and in the Conditional, *je surseoirais.* *Un sursis,* a delay, a respite.

EXERCISE 81.

Ce violon ne vaut pas le prix élevé qu'on en demande. —"Voyons, voyons, j'ai eu tort . . . n'y pense plus, et embrasse-moi" (Sandeau).—Louis et Henri valent mieux que leur frère aîné.—Ce vin vaut aujourd'hui trois francs la bouteille; il en vaudra davantage au bout de quelques années.—Il nous aurait mieux valu mourir au champ d'honneur que de vivre dans la misère et la honte.—"Venez dans mon palais; vous y verrez ma gloire" (Racine).—Ce bel exemplaire des poésies d'Alfred de Musset vaudrait le double s'il ne lui manquait quelques pages.—J'ai entrevu le Prince de Galles aux courses.—"Seigneur, voyez l'état où vous me réduisez (*reduce*)" (Racine).

My new watch is not so good as the old one (*ancien*). —I broke it in falling from [my] bicycle.—It would be

* *Voyons* is often used as an exclamation, *come now!*

better to go home, the sky is clouding over (*covers itself*); it is going to rain.—Sell that wine at once, it will be worth nothing next year.—She is not so clever as her sister (use *valoir*).—It is too far to go on (*at*) foot, we had better take a cab.—We would have done [2] better [1] to take the train.—I had a glimpse of you at church yesterday.—We will see what we can (*Fut.*) do.—I must see you next week.—What I foresaw (*had foreseen*) happened.

414. *VOULOIR*, to be willing.

PART. PRES. Voulant.	PART. PAST, Voulu.
IND. *Pres.* Je *veux*,	IMPER.*
tu *veux*,	*Veuillez*, be so good as, be so kind as to.
il *veut*,	
nous voulons,	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *veuille*,
vous voulez,	que tu *veuilles*,
ils *veulent*.	qu'il *veuille*,
Imp. Je voulais.	que nous voulions,
Pret. Je voulus.	que vous vouliez,
Fut. Je voudrai.	qu'ils *veuillent*.
COND. *Pr.* Je voudrais.	*Imp.* Que je voulusse, qu'il voulût.

415. VOULOIR is one of the most important and frequently used verbs in the language. Its principal English equivalents are:—*to wish, to want, to try, will, shall.*

Notice that it governs the Subjunctive or the Infinitive.

Il veut entrer,	He wants (wishes) to enter.
Que voulez-vous ?	What do you want?
J'ai voulu le sauver,	I tried to save him.

* A regular form, *Veux, Voulons, Voulez*, is occasionally used to express determination, earnestness.

Voulez-vous m'aider?	Will you (are you willing to) help me?
Voulez-vous que nous y allions?	Shall we go (there)?
Je veux que vous le fassiez,	You SHALL do it.
Voulez-vous que je quitte la chambre?	Shall I (do you wish me to) leave the room?
Que voulez-vous que je vous dise?	What shall (can) I say?

416. Turn the accusative Infinitive construction into the Subjunctive.

I want him to remember it,	**Je veux qu'il s'en souvienne.**
He wanted (wished) her to go with him,	**Il voulait qu'elle y allât avec lui.**

417. If *wish* means *would like,* then the Conditional, *Present* or *Past.*

I wish you would listen,	**Je voudrais que vous m'écoutiez** (écoutassiez).
I wish he had done it,	**J'aurais voulu qu'il le fît.**

418. With the same subject use Infinitive.

Je voudrais être riche,	I wish I were rich.
Vous auriez voulu vous en aller,	You wanted (would have liked) to go away.
Je vous en veux,	I bear you a grudge, I am angry with you.

In this last sentence, *en* evidently refers to *mal,* understood, and indeed this word is often expressed; e.g., *Bitterlin détestait les Bourbons et leur voulait tout le mal imaginable* (E. About).

419. Note also **vouloir dire**, *to mean* (Indicative)

Que voulez-vous dire ?	What do you mean ?
Je veux dire qu'il est parti,	I mean that he has gone.
Que veut dire ce mot ?	What does that word mean ?

Also,

Je ne veux pas,	I don't choose ; I won't.

and,

Je veux bien,	I am quite willing.

EXERCISE 82.

Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de me dire l'heure juste ; ma montre s'est arrêtée.—"Je veux qu'elle sorte."—Veuillez m'expliquer ce problème.—Je ne pense pas qu'il veuille partir sitôt. — Napoléon ne voulait pas quitter le Kremlin.—"Que veut cette horde d'esclaves?" (R. de l'Isle).—"Les Napolitains ont voulu comme se battre aujourd'hui" (Courier).—J'aurais voulu vous voir à ma place.—Pourquoi votre cousine m'en veut-elle ?—Il est impossible qu'elle vous en veuille d'un simple malentendu.—Si nous refusons l'invitation de Madame Réville elle nous en voudra terriblement.—Que veut dire ce bruit que j'entends dans la cour ?—C'est une personne qui veut absolument vous parler.—Il est extraordinaire qu'on tienne tant à pénétrer chez moi, que je le veuille ou non.—Enfin je voudrais bien savoir qui c'est.—"Je voudrais, m'en coûtât-il grand'chose (*even if it cost me dear*) pour la beauté du fait (*thing*) avoir perdu ma cause" (Molière). — Expliquez-nous, s'il vous plaît, ce que veut dire ce vers de V. Hugo.

You must not be angry with me (use, *il faut* and the *Inf.*).—He will not answer me.—I wish he would return to-morrow (*Cond.* and *Imp. Sub.*).—Get up, I do not wish you to go to sleep again.—Mamma did not wish John to go out again to-night (this evening).—I should like to have seen Nansen when he was (*Imp.*) in (*at*) Edinburgh.—He says (*dit*) he does not know (*sait*) what you mean.—We should like to take the first

train [in] the morning.—The rule is very difficult, please explain it to us.—His friend tried to help him, but he wanted to work alone.—They wanted (*Past Cond.*) to go on to (*pousser jusqu'en*) Italy, but time failed them (*leur a manqué*).—Shall we go and sit down on that seat near (*auprès de*) the pond?—Certainly (*I am quite willing*).—He cannot have meant to pain you (*It is impossible that he has wished to make you some pain*).—I wish (*Cond.*) he would go away (*Imp. Subj.*).—I wish I could go away.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

420. *ABSOUDRE*, to absolve.

PART. PRES. *Absolvant.*	PART. PAST, *Absous*, m. *absoute*, f.
IND. *Pres.* J'*absous*, tu *absous*, il *absout*, nous absolvons, vous absolvez, ils absolvent.	*Fut.* J'absoudrai.
Imp. J'absolvais.	COND. *Pr.* J'absoudrais.
No *Preterite.*	IMPER. Absous, qu'il absolve, absolvons, absolvez, qu'ils absolvent.
	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que j'absolve.
	No *Imperfect.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

Dissoudre, *to dissolve.* Past Part. *Dissous, dissoute.*

421. Résoudre, *to resolve, to solve*, has two Past Participles, *résous*, changed into; and *résolu*, resolved, solved. It has also a Preterite and Imperfect Subjunctive, *Je résolus, &c.*; *que je résolusse, &c.*

422. ACCROIRE, *to believe*, only used in the Infinitive, in *faire accroire*, to impose upon, to try to make a person believe a falsehood.

423. ATTRAIRE, *to attract*, only used in the Infinitive. **Attrayant**, attractive, is now an adjective.

424. *BOIRE*, to drink.

Part. Pres. *Buvant.*	Part. Past, *Bu.*
Ind. *Pres.* Je bois,	Imper. Bois,
tu bois,	qu'il boive,
il boit,	buvons,
nous buvons,	buvez,
vous buvez,	qu'ils boivent.
ils *boivent.*	Subj. *Pr.* Que je *boive,*
Imp. Je buvais.	que tu *boives,*
Pret. Je *bus.*	qu'il *boive,*
Fut. Je boirai.	que nous buvions,
Cond. *Pr.* Je boirais.	que vous buviez,
	qu'ils *boivent.*
	Imp. Que je busse.

425. Braire, *to bray.*

Ind. Pres.	*Il brait,*	*ils braient.*
Fut.	*Il braira,*	*ils brairont.*
Cond.	*Il brairait,*	*ils brairaient.*

426. Bruire, *to rustle, to murmur.*

Ind. Pres. *Il bruit.* Imp. *Il bruyait, ils bruyaient.*

Remark. — Although these are the only forms admitted by the Académie, good authors use another form, *Les torrents bruissent, Pas un insecte qui bruisse.* This harmonises with the noun *un bruissement,* a rustling, a murmur ; *un bruit,* is a noise, *bruyant,* noisy.

427. Clore, *to close.* Part. Past, *Clos.*

Ind. Pres.	*Je clos, tu clos, il clôt.*
Fut.	*Je clorai, tu cloras, &c.*
Cond.	*Je clorais, tu clorais, &c.*

EXERCISE 83.

Cléopâtre, reine d'Egypte, fit dissoudre * une belle perle dans du vinaigre et l'avala.—Buvez cette tisane, elle vous fera (*will do*) du bien.—Quant aux funestes effets de son ambition, rien ne saurait absoudre Napoléon aux yeux de la postérité.—"La ville bruissait à ses pieds" (Lamartine).—Il est temps de clore ce débat.—Je ne bois jamais entre mes repas. C'est une femme résolue.—Vous ne résoudrez jamais ce problème.—Ils résolurent de mourir ensemble.

God often[2] absolves[1] those whom men condemn.—He has been absolved.—These men drink too much.—In Belgium we only drank beer.—You must drink milk every morning.—This room is draughty (*is not well closed*).—Those children are too noisy.—The rivulets murmured in the mountains.—[He] who has drunk, will drink (Prov.).—I have resolved to set out this evening.—We resolved to offer him some mark (*quelque témoignage*) of our gratitude.

428. *CONCLURE*, to conclude.

PART. PRES. *Concluant.*	PART. PAST, *Conclu*, m. *conclue*, f.
IND. *Pres.* Je conclus,	COND. *Pr.* Je conclurais.
tu conclus,	IMPER.
il conclut,	Conclus,
nous concluons,	qu'il conclue,
vous concluez,	concluons,
ils concluent.	concluez,
Imp. Je concluais.†	qu'ils concluent.
Pret. Je *conclus.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je conclue.†
Fut. Je conclurai.	*Imp.* Que je conclusse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—Exclure, *to exclude.*

* As *faire bouillir* (364).

† *Concluïons, concluïez*, take diæresis (348).

429. *CONDUIRE*, to conduct.

Part. Pres. *Conduisant.*	Part. Past, *Conduit.*
Ind. *Pres.* Je conduis, tu conduis, il conduit, nous conduisons, vous conduisez, ils conduisent.	Cond. *Pr.* Je conduirais.
	Imper. Conduis, qu'il conduise, conduisons, conduisez, qu'ils conduisent.
Imp. Je conduisais.	Subj. *Pr.* Que je conduise.
Pret. Je conduisis, tu *conduisis*, il *conduisit*, nous *conduisîmes*, vous *conduisîtes*, ils *conduisirent*.	*Imp.* Q. je conduisisse, que tu conduisisses, qu'il conduisît, q. n. conduisissions, q. v. conduisissiez, qu'ils conduisissent.
Fut. Je conduirai.	

Conjugate in the same manner :—

construire,	*to construct.*	introduire,	*to thrust in*, *to show in.*
cuire,	*to cook; to bake.*	produire,	*to produce.*
déduire,	*to deduct.*	reconduire,	*to show out*, *to see home.*
détruire,	*to destroy.*	réduire.	*to reduce.*
instruire,	*to instruct*, *to inform.*	traduire,	*to translate.*
s'instruire,	*to study.*		

430. *Nuire*, to hurt, is conjugated like *conduire*; but its Past Participle is **nui**, and has no feminine.

Luire, to shine, and *reluire*, to glitter, have also Past Participles, **lui** and **relui**, and are very rare in the Preterite.

EXERCISE 84.

Ces messieurs nous ont reconduites [jusque] chez nous.—Le valet m'introduisit dans un petit salon au premier étage.—L'enfant introduisit sa main dans le nid et en retira deux petits oiseaux.—Ce château était entouré d'une haute muraille solidement construite.—Le roi, instruit de ce forfait, fit venir le coupable.—

Nous avons conclu une bonne affaire avec ces négociants espagnols.—Une grande partie de la ville de Lisbonne fut détruite par un tremblement de terre en l'an dix-sept cent cinquante-cinq.—Abondance de biens ne nuit pas (Prov.).—Les casques des soldats allemands reluisaient au soleil.

The bargain is concluded.—I conclude from what you say that you will not go.—He is reduced to poverty.—We translated this passage to him.—Your country has produced many celebrated men.—James, show [this] gentleman out.—The minister informed the king of the proposal (*la démarche*) of the ambassador.—You must not destroy those papers.—The house was reduced to (*en*) ashes.—He is a [well] informed man.

431. *CONFIRE*, to pickle, to preserve.

PART. PRES. *Confisant.*	PART. PAST, *Confit*, m. *confite*, f.
IND. *Pres.* Je confis,	COND. *Pr.* Je confirais.
nous confisons.	IMPER.
Imp. Je confisais,	Confis,
Pret. Je *confis.*	qu'il confise, &c.
Fut. Je confirai.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je confise.
	Imp. Que je confisse.

432. *Suffire*, to suffice, to be sufficient, is conjugated like *confire*; but its Past Participle is **suffi**, and has no feminine.

433. *CONNAÎTRE*, to know.

PART. PRES. *Connaissant.*	PART. PAST, *Connu.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *connais*,	COND. *Pr.* Je connaîtrais.
tu *connais*,	IMPER.
il *connaît*,	Connais,
nous connaissons,	qu'il connaisse,
vous connaissez,	connaissons,
ils connaissent.	connaissez,
Imp. Je connaissais.	qu'ils connaissent.
Pret. Je *connus.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je connaisse.
Fut. Je connaîtrai.	*Imp.* Que je connusse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

disparaître,	*to disappear.*	comparaître,	*to appear before a judge, &c.*
paraître,	*to appear, to look.*	reconnaître,	*to recognise, to reconnoitre.*
apparaître,	*to appear, to show oneself.*	reparaître,	*to appear again.*

434. *Paître* (Past Participle, *pu*), to graze, has no Preterite, and no Imperfect Subjunctive. *Repaître*, to feed, is complete; *repu*, glutted; *se repaître de*, to gloat upon.

435. Connaître means to recognise by the appearance, as a **town**, a **person**, a **book**, a **picture**, also to know slightly, to be acquainted with. *Je connais un peu la botanique*, I know something about botany.

Note, *s'y connaître*, to be a judge of; thoroughly acquainted with.

EXERCISE 85.

"Cet homme avait dû marcher tout le jour. Il paraissait très fatigué" (V. Hugo). — Connaissez-vous Paris?—Mais oui, je le connais comme ma poche (An expression = *very well*).—"La République avait confisqué tous vos biens.—Jamais je ne lui en ai reconnu le droit!" (Sandeau).—Bientôt il disparut au tournant de la rue.—Il m'a donné, pour ma fête, un beau sac de fruits confits. — Cet officier avait voulu reconnaître les positions occupées par les ennemis. — Quelques vaches maigres paissaient mélancoliquement sur les bords du lac.—"Nos soldats, nos gens et nos chevaux, fatigués et repus, sont ensevelis dans un profond sommeil" (Ségur).

Have you preserved any fruits?—How do you preserve them?—His large income does not suffice him.—Do you think that this will suffice? (*Subj. Pres.*).—This is not enough.—Do you know him?—I have known (*know*) him (*since*) ten years.—This phenomenon has never appeared again.—I did not know you (fem.)

again at first (*d'abord*) after (*a*) so long [a] separation.—He appears completely satisfied with (*of*) the result of his enterprise.—We shall all appear before God.—He appeared at the appointed time.—The sheep were grazing quietly in the meadow.—Do not ask me the value of that picture; I am no judge.

436. *COUDRE*, to sew.

PART. PRES. *Cousant.*	PART. PAST, *Cousu.*
IND. *Pres.* Je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent.	COND. *Pr.* Je coudrais.
Imp. Je cousais.	IMPER. Couds, qu'il couse, cousons, cousez, qu'ils cousent.
Pret. Je *cousis.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je couse.
Fut. Je coudrai.	*Imp.* Que je cousisse.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

découdre, { *to unsew*, *to undo.* | recoudre, *to sew again.*

REMARK.—ON, UP, are not rendered in French; *Coudre un bouton*, to sew *on* a button.

437. *CRAINDRE*, to fear, to be afraid of.

PART. PRES. *Craignant.*	PART. PAST, *Craint.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *crains*, tu *crains*, il *craint*, nous craignons, vous craignez, ils craignent.	COND. *Pr.* Je craindrais.
Imp. Je craignais.	IMPER. Crains, qu'il craigne, craignons, craignez, qu'ils craignent.
Pret. Je craignis.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je craigne.
Fut. Je craindrai.	*Imp.* Que je craignisse.

438. CRAINDRE governs *de* and the Inf., or the **Subj.** with **ne**, which has *not a negative sense*, unless **pas** is added. Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne, *I am afraid he will come.* Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne **pas**, *I am afraid he will not come.* After interrogative and negative clauses the idiomatic *ne* disappears; as, *Ne craignez pas que je le fasse*, Do not fear my doing it.

439. Conjugate in the same manner ALL verbs in *aindre, eindre,* or *oindre*:—

atteindre*,	*to reach, to hit.*	feindre,	*to feign.*
s'astreindre (à),	*to subject oneself (to).*	joindre,	*to join, unite.*
contraindre,	*to constrain.*	oindre,	*to anoint.*
enfreindre,	*to infringe.*	peindre,†	*to paint.*
éteindre,	*to put out, extinguish.*	plaindre,	*to pity.*
s'éteindre,	*to go out, die out.*	se plaindre (de),	*to complain of.*
		rejoindre,	*to come up with.*

NOTICE, un homme à plaindre, *a man to be pitied.*

EXERCISE 86.

"Je crains Dieu, cher Abner, et n'ai point d'autre crainte" (Racine).—Ce pauvre vieillard est bien à plaindre.—La sentinelle lui tira un coup de feu qui l'atteignit en [2] pleine [1] poitrine.—Le feu s'est éteint pendant notre absence.—Eteignez la lampe avant de vous coucher.—La cavalerie nous rejoignit à la lisière du bois.—Je ne puis rien pour vous quoique je vous plaigne de (*with*) tout mon cœur.—Voulez-vous me prêter une aiguille pour recoudre ce bouton qui vient

* Distinguish from *attendre*, to wait, a regular of the fourth conjugation.

† Distinguish from *peigner*, to comb, which has many parts similar; as, **peignant, je peignais,** *que je* **peigne,** which are common to both verbs.

de se détacher?—Cette manche est mal cousue; je m'en plaindrai à la couturière.—Le cardinal craignit que le roi ne le renvoyât.—Je crains que le pauvre garçon n'en meure.—Nous craignions qu'il n'arrivât pas à temps.—La bonne craignait que l'enfant ne s'en plaignît à sa mère.

Do you pity him?—He is always[2] complaining.[1]—I was afraid of vexing him.—Let us unite (*join*) our efforts.—I shall complain of it to your master.—Pity the unfortunate (*pl.*).—Fear his anger.—Louis XVI. was afraid of being recognised (*Render Passive Inf., and then also Active with* **on**).—I am afraid you will not remember it.—That girl has been sewing (*has sewed*) all day.—The firemen have succeeded in (*à*) extinguishing the fire.—The fire went out of itself (*de lui-même*).—We reached the summit after two hours' hard walking (*d'une marche pénible*).—The minister feared that the cardinal would complain to the king.

440. *CROIRE*, to believe, to think.

PART. PRES. *Croyant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je crois,
tu crois,
il croit,
nous croyons,
vous croyez,
ils *croient.*

Imp. Je croyais.

Pret. Je *crus.*

Fut. Je croirai.

COND. *Pr.* Je croirais.

PART. PAST, *Cru*, m., *crue*, f.

IMPER.
Crois,
qu'il croie,
croyons,
croyez,
qu'ils croient.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *croie*,
que tu *croies*,
qu'il *croie*,
que nous croyions,
que vous croyiez,
qu'ils *croient.*

Imp. Que je crusse.

441. *CROÎTRE*, to grow.*

PART. PRES. *Croissant.*	PART. PAST, *Crû*, m., *crue*, f.
IND. *Pres.* Je *crois*,	COND. *Pr.* Je croîtrais.
tu *crois*,	IMPER.
il *croît*,	Croîs,
nous croissons,	qu'il croisse,
vous croissez,	croissons,
ils croissent.	croissez,
Imp. Je croissais.	qu'ils croissent.
Pret. Je *crûs.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je croisse.
Fut. Je croîtrai.	*Imp.* Que je crûsse.

Compare carefully with *croire*.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

accroître, *to increase.* | décroître, *to decrease, wane.*

EXERCISE 87.

La popularité du jeune prince croissait de jour en (*to*) jour.—La lune commençait à décroître.—Croyez-vous qu'il vous craigne?—Je l'ai cru (*a*) homme d'honneur.—L'incertitude de leur position a accru leur détresse.—Il a cru vous faire (*give*) plaisir.—" Par la sambleu! (*Zounds!*) Messieurs, je ne croyais pas être si plaisant que je suis!" (Molière).—Il est très fort en (*well up in*) grec si je puis en croire son père.—Ces plantes viendraient mieux si elles avaient plus de soleil.—L'Allemagne s'est accrue aux dépens de ses voisins.

This plant grows in damp[2] places.[1]—Do you think he knows (*Subj.*) that you are in town?—I do not think (*penser*) he believes what I told him.—He will believe it when he has (*Fut.*) seen it.—The power (*puissance*) of that empire has increased (*s'accroître*) during this

* GRANDIR, of children, and *pousser* (to push), *venir* (to come up), of plants, are often used instead of *croître*.

century.—I would not have believed it if [any one else] (*un autre*) had told it me.—Those flowers will grow more quickly when the weather is (*Fut.*) warmer.—I fear he will not believe you.

442. *DIRE*, to say, to tell.

PART. PRES. *Disant.*	PART. PAST, *Dit*, m., *dite*, f.
IND. *Pres.* Je dis,	*Fut.* Je dirai.
tu dis,	
il dit,	COND. *Pr.* Je dirais.
nous disons,	IMPER.
vous dites,*	Dis,
ils disent.	qu'il dise,
Imp. Je disais.	disons,
Pret. Je *dis*,	dites,
tu *dis*,	qu'ils disent.
il *dit*,	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je dise.†
nous *dîmes*,	*Imp.* Que je disse.
vous *dites*,	
ils *dirent.*	

* No accent. † There is an old form, *Que je die.*

Conjugate in the same manner—Redire, *to say again.* **Vous redites; Redites.**

443—

contredire,	*to contradict*,	make in the 2nd pers. plur. Pres. Ind. and Imperative,	contredisez.
dédire,	*to disown*,		dédisez.
interdire,	*to prohibit*,		interdisez.
médire,	*to slander*,		médisez.
prédire,	*to foretell*,		prédisez.

444. *Maudire*, to curse, makes *maudissant* in the PART. Pr., and consequently the tenses formed from it have also double *s* before their terminations; as, *nous maudissons, vous maudissez, je maudissais, que je maudisse.*

The participle *maudit* is often used in the sense of *unpleasant, wretched, horrid.*

445. ÉCLORE, *to be hatched,* or *to blow like a flower.*

PART. Past, *Éclos.*

IND. Pres.	*Il éclôt,*	*ils éclosent.*
Fut.	*Il éclora,*	*ils écloront.*
COND.	*Il éclorait,*	*ils écloraient.*
SUBJ. Pres.	*Qu'il éclose,*	*qu'ils éclosent.*

Its compound tenses are formed with *être.*

EXERCISE 88.

Vous dites et redites toujours la même chose.—Grand'mère, redites-nous cette belle histoire. Dites-moi la vérité.—Ne me contredisez pas.—Je ne le croirai jamais quoi qu'il dise.—Entrée interdite aux voitures.—Je vous dirai (*I must tell you*) que je suis un peu souffrant.—"Ma sœur, que je (*let me*) vous *die* une bonne nouvelle" (Corneille).—Il faut que je vous dise ce qui est arrivé après votre départ.—Il aurait dû me le dire plus tôt.—Que dites-vous de sa conduite?—Cette rose est éclose [de] ce matin.

Do you believe what he says?—We believed that they would come.—What are you saying of me?—Do not consider as your friend him who approves [of] all that you say.—You may condemn what he says, what he has said, and what he will say.—You always[2] predict[1] bad weather.—Condemn the sinner, but do not curse him.—Interdict him your house (him = *to him*).—What did they tell you about it?—I *will* not tell you what they said about (of) him.—Don't always say the same thing [over and over].

446. *ÉCRIRE,* to write.

PART. PRES. *Écrivant.*	PART. PAST, *Écrit.*
IND. *Pres.* J'écris,	*Pret.* J'écrivis,
tu écris,	tu *écrivis,*
il écrit,	il *écrivit,*
nous écrivons,	nous *écrivîmes,*
vous écrivez,	vous *écrivîtes,*
ils écrivent.	ils *écrivirent.*
Imp. J'écrivais.	*Fut.* J'écrirai.

Cond. *Pr.* J'écrirais.	
Imper.	
Écris,	Subj. *Pr.* Que j'écrive.
qu'il écrive,	
écrivons,	
écrivez,	*Imp.* Que j'écrivisse.
qu'ils écrivent.	

Conjugate in the same manner :—

circonscrire,	*to circumscribe.*	prescrire,	*to prescribe.*
décrire,	*to describe.*	proscrire,	*to proscribe.*
inscrire,	*to inscribe.*	récrire,	*to write again.*
s'inscrire,	*to write one's name.*	souscrire,	*to subscribe.*
		transcrire,	*to transcribe.*

447. Ensuivre (s'), *to follow from,* is conjugated like *suivre,* but is only used in the 3rd persons singular and plural.

EXERCISE 89.

Il faudra que vous écriviez plus soigneusement à l'avenir.—" Je suis venu, j'ai vu, j'ai vaincu," écrivit César au Sénat romain. — Proscrit par le deuxième triumvirat, Cicéron essaya de fuir, mais il fut assassiné près de Formies.—Je vous récrirai sous peu (*shortly, soon*).—Ecrivons-leur tout de suite.—Le médecin lui a prescrit un repos absolu.—Veuillez vous inscrire sur ce registre, Monsieur ; la loi l'exige.

I wrote to him last month.—What were you writing?—I was writing my French exercise. — Chateaubriand has described in (*of*) an admirable manner a fight between the Gauls and the Romans. — The travellers wrote their names on the register.—We must write to her to-morrow without fail.—My child, I wish you to write to me every week.—I will write to them again as soon as I know (*Fut.*) their new address.

448. *FAIRE*, to do, to make.

PART. PRES. *Faisant.**	PART. PAST, *Fait.*
IND. *Pres.* Je fais,	COND. *Pr.* Je *ferais.*
tu fais,	IMPER.
il fait,	Fais,
nous faisons,*	qu'il fasse,
vous faites,	faisons,*
ils font.	faites,
Imp. Je faisais.*	qu'ils fassent.
Pret. Je *fis*,†	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je fasse,
tu *fis*,	que tu *fasses*,
il *fit*,	qu'il *fasse*,
nous *fîmes*.	que nous fassions,
vous *fîtes*,	que vous fassiez,
ils *firent*.	qu'ils *fassent*.
Fut. Je ferai.	*Imp.* Que je fisse.

[The old Infinitive was *fère* (*facere*), which accounts for the Future *ferai* and the pronunciation of the other parts written *ai*].

Conjugate in the same manner:—

défaire,	*to undo*, *to defeat.*	contrefaire,	*to counterfeit*, *to mimic.*
se défaire de,	*to get rid of.*	refaire,	*to do again.*
parfaire,	*to complete.*	satisfaire,	*to satisfy.*
parfait (*adj.*),	*perfect.*	surfaire,	*to overcharge.*

449. Remember the note on, **Il fait beau (temps)**, It is fine weather. All the other tenses are used in this expression.

* AI is pronounced like *e* mute in these parts, thus: *faisons* = fesons; but *faites* is pronounced fètes.

† This tense of *faire* often means *said*, "*Ah, que vous êtes bon*," *fit-il*. "How kind you are," said he.

NOTE :—

faire mal (à),	to hurt, to injure.
faire de la peine,	to give pain, to grieve.
faire faire,	to get (have) done, or made.
se faire à,	to get used to.
faire dire,	to send word.

450. FRIRE, *to fry.* INF. Pres. *Frire.* PART. Past, *Frit.*

IND. Pres. *Je fris, tu fris, il frit.*
Fut. *Je frirai, tu friras, &c.*
COND. *Je frirais, tu frirais, &c.*
IMPER. *Fris.*

This verb is used through all its compound tenses. In general, the different tenses of *faire* are used before the Infinitive *frire*; as, *Je fais frire,* I make to fry, instead of "*I fry*" (364).

EXERCISE 90.

Je vais me faire faire un habit chez ce tailleur anglais.—Ce négociant s'est fait bâtir une superbe villa dans les faubourgs.—Aïe, vous me faites mal !—Je me suis fait mal en tombant sur le perron.—Mon mari aime beaucoup les pommes de terre frites.—Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez mal à mon chien.—Ne contrefaites pas les gens de cette manière. — Faites donc attention (*Mind what you are about*).—Son explication ne m'a pas satisfait.—Mon fils, vos incartades me font de la peine.—Nous comptons passer la journée de dimanche à la campagne; j'espère qu'il fera beau.—Il a fait bien froid toute la semaine.—Mon patron a des manières très brusques; je ne saurais m'y faire.—J'ai dû me défaire de mon vieux cheval.

I am going to fry some fish for (*the*) dinner.—He did not wish to pain you.—Don't hurt me !—You must not hurt her.—She had had a dress made for the party (*soirée*). — Young ladies, you must do that exercise

again; it is badly done.—That lady has returned to France; she could not get used to this climate.—He has sent me word that he is ill. — The work that Penelope (*Pénélope*) did [in] the day [time] she undid (*it*) [at] night (*did = used to do*). — What [sort of] weather is it to-day?—It has been mild all morning.—You *shall* not mimic me!—You would not say that if you knew (*Imp.*) the pain you give me.

451. *LIRE*, to read.

PART. PRES. *Lisant.*	PART. PAST, *Lu.*
IND. *Pres.* Je lis,	COND. *Pr.* Je lirais.
tu lis,	IMPER.
il lit,	Lis,
nous lisons,	qu'il lise,
vous lisez,	lisons,
ils lisent.	lisez,
Imp. Je lisais.	qu'ils lisent.
Pret. Je *lus.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je lise.
Fut. Je lirai.	*Imp.* Que je lusse.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

élire, *to elect.* | relire, *to read again.*

452. *METTRE*, to put.

PART. PRES. *Mettant.*	PART. PAST, *Mis.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *mets*,	COND. *Pr.* Je mettrais.
tu *mets*,	IMPER.
il *met*,	Mets,
nous mettons,	qu il mette,
vous mettez,	mettons,
ils mettent.	mettez,
Imp. Je mettais.	qu'ils mettent.
Pret. Je *mis.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je mette.
Fut. Je mettrai.	*Imp.* Que je misse.

NOTE, **se mettre à**, *to begin.*

Conjugate in the same manner :—

admettre,	*to admit.*	omettre,	*to omit.*
commettre,	*to commit.*	permettre (à),	*to permit.*
compromettre,	*to compromise.*	promettre,	*to promise.*
se démettre (de)	*to resign; to put out of joint.*	remettre,	*to put off, to hand.*
s'entremettre,	*to intermeddle.*	soumettre,	*to submit.*
		transmettre,	*to transmit.*

453. Be careful to distinguish between the Present and the Preterite, **Je promets, je promis ; il commet, il commit,** &c.

EXERCISE 91.

L'heure avance, il faut que je me mette à ma correspondance. — Cet homme a commis un grand crime.—On ne m'a pas donné la place qu'on m'avait promise.—Chose promise est chose due (Prov.)—" Il faut se démettre ou se soumettre " (Gambetta).—C'est partie remise (*It will have to be put off*).—Le courrier lui remit la dépêche qui le rappelait à Paris.—Il s'est démis l'épaule en jouant au football.—Ce livre nous a tellement intéressés que nous nous sommes promis de le relire à la première occasion.

He is reading in his library.—We read that work last year.—What were you reading when I came in?—Who will be elected? — The public are (*is*) not admitted.—Put this parcel on the table.—You must not put off that affair again.—I submit (*myself*) to those conditions, if you promise to accept mine.—We [used to] read every evening a few pages of the Arabian Nights (*Mille et une Nuits*).—You had omitted to sign the cheque.—The child began to cry.

454. *MOUDRE,* **to grind** (corn, coffee, &c.)

PART. PRES. *Moulant.*	PART. PAST, *Moulu.*
IND. *Pres.* Je mouds, nous moulons.	COND. *Pr.* Je moudrais.
Imp. Je moulais.	IMPER. Mouds, qu'il moule.
Pret. Je *moulus.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je moule.
Fut. Je moudrai.	*Imp.* Que je moulusse.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

émoudre, *to grind* (knives, razors, &c.)
remoudre, *to grind again* (corn, &c.)
rémoudre, *to grind again* (knives, &c.)

455. *NAÎTRE,* **to be born, to arise, to spring up.**

PART. PRES. *Naissant.*	PART. PAST, *Né, née.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *nais*, tu *nais*, il *naît*, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent.	*Fut.* Je naîtrai.
Imp. Je naissais.	COND. *Pr.* Je naîtrais.
Pret. Je *naquis*, tu *naquis*, il *naquit*, nous *naquîmes*, vous *naquîtes*, ils *naquirent.*	IMPER. Nais, qu'il naisse, naissons, naissez, qu'ils naissent.
	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je naisse.
	Imp. Que je naquisse. qu'il naquît.

The compound tenses of this verb are formed with *être.*

456. Avoid the error of translating, *he was born,* **il était né,** which is the Pluperfect; say, **il est né.** This verb is widely used in a figurative sense; as,

De nouvelles difficultés naissaient à chaque pas,
New difficulties arose at every step.

Renaître, to be born again, to arise anew, has no Participle Past.

EXERCISE 92.

Cet événement fit renaître leurs espérances. — Où naquit Voltaire?—Il naquit à Châtenay, petit village près de Paris.—De grandes misères naquirent de ces guerres prolongées.—Alphonse treize d'Espagne est né roi.—De graves complications naîtront de cet état de choses.—Je sens mes forces renaître dans cette tranquille retraite.—Le garçon épicier a moulu dix kilogrammes de café.—"Les affaires de Charlemagne renaissaient de toutes parts, il les finissait de toutes parts" (Montesquieu).

This coffee is badly ground.—Grind some more (*en davantage*).—Where was Victor Hugo born?—He was born at Besançon in 1802.—He was [a] born poet.—"If you grew (*were born,* Imp.) under (*à*) the shelter of the foliage with which (*of which*) I cover the neighbourhood, you would not have so much to (*à*) suffer" (La Fontaine).—"Mazarin was born (*had been born,* prior to this time) in 1602, of an ancient Sicilian family (of Sicily), settled (*établir*) at Rome" (Mignet).

457. *PLAIRE,* to please.

PART. PRES. *Plaisant.*	PART. PAST, *Plu* (INV.).
IND. *Pres.* Je plais,	COND. *Pr.* Je plairais.
tu plais,	IMPER.
il plaît,	Plais,
nous plaisons,	qu'il plaise,
vous plaisez,	plaisons,
ils plaisent.	plaisez,
Imp. Je plaisais.	qu'ils plaisent.
Pret. Je *plus.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je plaise.
Fut. Je plairai.	*Imp.* Que je plusse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

déplaire,	*to displease.*	complaire,	*to humour.*
se plaire à,	*to delight in.*		

458. These verbs take *à*. *Se plaire* often means to enjoy living in a place. Vous plaisez-vous à Paris? *Do you like Paris?* Oui, Monsieur, je m'y plais beaucoup, *I like it very much.* *S'il vous plaît,* If you please; literally, if it pleases you. You must not say, *Je suis plu,* I am pleased, but, *Je suis content.*

459. *PRENDRE,* to take.

PART. PRES. *Prenant.*	PART. PAST, *Pris.*
IND. *Pres.* Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils *prennent.*	IMPER. Prends, qu'il prenne, prenons, prenez, qu'ils prennent.
Imp. Je prenais.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *prenne,* que tu *prennes,* qu'il *prenne,* que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils *prennent.*
Pret. Je *pris.*	
Fut. Je prendrai.	
COND. *Pr.* Je prendrais.	*Imp.* Que je prisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

apprendre,	*to learn.*	se méprendre,	*to mistake.*
comprendre,	*to understand.*	reprendre,	*to take back; to reply; to censure.*
désapprendre,	*to unlearn.*		
entreprendre,	*to undertake.*	surprendre,	*to surprise.*

NOTE.—These verbs are very apt to be mistaken for regulars of the fourth conjugation.

460. *RIRE*, to laugh.

PART. PRES. *Riant.**	PART. PAST, *Ri* (INV.).
IND. *Pres.* Je ris,	COND. *Pr.* Je rirais.
tu ris,	IMPER.
il rit,	Ris,
nous rions,	qu'il rie,
vous riez,	rions,
ils rient.	riez,
Imp. Je riais,	qu'ils rient.
tu riais,	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je rie,
il riait,	que tu ries,
nous riions,	qu'il rie,
vous riiez,	que nous riions,
ils riaient.	que vous riiez,
Pret. Je *ris*.	qu'ils rient.
Fut. Je rirai.	*Imp.* Que je risse.

So, *sourire*, to smile.

461. *Se rire de*, to laugh at, **Elle s'est ri de mes remontrances**, *She laughed at my remonstrances*. *Se moquer de* has much the same meaning, and is more often used of persons, &c., as, **Ils se sont moqués de moi**, *They laughed at me*.

EXERCISE 93.

Vous me surprenez. — Ils comprennent mal le français.—"Apprenez, apprenez la valeur de ce fils qu'à tort (*wrongfully*) vous condamnez" (Corneille).—"Tout hors d'haleine il prend pourtant sa place" (idem).—"Il m'a rendu le tout en bon état, je me plais à le reconnaître" (Sandeau). — Ne reprenez jamais une chose donnée.—Il faut que ce petit rebelle apprenne à obéir.—Ne riez pas ainsi, je parle sérieusement.—Rira bien qui rira le dernier (Prov.).—"Tout me déplut, et je vis bien que je déplaisais aussi" (Courier).—"Sur le riant coteau, par le prince choisi,

* *Riant*=smiling, of a landscape, &c.

s'élevait le moulin du meunier Sans-Souci" (Andrieux). —Je me plais toujours à la campagne dans la belle saison.—Je n'ai pas pu m'empêcher de rire en la voyant si surprise.

I know you were laughing at my misadventure.—"Everything smiles [on] me when I see you smile" (Sandeau). — His manner displeased me. — What pleases me in (*en*) him (*it*) is his modesty.—"You do not understand that pun," said he (*to me*) (*in*) laughing. — They take pleasure in teasing you. — Those tradesmen never take back (*art.*) goods [which have been] delivered.—You are mistaken concerning (*sur*) my intentions. — That tamer has undertaken to (*de*) train those lions.—He was much (=*very*) pleased to (*de*) see us.—My mother does not like London.—What are you laughing at?—I am not laughing at you.

462. *SUIVRE*, to follow.

PART. PRES. *Suivant.**	PART. PAST, *Suivi.*
IND. *Pres.* Je *suis*,†	COND. *Pr.* Je suivrais.
tu *suis*,	IMPER.
il *suit*,	Suis,
nous suivons,	qu'il suive,
vous suivez,	suivons,
ils suivent.	suivez,
Imp. Je suivais.	qu'ils suivent.
Pret. Je suivis.	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je suive.
Fut. Je suivrai.	*Imp.* Que je suivisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Poursuivre, *to pursue, to prosecute.*

S'ensuivre (to result) is only used in the 3rd persons singular and plural, as we have seen.

* *Suivant* often means *according to.*

† There is no difference between *Je suis*, I am, and *Je suis*, I follow; hence the well-known pun with which the Exercise begins.

463. *TAIRE*, to keep secret.

PART. PRES. *Taisant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je tais,
nous taisons.
Imp. Je taisais.
Pret. Je *tus.*
Fut. Je tairai.

PART. PAST, *Tu*,* m., *Tue*, f.

COND. *Pr.* Je tairais.

IMPER. Tais,
qu'il taise.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je taise.
Imp. Que je tusse.

Se taire (to be silent, to hold one's tongue) is much more frequently used.

464. *TRAIRE*, to milk.

PART. PRES. *Trayant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je trais,
tu trais,
il trait,
nous trayons,
vous trayez,
ils *traient.*
Imp. Je trayais.
No *Preterite.*
Fut. Je trairai.

COND. *Pr.* Je trairais.

PART. PAST, *Trait*, m., *traite*, f.

IMPER. Trais,
qu'il traie,
trayons,
trayez,
qu'ils traient.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je *traie*,
que tu *traies*,
qu'il *traie*,
que nous trayions,
que vous trayiez,
qu'ils *traient.*

Conjugate in the same manner:—

abstraire,	*to abstract.*	extraire,	*to extract.*
distraire,†	*to divert, to call off the attention.*	soustraire,	*to subtract, to withdraw.*
se distraire,	*to amuse oneself.*	se soustraire (à),	*to escape from.*

* Sometimes, but not usually, spelt *tû.*

† *Distrait, distraite*, absent-minded.

EXERCISE 94.

Un muletier espagnol disait: "Je suis ce que je suis, mais je ne suis pas ce que je suis, car si j'étais ce que je suis, je ne serais pas ce que je suis."—Je voudrais que mon fils suivît mes conseils, mais il y semble peu disposé.—Vous restez trop à la maison, il faut vous distraire.—Où est Désirée?—Elle trait les vaches.—L'officier avait voulu se soustraire à la fureur du peuple.—Louise est toujours distraite (*absent-minded*).—Taisez-vous, vous ne savez pas ce que vous dites.—Nous nous sommes tus toute la soirée.—Il ne faut jamais taire la vérité.—Un grand malheur s'ensuivit.

I want you to follow me.—Follow your father's advice.—The horsemen pursued the fugitives until nightfall.—Can you not hold your tongue?—I will not hold my tongue.—The cows the maid (*laitière*) has milked are in the shed (*l'étable*).—How absent-minded you are! (*How you are*—).—Let us be quiet, for they come! (*them behold who come*).—The deputy would have liked to escape the ovation which his electors had prepared for him (*Dative*).—He has been prosecuted for forgery (*turn active*).—A disastrous war resulted from it.

465. *VAINCRE*, to conquer.

PART. PRES. *Vainquant.*

IND. *Pres.* Je vaincs,
tu vaincs,
il vainc,
nous vainquons,
vous vainquez,
ils vainquent.

Imp. Je vainquais.

Pret. Je *vainquis.*

Fut. Je vaincrai.

PART. PAST, Vaincu.

COND. *Pr.* Je vaincrais.

IMPER.
vaincs,
qu'il vainque,
vainquons,
vainquez,
qu'ils vainquent.

SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je vainque.

Imp. Que je vainquisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Convaincre, *to convince, to convict.*

466. *VIVRE,* to live.

PART. PRES. *Vivant.*	PART. PAST, *Vécu* (Inv.).
IND. *Pres.* Je *vis,**	COND. *Pr.* Je vivrais.
tu *vis,*	IMPER.
il *vit,*	Vis,
nous vivons,	qu'il vive,
vous vivez,	vivons,
ils vivent.	vivez,
Imp. Je vivais.	qu'ils vivent.
Pret. Je *vécus.*	SUBJ. *Pr.* Que je vive.
Fut. Je vivrai.	*Imp.* Que je vécusse.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

revivre, *to revive.* | survivre (à), *to survive.*

467. REMARKS. — **Vive** and **Vivent** are used in acclamation ; as, **Vive le roi !** *Long live the king!* **Vive la République !** *Hurrah for the Republic!* **Vivent nos hôtes !** *Long live our guests.* **Vivant** = *alive, live.* Ces poissons sont **vivants,** *Those fish are alive.* But, Il fut brûlé **vif,** *He was burnt alive.* *To live on* = vivre de.

EXERCISE 95.

"Il neigeait. On était vaincu par sa conquête" (V. Hugo).†—"Qui veut mourir, ou vaincre, est vaincu rarement" (Corneille).—Louis XIII. ne survécut que peu de temps au grand cardinal (Richelieu), on aurait dit qu'il ne pouvait pas même vivre sans lui.—La

* Do not confound with *Je vis* (I saw), Preterite of *voir.*
† Refers to the retreat from Moscow.

résistance des chambres vaincue, l'empereur partit pour la frontière.—La perte de ses deux enfants a été un grand choc pour lui, je doute qu'il y survive.

He lives in (*à*) the country.—Whosoever has lived happy, has lived long.—They live by (*de*) their work.—His memory will live for ever. — He died as he had lived.—The wise [man] does not [2] always [3] conquer [1] his passions.—Louis XIV. survived his children and his grandchildren.—Parents live again in their children.—His wife died in 1860, and he only survived her two years.—Those peasants live on milk and vegetables.

THE ADVERB.

468. Adverbs consist either of one word; as, *bien*, well; *jamais*, never, or of several; as, *sans cesse*, without ceasing; *de nouveau*, again, &c. In the latter case, they are commonly called *adverbial expressions*.

The Place of Adverbs.

469. An adverb, in French, is generally placed after the verb, in *simple tenses*; as, *Il en parle rarement*, He seldom speaks of it.

470. In *compound tenses*, adverbs are put between the auxiliary and the Participle Past; as, *Je me suis souvent promené dans ce parc*, I have often taken a walk in that park. (There are many exceptions to this rule.)

471. *Adverbial expressions* come last of all with compound tenses; as, *Il l'a fait à dessein*, He has done it on purpose.

Formation of Adverbs of Manner.

472. Adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *ment* to the **masculine** when it ends in a **vowel**; as—

poli,	*polite,*	poliment,	*politely.*
sage,	*wise,*	sagement,	*wisely.*
vrai,	*true,*	vraiment,	*truly.*

[*Ment* is the Ablative of *mens,* viz.: *mente,* with a mind or intention.]

473. Adverbs are formed from the **feminine,** when the **masculine** ends in a **consonant**; as,

cruel, m. *cruelle,* f. cruel; *cruellement,* cruelly.
faux, m. *fausse,* f. false; *faussement,* falsely.

474. *Bellement,* softly (not beautifully); *follement,* madly; *mollement,* softly; *nouvellement,* newly, were formed from the feminine of the adjectives, *bel, fol, mol, nouvel,* before the forms *beau, fou, mou, nouveau,* had come into existence.

475. Adjectives ending in *ant,* or *ent,* in the masculine, change *nt* into *m,* and add only *ment* to it; as,

constant,	*constant,*	constamment,	*constantly.*
prudent,	*prudent,*	prudemment,	*prudently.*

Lent, slow, and *présent,* present, *véhément,* vehement, follow the general rule, and make *lentement,* slowly, *présentement,* at present, now; *véhémentement,* strongly

476. The following take an acute accent on the form common to both genders:—

aveugle,	*blind,*	aveuglément,	*blindly.*
commode,	*convenient,*	commodément,	*conveniently.*
incommode,	*inconvenient,*	incommodément,	*inconveniently.*
conforme,	*conformable,*	conformément,	*conformably.*
énorme,	*enormous,*	énormément,	*enormously.*
immense,	*immense,*	immensément,	*immensely.*
opiniâtre,	*obstinate,*	opiniâtrément,	*obstinately.*
uniforme,	*uniform,*	uniformément,	*uniformly.*

477. In the following, the acute is placed on the *feminine* form :—

commun,	commune,	*common*,	communément,	*commonly.*
confus,	confuse,	*confused*,	confusément,	*confusedly.*
diffus,	diffuse,	*diffuse*,	diffusément,	*diffusely.*
exprès,	expresse,	*strict, special*,	expressément,	*strictly.*
importun,	importune,	*importunate*,	importunément,	*importunately.*
obscur,	obscure,	*obscure, dark*,	obscurément,	*darkly.*
précis,	précise,	*precise*,	précisément,	*precisely.*
profond,	profonde,	*deep, profound*,	profondément,	*deeply.*

478. The following take a circumflex accent :—

assidûment,	*assiduously, industriously.*
crûment,	*crudely, bluntly.*
dûment,	*duly.*
indûment,	*unduly.*
gaîment,*	*cheerfully.*

479. The following are irregular :—

gentil, gentille, *pretty, amiable* ; gentiment, *nicely, pleasantly.*
impuni, impunie, *unpunished* ; impunément, *with impunity.*

480. Some adverbs derive from obsolete forms ; as,

traîtreusement,	*treacherously ;*	modern form	*traître, traîtresse.*
brièvement,†	*briefly ;*	,,	*bref, brève,* (*brief, brève* occasionally met with).

---

* We also write *gaiement*. The same double spelling is found in *paîment* and *paiement*, payment ; *remercîment* and *remerciement*, thanks ; *crucifiment* and *crucifiement*, crucifixion, and a few more. The more general is the *ie* form. In connection with *crucifiement*, note *couronnement*, coronation.

† The corruption of a pure Latin vowel into a diphthong is very characteristic of old French ; thus :—

lupus,	**loup**,	*wolf.*
currere,	**courir**,	*to run.*
panis,	**pain**,	*bread.*
manus,	**main**,	*hand.*
brevis,	**brief** (old),	*brief, short.*

We have occasionally returned, as in this case, to a purer form.

notamment, { *notably, particularly,* } from obsolete adjective { *notant,* remarkable.

nuitamment, *by night,* „ „ { *nuitant*; modern, *nocturne.*

sciemment, { *knowingly, wittingly,* } „ „ { *scient,* knowing. (Latin, *sciens, scientis.*)

481. Remark.—**Bonnement** means *simply, merely,* and must not be confounded with the true adverbial equivalent of **bon,** viz., **bien.** *Vite* (quick, quickly) is now used as an adverb; *vitement* is obsolete.

EXERCISE 96.

Voilà précisément ce que je lui disais.—Nous étions tous profondément émus.—Il le frappa traîtreusement dans le dos.—Je lui ai dit tout bonnement ce que j'avais sur le cœur.—"Je serai prête dans un instant," dit-elle gaiement.—Tâchez de lire gentiment.—Vous ne me braverez pas impunément.—Il a promis de suivre aveuglément mes conseils. — Cette dame est toujours élégamment mise (= habillée).—Ces voyageurs sont nouvellement arrivés. — Bellement, mon ami!—Nous étions trop mollement couchés.—Ce voleur est accusé de s'être introduit nuitamment dans cette maison.—Le ministre de la marine ne répondit que brièvement à la question de l'honorable député.—Il est expressément défendu de fumer dans la gare.—Il fut véhémentement soupçonné de ce crime.

The kitchen range is conveniently placed (*installé*).—A soldier must obey blindly the orders of his officers (*chef*).—I am sure he has done it knowingly.—[We] must proceed conformably with (*to*) the law.—We saw dimly (confusedly) a large ship quite close to us.—That young lady sings very pleasantly.—I am deeply grieved.—He acted very prudently.—You speak too

slowly.—He refused it politely.—Do you really believe it?—They denied it obstinately.—You will not do it with impunity.—That banker is enormously rich.—You mean Jean le Roux, as he is commonly called in [this part of] the country.—I have told you quite (*tout*) simply the truth.—They have acted treacherously.—Tell me frankly what you think.—He often comes [on] (*the*) Sunday.—They already understand you.

ADVERBS MAY BE DIVIDED INTO CLASSES.

482. Adverbs of **Order** (in a sense also of *time*).

après,	*after.*		
aussitôt,	*immediately, at once* (refers to past time).	encore,	*again, still* (encor, *in poetry*).
		enfin,	*at last.*
auparavant,	*before* (at the end of a sentence).	ensuite,	*then, afterwards.*
avant,	*before* (*time*).	premièrement,*	*firstly.*
cependant,	*meanwhile, however.*	secondement, &c.	*secondly, &c.*
d'abord,	*first, at first.*	puis,	*then, next, after that.*
déjà,	*already.*	pas encore,	*not yet.*

483. Adverbs of **Time.**

alors,	*then (at that time).*	avant-hier,	*the day before yesterday.*
aujourd'hui,†	*to-day.*	après-demain,	*the day after to-morrow.*
hier,	*yesterday.*		
demain,	*to-morrow.*	autrefois,	*formerly.*

* The Latin forms are also much used:—Primo (or 1°), *in the first place;* secundo (2°), *in the second place;* tertio (3°), *thirdly; bis* and *ter*, are used as A and B.—No. 15^{bis} = No. 15^{A}; No. 2^{ter} = No. 2^{B}.

† *Aujourd'hui* is a redundant form; *hui* (Latin, *hodie*) means *to-day*, but is obsolete.

bientôt, tôt,	*soon,*	souvent,	*often.*
tard,	*late,* } (491)	toujours,	*always, still.*
jadis,	*formerly (long past).*	longtemps,	*long, for a long time.*
jamais,	*ever, never.*	désormais,	*hereafter.*
quelquefois,	*sometimes.*	dorénavant,	*henceforth.*
parfois,		naguère,	*but lately.*

Note the adverbial nouns (if they may be so called):—

la veille,	*the eve, the day before.*	le lendemain,	*the morrow, day after.*
l'avant-veille,	*two days before.*	le surlendemain,	*two days after.*

484. Adverbs of Place.

ailleurs,	*elsewhere.*	là-bas,	*yonder, over there.*
auprès, près,	*near.*	loin,	*far.*
autour,	*around.*	autre part,	*elsewhere.*
dedans,	*inside.*	nulle part,	*nowhere.*
dehors,	*outside.*	quelque part,	*somewhere.*
environ,	*about, nearly.*	n'importe où	*anywhere, no matter where.*
ici,	*here.*	partout,	*everywhere.*
par ici,	*this way.*	où,	*where.*
là, y,	*there.*	çà et là,	*here and there.*
par là,	*that way.*		

and many prepositions used adverbially; as, contre, *against*; derrière, *behind, &c.*

Y is considered an adverb, but it is placed and used like a conjunctive pronoun. *Là* is emphatic, and is put at the beginning or end of a sentence. Là vous le verrez, *There you will see him.* Mettez-vous là, *sit there.*

485. Adverbs of **Quantity** (530).

assez,	*enough.*	tant,	*so much, so many.*
beaucoup, bien, (532)	*much, many.*	autant,	*as much, as many.*
peu,	*little, few.*	guère (with *ne*),	*not much, scarcely, but little.*
davantage,*	*more.*	Combien?	*How much? How many?*
trop,	*too* (before an adj. or adv.), *too much, too many.*		

* At the end of a sentence.

And the **Comparatives**, plus, *more;* moins, *less, fewer,* followed by *de* before a numeral (132).

486. Adverbs of **Affirmation** and **Negation**.

Oui,	*Yes.*	Certes,	*Certainly, indeed.*
Si,	*Yes.*†	Non certes,	*Certainly not.*
Si fait,	*Yes indeed;* (a strong affirmation).	NOTICE:—	
Non,	*No.*	Que oui!	Why yes!
Non pas,	*No indeed;* (a strong negation).	Que si!	Why yes!
Pas, point,	*Not.*‡	Que non!	Why no!

487. Adverbs of **Interrogation**.

Combien? (530)	*How much? many?*	quand?	*when?*
comment?	*how?*	pourquoi?	*why? wherefore?*
où?	*where?*	que ne . . . ?	*why . . . not?*
jusqu'où?	*how far?*	*e.g.*, Que ne le disiez-vous?	*Why did you not say so?*
par où?	*which way?*		

† In contradiction or in answer to a question put negatively.

‡ After *ne* or before an adverb; as, pas trop, *not very, not too much;* pas aujourd'hui, *not to-day.*

488. Adverbs of **Degree**, &c.

si, tellement,	*so.*	même,	*even.*
ainsi,	*thus, so.*	comme,	*as, like.*
aussi,	*as, so.*	presque,	*almost.*
très, bien, fort,	*very.*	à peine,	*hardly, scarcely.*
beaucoup,	*much.*	seulement, ne . . . que,	*only.*
peu,	*not very.*	surtout,	*especially.*

and the Comparatives :—

mieux, *better* ; pis, *worse.*

489. Adverbs form their degrees of comparison like adjectives. The following are irregular **(126)** :—

beaucoup,	*much, many;*	plus,	*more;*	le plus,	*the most.*
bien,	*well;*	mieux,	*better;*	le mieux,	*the best.*
mal,	*badly;*	pis (plus mal),	*worse,*	le pis (le plus mal)	*the worst.*
peu,	*little, few;*	moins,	*less, fewer;*	le moins,	*the least, the fewest.*

490. Important Note.—Avoid such combinations as, *si beaucoup, si très, très beaucoup,* they are never used by the French, except as a standing joke at the expense of the British tourist. Express the idea by using a stronger adjective or adverb ; as, *I am* so much *obliged to you,* Je vous suis **infiniment** obligé ; *I am* so very glad *to see you,* Je suis **ravi (enchanté)** de vous voir ; *She is* very much *grieved,* Elle est **profondément** affligée.

EXERCISE 97.

"Oui, mon père, je les ai lues, ces lettres d'un soldat toutes écrites dans l'ivresse du triomphe, le lendemain d'un jour de combat" (Sandeau).—Je vous donnerai votre dû, ni plus ni moins.—Le médecin guérit quelquefois, soulage souvent, console toujours.—Je lui ai offert huit cents francs de ce cheval, et je ne veux pas en donner davantage. — "Où voulez-vous que

j'aille ?" "Ailleurs" (V. Hugo).—"Oh! mon père, vous ne le pensez pas." "Si fait, je le pense" (Sandeau).—Il n'était pas de ces camarades à qui l'on peut dire : "Mets-toi là et mange avec nous" (Courier).—Dehors le vent faisait rage.—"Que sont devenus ces toits de chaume et ces foyers rustiques qu'habitaient jadis la modération et la vertu ?" (J. J. Rousseau).—Il ne sort pas ce matin.—Si, il va sortir.

Read first that letter and then this one.—I told you so (*it*) before.—Where is my grammar ?—He does not live here.—Come this way, Sir.—You will find it there. —I shall look elsewhere.—He will soon be here.—I used to know him formerly.—You talk too much.—You have (*of them*) as many as I.—She always contradicts me.— He made so much noise that they (*Indef.*) put him out.—Is the messenger still (*always*) there ?—We saw him in (*at*) the Bois two days before his death.—Where shall I sit ? (*Where do you wish that I put myself ?*)—Sit there.—I want a little sugar. — Look (Seek) in the cupboard, you will find some there (168).—Did they not meet him [on] the day after his arrival ?

Remarks on some Adverbs.

491. Tôt alone means *soon,* and is used in connection with other adverbs and in a few expressions. **Aussitôt que,** *as soon as* ; **Plus tôt que,** *sooner* ; **sitôt,** nearly the same as *aussitôt.* **Se lever tôt, se coucher tard,** *To get up early and to go to bed late* (*to work early and late*) ; **tôt ou tard,** *sooner or later* [notice that the French expression is not comparative]. *You are late,* must be rendered **Vous êtes en retard.** *Tard* can only modify a verb ; as, **Vous venez tard,** *You come late.*

Plutôt, in one word and no **s,** means *rather, preferably.* **J'irai plutôt moi-même,** *I had rather go myself. Rather* or *pretty* equalling *a little, enough,* are rendered by **assez** ; as, *It is rather cold,* **Il fait assez froid.** *I am pretty tired,* **Je suis assez (un peu) fatigué.**

492. *Now* = **maintenant, à présent, présentement**; *just now*, **actuellement.** *Now this, now that*, **tantôt ceci, tantôt cela**; **tantôt**, *by and bye* and also *some time ago*, **tout à l'heure**, *presently* and also *a moment ago.* The last two adverbs apply both to the *past* and the *future.*

Now, introductory conjunction, is **or.**

De bonne heure, early; **de meilleure heure**, earlier.

EXERCISE 98.

Il ne reviendra pas de sitôt (*very soon*).—Aussitôt que vous verrez la baronne vous servirez le déjeuner.—Aussitôt dit, aussitôt fait (*No sooner, &c.*). — Nous passons l'été tantôt à la campagne, tantôt au bord de la mer.—Moi, je voyage plutôt sur le continent.—Il était ici tout à l'heure; il reviendra tantôt.—Monsieur le président est en voyage actuellement.—Or, il me disait un jour: "Ne vous découragez pas, vous réussirez tôt ou tard."—L'orage éclata plus tôt que je ne (Ex. 28) croyais.

You are always late; can you not come earlier?—We are continually at (*en*) war, now in Asia, now in Africa.—I would rather tell it him (by word of mouth) (*de vive voix*).—It will rain presently.—Show me your letter as soon as it is (*Fut.*) done (*finished*).—Now, it happened one day that . . .—The master is rather angry with you; he will punish you sooner or later.—That lazy [fellow] goes to bed early and gets up late.—I will do it by and bye.—But you said no (*que non*) a moment ago.

PREPOSITIONS.

493. Prepositions, whether *simple* or *compound*,—that is, consisting of one word or more,—may be divided into the following classes:—

494. Prepositions governing the noun after them without any other preposition :—

à,	*to, at.*
avant,	*before (time).*
attendu,	*considering.*
après,	*after.*
à travers,	*through.*
avec,	*with.*
chez,	*at, to, among, &c.*
contre,	*against.*
concernant,	*concerning.*
dans,	*in* (before an article).
de,	*of, from, with.*
dès,	*from (time).*
devant,	*before (place).*
derrière,	*behind.*
depuis,	*since.*
de dessus,	*from upon.*
de dessous,	*from under.*
durant,	*during (all the time).*
en,	*in* (without article).
entre,	*between, among.*
fors,*	*except, save.*
excepté,	*except.*
hormis,	*except.*
jusque, †	*to, till.*
malgré,	*in spite of.*
moyennant,	*in consideration of, for.*
outre,	*besides.*
par,	*by, through.*
par-dessous,	*under.*
par-dessus,	*above, over.*
parmi,	*amongst.*
pendant,	*during (part of the time).*
pour,	*for, to (with the purpose).*
par deçà,	*on this side of.*
par delà,	*beyond, on the other side of.*
sans,	*without.*
sous,	*under.*
suivant, selon,	*according to.*
sur,	*upon, on, about.*
sauf,	*save, except, but for.*
touchant,	*concerning.*
vu,	*seen, considering.*
vers,	*towards (movement).*
envers,	*towards, to (morally).*

495. À, DE, EN are repeated before each noun when there are several.

* Obsolete, but well known from the letter of Francis I. after Pavia : "Tout est perdu fors l'honneur."

† With adverbs and prepositions principally : *jusque là*, till then, so far ; *jusqu'hier*, till yesterday ; *jusque chez moi*, as far as my house.

496. Remarks. — En also expresses the time an action occupies; as, Je le ferai en huit jours, *I shall require a week to do it*; dans, the time which will elapse before the action begins; as, Je partirai dans huit jours, I *shall start in a week's time.*

497. Vers means also *about*; Il arrivera vers midi, *He will arrive about noon*; but, *about an hour,* une heure environ.

Chez = at the house of, at home Il est chez lui, *He is at home*; Je vais chez mon père, I *am going to my father's.*

D'entre; as in, Beaucoup d'entre vous, *Many of you.*

EXERCISE 99.

Il le fera moyennant salaire.—Sauf le respect que je vous dois.—Il a eu tort selon moi.—Les exercices du corps étaient en honneur chez les anciens.—Il tomba entre les mains de ses ennemis.—Nous nous mîmes en route dès le point du jour.—Il a habité notre maison durant notre absence.—Avec un bon cheval on peut faire ce trajet en deux heures environ.—Les vacances commenceront dans trois semaines. — Apprenez que, suivant le dire d'un ancien, *il faut manger pour vivre et non pas vivre pour manger* (Molière).

He wrote to me concerning that affair.—They set out in spite of us.—She is too indulgent towards her children. — He behaved according to the laws of honour.—He was found among the dead.—It is (*C'est à*) about thirty miles from this (*here*). — He turned towards me.—He appeared before his accusers.—All that is under heaven.—At work before daylight.—Do that for me.—We conquered notwithstanding the number.—Know [how] to struggle against misfortune.—I thought so until yesterday.—They will have done

(*finished*) in an hour.—They will not be able to do that work in one day.—How many of you are English?—I will be at your house by (*à*) half-past ten.—They are never at home [in] the morning.

498. Prepositions accompanied by *de*:—

autour de,	*around, about.*	au travers de,	*through (violence).*
au-dessus de,	*above.*	à moins de,	*unless.*
au-dessous de,	*below.*	à l'insu de,*	*unknown to.*
à l'égard de,	*with respect to.*	en dépit de,	*in spite of.*
au-devant de,	*before.*	en deçà de,	*on this side of.*
à côté de,	*near.*	en face de,	*opposite.*
à force de,	*by dint of.*	faute de,	*for want of.*
à fleur de,	*on a level with.*	le long de,	*along.*
auprès de,	*near.*	près de,†	*near.*
à cause de,	*on account of.*	proche de,†	*near.*
au delà de,	*beyond.*	vis-à-vis de,†	*opposite.*
à l'abri de,	*sheltered from.*		

499. Prepositions accompanied by *à*:—

jusqu'à, jusques à (old),‡	*till, to.*	par rapport à,	*with regard to.*
		quant à,	*as for, as to.*
		eu égard à,	*with regard to.*

EXERCISE 100.

Nous avons réussi au delà de toute espérance.—Les troupes françaises restèrent en deçà de la rivière.—Beaucoup de blessés sont morts sur le champ de bataille faute de soins.—On voyait tout le long de la route des objets de toutes sortes que les fuyards avaient jetés.—Ils ne sont pas riches, mais ils sont à l'abri du besoin. — Mettez-vous à l'abri. — Vatel monte à sa chambre, met son épée contre la porte, et se la passe au travers du cœur (Mme de Sévigné).—En toute chose il faut considérer la fin (La Fontaine).

* Or with a possessive pronoun, as, *à mon insu*, unknown to me.

† These prepositions are also used in conversation, addresses, &c., without *de*; *Près Paris, proche la maison, vis-à-vis l'église.*

‡ Common only in, *jusques à quand?* How long?

We were sheltered from the rain. — By dint of exertion (*persévérance*) the fire was put out. — Some robbers were lurking about (*around*) the house.—The ball went (*passed*) through the wall. — He did it unknown to his friends. — He lives opposite our windows.—They passed near us without bowing [to] us.—Till when shall we wait for you?—As for me, I do not approve [of] this measure.—With regard to your remark.—"All is lost save honour," wrote Francis I. to his mother after the disastrous defeat of Pavia.—Come [and] sit (*seat yourself*) beside me.

CONJUNCTIONS.

500. French *Conjunctions* and *conjunctive expressions* may be divided into the following classes :—

501. Conjunctions which require the Infinitive :—

afin de,	*in order to.*	de peur de,	*for fear of.*
à moins de,	*unless.*	loin de,	*far from.*
avant de,	*before.*	plutôt que de,	*rather than.*
de crainte de,	*for fear of.*		

They end in *de*; the first five have corresponding forms in *que* when the subject has to be expressed.

502. Conjunctions governing the Indicative Mood :—

à cause que,	*because.*	comme si,	*as if.*
à ce que,	*according to what.*	depuis que,	*since.*
		dès que,	*as soon as.*
à condition que,	*on condition that.*	de sorte que,	*so that.*
		lorsque,	*when.*
ainsi que,	*as, as well as.*	parce que,	*because.*
à mesure que,	*in proportion as.*	pendant que,	*whilst.*
après que,	*after.*	peut-être que,	*perhaps.*
attendu que,	*considering that.*	outre que,	*besides.*
au lieu que,	*whereas.*	puisque,	*since.*
aussitôt que,	*as soon as.*	tandis que,	*whilst.*
autant que,	*as much as.*	tant que,	*so long as.*
comme,	*as.*	vu que,	*considering that.*

503. Conjunctions governing the Subjunctive Mood :

afin que,	*in order that.*	non que,	*not that.*
à moins que,	*unless.*	pour que,	*in order that, &c.*
avant que,	*before.*	pour peu que,	*if...ever so little.*
bien que,	*although.*	pourvu que,	*provided.*
bien loin que,	*very far from.*	quoique,†	*although.*
de peur que,	*for fear that,*	sans que,	*without.*
de crainte que	*lest.*	soit que,	*whether.*
en cas que,	*in case that.*	supposé que,	*suppose.*
encore que,	*although.*	tant s'en faut que,	*far from.*
jusqu'à ce que,	**until.*		

A moins que, de peur que, de crainte que, require *ne* before the next verb.‡

504. Conjunctions which are followed sometimes by the Indicative, sometimes by the Subjunctive Mood :—

de manière que,	*so that.*	sinon que,	*unless.*
de sorte que,		si ce n'est que,	*except that.*
en sorte que,		tellement que,	*so that.*

505. Notice also the following :—

car,§	*for.*	ni . . . ni,	*neither . . . nor.*
cependant,	*however, yet.*	non plus,‖	*neither, either.*
pourtant,		or,	*now.*
donc,	*then, therefore.*	ou,	*or.*
et . . . et,	*both . . . and.*	ou . . . ou,	*either . . . or.*
mais,	*but.*	soit . . . soit,	
ni,	*nor.*	si,	*if, whether.*

* Some authorities allow the Indicative when speaking of a certain fact ; as, *Il attendit jusqu'à ce que je revins.*

† Distinguish from *quoi que* (whatever), which also takes the Subjunctive ; as, *Quoi qu'il dise,* Whatever he may say (237).

‡ The same exceptions as in the case of *craindre* (438).

§ Avoid confusing with *pour,* the preposition.

‖ As in, *Ni moi non plus,* Nor I either (or, Nor do I ; Neither am I, &c.) ; *Il ne le sait pas non plus,* He does not know it either.

506. Note that que alone is often used to avoid the repetition of a long conjunctive expression or when the force is clear, but *que* governs the same mood as the full expression would require; e.g., *Attendez que je revienne,* Wait till I return. *Quand on est riche et qu'on est généreux.*

507. Si is an exception to this principle, the *que* which replaces it requiring the Subjunctive; as, "*S'il fait beau et que vous n'ayez rien à faire . . .*" If it is fine and if you have nothing to do . . .

Si is not generally followed by either the Future or the Subjunctive.

EXERCISE 101.

Travaillez de manière qu'il soit content de vous.—Ils ont bien travaillé de sorte que je suis content d'eux.—Je n'aime pas beaucoup ce monsieur.—Ni moi non plus.—Prenez votre parapluie en cas qu'il pleuve.—Je vous préviendrai dès que je les verrai venir.—On le surveille jour et nuit de crainte qu'il ne se tue.—"Bien," dit-on, "qu'il nous ait nui, le peuple encor le révère" (Béranger).—" . . . Quoique j'aimasse mieux rester, car ce n'est pas là mon ouvrage, mais il faut que j'aille, parce que mon Seigneur le veut."

(Jeanne d'Arc.)

I say so (*it*) in order to convince you.—I shall call on you before setting out.—For fear of displeasing him, I shall go immediately.—Perhaps you are mistaken.—When he saw me, he stopped.—I believe you because you say so.—Until you return.—In order that he may come.—Before God created the world.—Read the rule for fear of going wrong.—Although I have written to him often he does not answer.—We shall send (*there*) unless he comes.—If your father comes and if he is not too busy, I shall be very much pleased to see him.—We shall not go either.—Yet you are his friends.

INTERJECTIONS.

508. The following are some of the commonest Interjections and exclamations :—

Oh!	*Oh!*
O! (vocative)	*O!*
Ah!	*Ah!*
Bon!	*Good!*
Bien!	*That's right!*
Eh bien!	*Well!*
Hélas!	*Alas!*
Holà!	*Holla!*
Chut!	*Hush!*
Paix!	*Silence!*
Salut!	*Hail!*
Fi!	*Fy!*
Fi donc!	*Oh, fy!* (*Fy! fy!*)
En avant!	*Forward!*
À bas . . . !	*Down with . . . !*
Chapeaux bas!	*Hats off!*
Jamais de la vie!	*Never!* (*fam.*) / *Certainly not!* / *Oh no!*
Oh, que non!	*Oh no!*
Oh, que si!	*Oh yes!* (*contradicting*).
Courage!	*Cheer up!*
Très bien!	*Hear! hear!*
Pst!	*Hist! Hi!*
Gare!	*Take care!*
Attention!	*Look out!*
Bah!	*Nonsense!*
Ouf!	(*Fatigue, relief.*)
À la bonne heure!	*Bravo! That's right!*
Arrière!	*Stand back!*
Place!	*Make way!*
Pouah!	*Oh, horrid!* (*disgust*).
Hein?	*Eh? What?*
Aïe!	*Oh!* (*pain*).
Bis!	*Encore!*
Mon Dieu!*	*Dear me! Why!* / *Well, yes* (*embarrassment*).
Brr! (Brrr!)	(*Cold, or horror.*)
Dame!†	*Why, of course!* / *Well.*

Many more occur in Molière and other classics.

509. As we have seen, many Imperatives are used as exclamations ; as,—

* Many English-speaking people object to this exclamation, but its use is well nigh universal, and the French attach no weight to it ; *e.g.*, "Mon Dieu ! je ne dis pas non," *Well, I can't deny it.*—(Sandeau.)

† *Dame!* is neither *dame*, a lady, nor any part of *damner ;* but an old form of *Domine*, O Lord ; *Dame-Dieu*, Lord God, is common in Old French in a religious sense.

Écoutez !	*Listen ! Hark !*	Allons !	*On ! Up ! Come on !*
Voyez !	*See !*	Allons, bon !	*There now ! (annoyance).*
Va-t'en !	*Be off !*	Tiens ! (Tenez !)	*Here ! By the way !*
Allez ! (Va !)	*Away !* or *Start ! Go on ! I can tell you !**	Dites donc !	*I say ! (to arrest attention, indignation.)*
Voilà !	*There !*	Tais-toi ! Taisez-vous !	*Hold your tongue !*
Le voilà !	*There he is !* (obj. pro. precedes).		
Allons donc !	*Nonsense ! (incredulity).*		

EXERCISE 102.

Holà ! quelqu'un.—Allons, enfants de la patrie ! (R. de l'Isle).—Hein ! vous dites ? (Sandeau).—Tiens ! le voilà justement.—Allons, en avant ! la charge sonne, . . . Vive l'empereur ! (Sandeau).—Pst ! conducteur !—Brr ! quel froid il fait !—Salut à ma patrie ! (Béranger).—Il arrive chez moi sans crier, gare !—Cela les reposait bien, allez ! (A. Daudet).—Je te comprends bien, va !—Ouf ! qu'il fait chaud dehors !—"Comment, vous voulez écouter ?" "Dame ! pour entendre, il n'y a encore que cela, tu sais !" (Pailleron).

Ah ! there you are !—Well, have you at last made up your mind ? (*en prendre son parti*).—He is going to speak ; hush ! let us listen.—Oh ! what do you tell me (*there*) ?—Fy, fy ! you judge him too badly.—Oh, dear ! I am exhausted (*n'en pouvoir plus*).—Hark ! the sound (*noise*) of [foot] steps is approaching.—Courage, soldiers ! the day of victory has arrived.—I have finished all you gave me to do.—That's right !—You are going to leave Paris ? Why, yes.—Down with tyranny !—How well that actress has sung ! Encore ! encore !—All the well-known airs were encored.

* Or any equivalent ; as, *He does not care, not he !* Cela ne lui fait rien, allez !

PART II

SYNTAX

OF THE ARTICLE

510. The Definite Article is used in French, though omitted in English:—

Before nouns expressing **the whole idea, substance, species,** or **class.** In English, THE *lion,* THE *whale,* conveys the same idea, but in French it is extended to *abstract nouns, substances,* and *plurals*; as,

> **Les lions,** *lions* (the lion), i.e., the race.
> **Le fer,** *iron,* i.e., *the* metal iron.
> **La colère,** *anger,* i.e., *the* emotion of anger.

511. So also languages, arts, sciences, &c.: **le français,** *French;* but, parler français; **la botanique,** *botany,* **la poésie,** *poetry.*

512. Before **countries, continents, provinces,** and **single mountains,** just as before *seas, rivers,* and *mountain-chains* in English; thus, **la France,** *France*; **l'Allemagne,** *Germany*; **l'Amérique,** *America*; **la Normandie,** *Normandy*; **le Vésuve,** *Vesuvius*; as also, **l'Atlantique,** THE *Atlantic*; **la Tamise,** THE *Thames*; **les Alpes,** THE *Alps.*

513. REMARKS ON ISLANDS.—If an island may be considered a *country,* use the article; as, *l'Irlande, la Corse,* Corsica; *la Sardaigne,* Sardinia; *le Japon,* Japan, &c.; some more out-of-the-way islands and very small ones

take no article; as, *Cuba, Madagascar, Bornéo, Java, Chypre,* Cyprus; *Malte, Jersey,* &c.; others take *l'île de—,* as, *l'île de Man, l'île de Ré,* &c.

514. Before a few towns and the names of famous artists, singers, poets, &c.; before some female names it expresses infamy. The following important list may be repeated :—

le Caire,	Cairo.
le Havre,	Havre.
la Haye,	The Hague.
la Havane,	Havana.
la Mecque,	Mecca.
la Nouvelle-Orléans,	New Orleans.
la Rochelle,	La Rochelle (see **59**).
le Dante,	Dante.
le Tasse,	Tasso.
le Titien,	Titian.
la Patti,	Madame Patti.
la Lucca,	Madame Lucca.

Expressing infamy :—

la Borgia,	Lucrecia Borgia.
la Voisin,	Burnt alive in Paris in 1680 for sorcery and murder.

515. Before **titles, professions,** &c.—

Le roi Jean,	King John.
Le prince Victor,	Prince Victor.
Le maréchal Ney,	Marshall Ney.
Le général Faidherbe,	General Faidherbe.

Also,

Monsieur le marquis,	the Marquis.
Madame la marquise,	the Marchioness.
Monsieur le président,	President.
Monsieur le docteur,	Doctor.

Cf. English, *Sir knight, Master gardener,* and German, *Ihr Herr Vater.*

516. When a name is **preceded by an adjective, except** in the **nominative** of **address** (*vocative*); as,

le gros Pierre,	fat Peter.
la petite Jeanne,	little Jane.
le tendre Racine,	tender Racine.

Et toi aussi, petite Marie (G. Sand); and *Belle Philis!* (Molière).

517. Parts of the **body** and of animals, **plants**, &c., in the **plural**; as, **Elle a les yeux bleus,** *She has blue eyes*; **L'érable a les fleurs rouges,** *The maple has red flowers.*

The same applies in the singular in French, but we have A or AN in English **(521).**

EXERCISE 103.

Parlez-vous français? — Je vais au Havre. — Nous arrivons du Caire. — Le siège de la Rochelle dura quatorze mois.—La Bretagne est moins riche que la Normandie.—Par un beau temps on aperçoit d'ici le Mont-Blanc.—Le Bon Dieu nous viendra en aide.—Le maréchal Ney est mort, comme il a vécu, en brave.—Madagascar appartient aujourd'hui à la France. — Monsieur le président a prononcé un discours éloquent. —Expliquez-nous cela, Monsieur le savant.—Avez-vous entendu chanter la Patti?—La marquise de Brinvilliers fut décapitée, mais la Voisin, sa complice, fut brûlée vive.—Rob Roy avait les bras très longs.—J'étudie les mathématiques.

We speak English.—Men thirst (*sigh*) after honours and riches.—True pleasure consists (*resides*) in moderation. — They are learning French and German. — Ambition has led many men to their ruin.—I have climbed Mont Blanc.—I am fond of (*like*) birds.—Books are (*some*) faithful friends.—Nature is beautiful in all seasons. — Love of life is natural to man. — Good

morning, doctor; I am very glad you have come.—Dante is the author of the Divine Comedy.—Sweet France, how I should like to see thee again!—She has very small feet.—Have you studied geology?

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IS OMITTED IN FRENCH.

518. Before **feminine singular** *names of countries, after verbs of* **motion,** and after **de,** showing **extraction** or **source**; *or* when they **equal an adjective**; as,

Je vais en France,	I am going to France.
Il vient d'Amérique,	He comes from America.
Des vins de France,*	French wines.
Les côtes d'Espagne,*	The Spanish coast.

519. Before **ordinal numbers,** or *cardinals* with the *force of ordinals,* in apposition to the **names of rulers, chapters, scenes,** &c., and in **titles of books, headings**: *Charles premier, Louis quatorze, scène quatrième, page dix, Histoire de France, Voyage en Amérique.*

520. The article is omitted when the **noun forms one expression with the preceding word or words** (it will generally be found that these expressions equal one part of speech); as,

avoir faim,†	to be hungry.
porter envie,†	to bear envy.
mettre à mort,†	to put to death.
jeter en prison,†	to cast into prison.
être sans amis,	to be friendless.
travailler avec persévérance,‡	to work perseveringly.
une machine à vapeur,	a steam engine.
homicide par imprudence,	manslaughter.

NOTE.—The omission of the article is often difficult to explain; as, *Il s'occupe de botanique.*

* But the article must be used if the country is taken as a whole, and not subordinate to the first noun; as, *La capitale de la France; les malheurs de l'Irlande; la source du Nil.*

† These verbal phrases are very numerous, and can only be learned by practice and observation.

‡ But usually the indefinite article when there is an adjective; as, *avec une grande persévérance.*

Use the French Definite Article for the English Indefinite.

521. With **singular parts** of the **body** and of **plants**, &c. (**517**); as,

Cet arbre a le tronc droit,	That tree has a straight trunk.
Il a le nez long,	He has a long nose.

522. With **weights, measures,** and **nouns of number**:—

Deux francs **la livre,**	*Two francs a pound.*
Huit sous **la douzaine,**	*Four pence a dozen.*

Note.—For **time**, or so much **a head**, &c., use **par**, *by*;—Il gagne six francs **par jour**, *He earns six francs a day.* Un franc **par tête**, *One franc per head.* **Tant par an**, *So much per annum.*

The Indefinite Article is omitted

523. After the verb **être**, and such **neuter verbs** as **devenir, paraître**, &c., and before the complements of such verbs as **croire, nommer**, &c.—In this case the noun is really an *attribute of the subject*; it generally expresses a **title, nationality, profession, relationship**, &c.; as,

Il est empereur,	He is an emperor.
Cet homme est médecin,	That man is a doctor.
Vous n'êtes pas père,	You are not a father.
Je le crois honnête homme,	I believe him to be an honest man.
Il fut nommé gouverneur,	He was appointed governor.
Je suis Ecossais,	I am a Scotsman.
Il s'est fait protestant,	He has turned a protestant.

524. So also in **apposition**, particularly to **explain** the character of a **proper noun***; as,

* The Definite Article often occurs in English in this sense; as, Soult, *the* great French marshal, *Soult, grand maréchal français.*

Andromaque, tragédie de Racine,	Andromaque, a tragedy by Racine.
Leith, port d'Ecosse,	Leith, a port in Scotland.
Les Francs étaient armés d'une hache, arme terrible qu'ils lançaient souvent à la figure de leurs adversaires.	*The Franks were armed with an axe, a dreadful weapon which they often threw at the face of their adversaries.*

Note that the article is retained when the expression is inverted; as, His ally, the King of France (= The King of France, his ally), *Son allié,* LE *roi de France.* Their leader, Marshal Ney, *Leur chef,* LE *maréchal Ney.*

525. In translating *what a, like a*; as,

Quel homme!	What a man!
Vous parlez en enfant,	You speak like a child.

EXERCISE 104.

Nous sommes Anglais et touristes. — Le roi l'a nommé ambassadeur auprès de la cour d'Espagne.—Je n'aime pas les vins de France; ils sont trop légers.—De Boulogne on aperçoit les côtes d'Angleterre.—Il vient de se faire catholique.—Madame, vous ne parleriez pas ainsi si vous étiez mère.—Il nous a récité "Les Deux Pigeons," jolie fable de La Fontaine. — Cet homme parle en sage mais il se conduit en fou.—"Vous êtes orfèvre, Monsieur Josse" (Molière). — Les Français comptaient sur leur allié, le roi d'Ecosse.

My son is a doctor. — Napoleon had become an emperor.—Nice, a pretty town in the south of France. —My father is travelling in Switzerland just now.—They struggled on (*toujours*), but without hope.—The prisoners were (cruelly) put to death (or, *with a great cruelty*).—He has a large mouth and thick lips.—They died like brave [men] rather than (*que de*) surrender.—That old officer always wept when they spoke before him of the misfortunes of France.—The soldiers had great confidence in their leader, brave Mac-Mahon.

526. The Articles are generally omitted in proverbs; as, *Il y a anguille sous roche,* There is an eel under the stone (*a snake in the grass*). *Pauvreté n'esi pas vice,* Poverty is no crime.

Though generally repeated before each noun, it may be omitted to give rapidity to the style; as, *Prières, offres, menaces, rien ne l'a ébranlé,* Prayers, offers, threats, nothing moved him. This is classic.

527. The article is *invariable* before an adverbial superlative or one which expresses *degree,* not contrast of persons or things; as,

C'est le matin qu'elle est LE plus malade, } *She is worst in the morning.*

C'est auprès de ses enfants qu'elle est LE plus heureuse, } *She is happiest when with her children.*

But,

C'est LA plus heureuse des femmes, *She is the happiest of women.*

The Partitive Article.

The student is very apt to omit the Partitive Article or give it a wrong form (see **32, 33**).

Lamartine has written charming poems, } **Lamartine a écrit des poésies charmantes, or, de charmantes poésies.**

He made concessions, **Il a fait des concessions.**

Birds have wings, The (*all*) birds have (*some*) wings, } **Les oiseaux ont des ailes.**

528. The Partitive Article is always **omitted after de**; this *de* * may be required by an *adjective,* an *adverb,* a *verb,* a *verbal expression,* or a *noun of quantity, weight, measure, &c.*; as,

Une bouteille pleine d'eau, A bottle full of water.
Avoir besoin d'argent, To be in want of money.
Une abondance de vivres, An abundance of provisions.

* This *de* is the *preposition,* and NOT the *partitive article in another form.*

529. It often expresses the **instrument** or **cause**; as, **Une charrette chargée de foin,** *A cart loaded with hay.* **Il était pâle de colère,** *He was pale with rage.* (*Cf.* Latin, *Pallet metu,* He is pale with fear.)

530. List of Adverbs requiring DE,* when placed before a noun; and suppressing Partitive Article as just explained:—

assez,	*enough.*	moins,	*less, fewer.*
autant,	*as much, as many.*	pas,	*no.*
autant de ... que de	*as much (many) ... as ...*	point,	*no ... at all.*
beaucoup,	*much, very much, many.*	peu,	*little, few.*
combien?	*how much? how many?*	plus,	*more.*
que!	*how much! how many!*	tant,	*so much, so many.*
jamais,	*never.*	trop,	*too much, too many.*
		trop peu,	*too little, too few.*

EXAMPLES—

Il a beaucoup *de* courage,	*He has much courage.*
Nous avons peu *d'*amis,	*We have few friends.*
Vous prenez trop *de* peine,	*You take too much trouble.*

When there are two or more nouns, *de* is repeated before each; as, *Beaucoup de courage et de sang-froid,* Much courage and coolness.

531. But should the noun which comes after the adverb be determined by what follows, the Definite Article is used as in English; as,

Il a encore beaucoup *de l'*argent que nous lui avons donné, } *He has still much of the money which we gave to him.*

532. *Bien,* in the sense of *beaucoup,* requires the preposition *de* and the article besides; as,

Elle a bien *de la* patience,	*She has much patience.*
Bien *des* gens le pensent,	*Many people think so.*

* Of course when used with *adjectives, adverbs,* and *verbs,* there is no *de;* as, *assez riche,* rich enough; *trop vite,* too quickly; *Ils ont peu donné,* They have given little.

Plusieurs (several) is treated as an adjective, and requires no preposition, but is invariable : — *Plusieurs fois,* Several times.

EXERCISE 105.

Ce rocher est continuellement battu des flots.*—Ce poète a autant d'érudition que d'imagination.—"Que de morts!" s'écria Napoléon III. en parcourant les environs de Sedan après la capitulation. — Les montagnes sont couvertes de bruyère. — Ce jeune homme a plus d'argent que d'intelligence.—J'ai vu bien des fois M. de Lesseps entouré de ses enfants.—"Surtout pas de zèle," disait Talleyrand.—"Pas de chance, le pauvre Barberin, dit-il, pas de chance!" (Malot).—J'ai trop d'affaires en ce moment pour me charger encore de celle-là.—Que de peine nous vous avons donnée!—Un régiment d'Ecossais.

He makes much progress.—You have many enemies. —Two things are inseparable from falsehood; many promises and many apologies.—She has a great deal (*much*) of wit and grace.—How much trouble you take for me!—You make too much noise, young ladies.—So many unforeseen blows overwhelm me at once that I lose courage (*no article*).—There are few people who are better than their reputation.—That lady has as many sons as daughters, but she has not so many children as my neighbour (*feminine*).—There was a great store (*plural*) of corn, flour, and salt meat in the town (*There was in the town . . .*)

533. Remarks on the Partitive Article with an Adjective.

If an adjective precedes, *de* only; as, *D'excellent vin,* † if it follows,—usual form; *Du vin excellent.* (Not much difference in meaning).

* Not partitive.

† This rule is not always very strictly applied, especially with *bon;* as, *J'ai du bon pain.* This seems to imply that bread is naturally good.

534. When the adjective and noun blend to form one expression,—a sort of compound,—then, usual form; as, *Des grands-pères; des petits pois,* green pease; *du petit lait,* butter-milk; *des bons mots,* witty sayings; *des petits pains,* rolls (not small loaves); *des beaux esprits,* wits (men); and even, *des jeunes filles,* girls; *des jeunes gens,* young men; &c.

535. *In Negative sentences:* When negative does not bear on the noun,—full form of article; as, *Je n'ai pas de l'argent pour le dépenser follement,* I have no money to spend foolishly (I *have* money, but not for that).

536. Adjectives which relate to Indefinite Pronouns require DE, but not the article. [*Cf.* Latin, Quid novi?] *Quoi de nouveau?* What news? (What is there new?) *Qu'a-t-il fait de remarquable?* What remarkable (things) has he done? *Rien de joli,* nothing pretty. *Quelque chose d'utile,* something useful. *Cette action du président avait cela de remarquable qu'elle était sans précédent,* The president's action was remarkable in this respect that it was unprecedented. *Ce qu'il y a d'extraordinaire c'est qu'aucun historien n'en fait mention,* What is extraordinary is that no historian mentions it; *Je ne vois pas qu'il y ait là rien d'extraordinaire,* I do not see that there is anything extraordinary in that.

LA PLUPART (most, the greater part), requires the full Partitive; as, *La plupart des hommes,* most men. *La plupart du temps,* most of the time.

EXERCISE 106.

What fine [things] did you see in Italy?—The most curious thing I saw was Pompeii (*What I have seen of most curious it is Pompeii*) (*Pompéi*).—Most men die as they are born, without knowing it.—That man has done nothing great.—My godmother always gives me something useful for my name-day (Saint day).—What

is most annoying (*it*) is that we are not ready.—One has not children to make them unhappy (meaning that one should not, &c.).—The worst of him is that he is always trying to say smart things (Render: What there is of worse in (*chez*) him it is that he studies to say (*s'étudie à dire*) some witty sayings).—I see nothing witty in that.

OF THE NOUN.

537. When two nouns come together, the *last* is an adjective and agrees with the first:—

une main amie,	*a friendly hand.*
en pays ennemi,	*in the enemy's country.*
des pigeons voyageurs,	*carrier pigeons.*

538. NOTE.—This construction is much less common than in English, and is often rendered in French by *de*, or the use of a true adjective; as,

a brick wall,	un mur de brique,*
a village fair,	une foire de village, *or*, une fête villageoise,

or by a noun for the English adjective, as we have seen (76):—

a country girl,	une jeune (petite) paysanne.
a silly boy,	un petit sot.

Gender of Nouns.

539. The following have different meanings according to gender; some are of different origin:—

FRENCH WORD.	MEANING IN MASC.	MEANING IN FEM.
aigle,	eagle (*in general*),	eagle (*f.*), standard.
aune,	alder tree,	ell (*old measure*).

* Compounds of this sort are very common, and do not necessarily express what a thing is made of; as, *un tuyau de cheminée*, a chimney-pot; or of persons, *un maître d'école*, a school-master; *un enfant de chœur*, a choir-boy.

FRENCH WORD.	MEANING IN MASC.	MEANING IN FEM.
couple,	a mated pair (*birds, &c.*) or *husband and wife*,	a brace, couple, two.
crêpe,	crape, a hat band,	pancake.
faux,	forgery (adj. faux),	scythe (*falcis*).
foret,	a gimlet,	(forêt) forest.
foudre (de guerre) &c. [*figurative*].	a great warrior, &c.,	lightning, thunder-bolt.
greffe,	registry; rolls of a court of justice,	graft.
guide,	a guide,	(les guides) (*fem plu.*), the reins.
hymne,	national hymn,	church hymn.
livre,	book (*liber*),	pound, weight, and £ (*libra*). Old French, a franc.*
manche,	handle, broom-stick,	sleeve.
la Manche,		the English Channel.
mémoire,	bill, memorandum,	memory (*all senses*).
(les mémoires,	memoirs).	
mode,	mood,	fashion.
modes,		millinery.
moule,	mould, model,	mussel.
mousse,	cabin-boy,	moss, froth.
œuvre,	works of a musician, alchemy,	works (*in general, specially* books).
office,	post, office, function,	larder, pantry, servant's hall.
page,	page (*boy, man*),	page (*of book*).
pendule,	pendulum (as a scientific instrument),†	time-piece, clock.
période,	highest pitch, or point of career,	period.
personne (*pron.*),	anybody, nobody,	person.
pique,	spade (*at cards*),	pike (*lance*), spite.
poêle,	stove, pall,	frying pan.

* Still retained in a few expressions; as, *Il a dix mille livres de rentes*, He has an income of 10,000 francs (£400).

† Pendulum of a clock = *le balancier*.

poste,	situation (*post*), police station, a military post.	post (letters, and travelling by relays).
solde,	balance (*of accounts*), clearing sale,	pay (of soldiers).
somme,	nap, slumber (*somnus*),	sum, amount (*summa*).
souris,	smile (*rare*),	mouse.
sourire,	smile (*usual word*).	
tour,	turn, trick, lathe (*tornus*),	tower (*turris*).
vase,	vase (vessel),	slime, mud (*in rivers, &c.*)
vague,	void, space, vagueness,	wave.
vapeur,	steamer,*	steam.
voile,	veil,	sail.

* Un bateau à—, *understood.*

540. The following *feminine nouns* become *masculine* when *applied to men*:—

aide,	assistant,	help, aide.
critique,	critic,	criticism.
enseigne,	ensign,	signboard.
fourbe,	knave,	knavish trick, imposture.
garde,	guard, keeper, guardsman,	female nurse, keeping watch, guard (*regiment*), hilt.
manœuvre,	labourer,	manœuvre, working (trains, ships, &c.).
paillasse,	clown,	straw mattress.
pantomime,	dumbshow actor,	play in dumb show.
trompette,	trumpeter,	trumpet.

EXERCISE 107.

Une période de tranquillité suivit cette horrible crise.—Malgré tout le petit mousse était toujours actif et gai. — Cicéron était, dit-on, un véritable foudre d'éloquence.—Faites-moi bouillir une couple d'œufs à la coque.—Mon ami, la pendule du salon s'est arrêtée ; veuillez la remonter.—Le banquier a refusé de payer le chèque en déclarant que c'était un faux.—Avez-vous

lu les mémoires de Saint-Simon?—Oui, et je les ai trouvés très intéressants.—Cet homme est un fourbe ; ne vous fiez pas à lui (*or,* ne vous y fiez pas).—Nous réussirons avec l'aide puissante de Dieu.—M. Leblanc a besoin d'un aide ; présentez-vous chez lui.—La foudre est tombée sur un vieux chêne dans le fond du parc.—Le voleur fut arrêté et conduit au poste.

That knave has played me a very nasty trick.—Turn [over] the page.—I noticed that he had a crape band on (*à*) his hat.—My aunt always makes some excellent pancakes [on] (*the*) Shrove Tuesday.—The lightning has struck (*is fallen on*) several tall trees in the forest. —At that time (*moment*) Wolsey was at the height of his glory.—(*The*) "God save the Queen" is the English national anthem.—Marmion laid his (*carried the*) hand on (*à*) the hilt of his sword.—The mud smells bad when the tide is low.—Criticism is easy (*aisé*), art is difficult.—He has lost an important[2] (sum of money[1]). —An enormous wave threw the steamer against the pier.—And you like to have (*make*) a little nap after dinner (don't you)? [*n'est-ce pas?*] (Molière).—The shipwrecked sailors saw (*perceived*) a white sail on (*à*) the horizon.—Take (*carry*) this letter to the post.

541. Three nouns are masculine in the singular and feminine in the Plural :—

amour,	love,	**les amours,***	a great passion.
délice,	delight,		delights.
orgue,	organ (*musical instrument*). †		organs.‡

542. The use of **gens** requires careful study. It

* In the sense of cupids, or chubby children ; *des amours* is masculine.

† Organ of the body = *organe* (*m.*), as, *l'œil est l'organe de la vue.*

‡ The plural is often applied to one fine organ, from the idea of the plurality of the registers, or sets of pipes ; as, *Cette église a de belles orgues.*

was originally *feminine* (Latin, *gens, gentis*), and is always *feminine* in the *singular* (*la gent*), which is however rare at the present day, but common in La Fontaine's Fables, and to be found in some other well-known authors; as,

la gent ailée,	the winged tribes (*birds*).
la gent trotte-menu,	the race that runs with small steps (*mice*).
la gent qui porte le turban (Malherbe),	the race that wears the turban.

[**Gent** derives from Accusative singular, *gentem*, and **gens** from Accusative plural, *gentes*, with the *t* omitted according to an old rule].

In the plural, the sense of the word *people* has predominated, and **les gens** has become practically a masculine word, yet the old habit of using a feminine adjective with it still persists when the latter is placed **immediately before it**; as, **Les bonnes gens, les vieilles gens.** All **following words** and **distant preceding words** are **masculine**; as, **Tous ces gens-là; Des gens religieux; Les gens qui sont venus hier.**

543. Special Rule.—When GENS is preceded by an adjective which has a distinct **feminine form** (*i.e.*, which is not the same in both genders), **toutes** must be used, NOT *tous*. If there are two preceding adjectives, make both *feminine*.

Toutes ces bonnes gens,	All these good people.
Certaines vieilles gens,	Some old people.
Quelles méchantes gens!	What wicked (spiteful) people.

but,

Tous les honnêtes gens,	All honest people.
Tous ces braves gens,	All those worthy people.
Quels sont ces gens-là?	Who are those people?

544. However, there is often a *feminine* agreement *before,* and also a *masculine* agreement *after,* GENS ; as,

Toutes les vieilles gens ne sont pas soupçonneux, } All old people are not suspicious.
Ces **bonnes gens** sont assez **ennuyeux,** } Those good people are rather tiresome.

545. NOTE that compounds are always *masculine* ; as,

Les gens de lettres,	Men of letters.
Les gens de robe,	Lawyers, &c.

REMARK.—These rules are instinctively applied by the French; an error in the gender of *gens* is a foreigner's mistake.

546. Pâques, Easter, is masculine singular ; as, **à Pâques dernier** ; but *feminine plural* in, **Faire de bonnes Pâques,** *to take the Sacrament at Easter* ; and **Pâques fleuries,** *Palm Sunday* ; **La Pâque,** *feminine singular, the Passover.*

EXERCISE 108.

On n'oublie jamais ses premières amours. — La musique fait toutes mes délices.—" C'est un pays de méchantes gens qui, je crois, n'aiment personne, et en veulent surtout aux Français " (Courier).—" Les gueux, les gueux, sont des gens heureux ! " (Béranger).—" O mon pays, sois mes amours toujours ! " (Chateaubriand). Vous devriez envoyer promener (*send about their business*) tous ces gens-là.

La Fontaine calls mice the " Small-trotting race."—Those kind people wished to keep (*retenir*) us to dinner. —We will come and see you next Easter.—The Jews used to eat the Passover [with] their loins girded and a staff in (*à*) their hands (*singular*).—Who are those old people waiting in front of (*before*) that door ?—They are (*Ce sont*) poor people who are waiting [for] the distribution of (*the*) soup.—I have bought a little organ

for my drawing-room.—"Cheerfully I trust myself to the God of good * people" (Béranger).

Number of Nouns.

547. Some nouns have no plural; as, *l'innocence, l'optique,* optics; *le bercail,* the sheep-fold; *le manger et le boire,* eating and drinking; *le silence, &c.*

548. Others, and these are more troublesome to the student, have no singular:—

les alentours, *m.*,	the neighbourhood.
les archives, *f.*,	the archives.
les arrhes, *f.*,	earnest money.
les atours, *m.*,	lady's attire.
les catacombes, *f.*,	the catacombs.
les décombres, *m.*,	rubbish, débris.
les environs, *m.*,	the environs.
les frais, *m.*,	the costs, expense.
les hardes, *f.*,	poor clothes.
les mânes, *m.*,	the shades (of the dead).
les matériaux, *m.*,	the materials.
les mathématiques, *f.*,	mathematics.
les mœurs, *f.*,	customs, morals.
les obsèques, *f.*,	funeral (pompous).
les pénates, *m.*,	household gods, home.
les pierreries, *f.*,	precious stones.
les pincettes, *f.*,	tongs.
les pleurs, *m.*,†	tears (classic).
les ténèbres, *f.*,	darkness.
les vêpres, *f.*,	vespers.
les vivres, *m.*,†	provisions.

† Occur also occasionally in the singular.

549. Some plurals occur only in a set phrase; as,

être aux abois,	to be at bay.
être aux aguets,	to be on the watch.
sur ces entrefaites,	while this was going on, just then.

* The French means rather "worthy folks," "good-natured people."

550. Some in **ailles** (all *feminine*) ; as,

les fiançailles,	betrothal.	**les entrailles,**	bowels.
les tenailles,	pincers.	**les broussailles,**	brushwood.
les funérailles,	funeral.	&c.	&c.

551. Some English plurals are singular in French ; as,

trousers,	**un pantalon.**	oats,	**de l'avoine,** *f.*
stays,	**un corset.**	compasses,	**un compas.**

If the word *pair* occurs it must be omitted.

552. A few have a different meaning in the plural ; as,

le ciseau,	the chisel ;	**les ciseaux,**	scissors.
la défense,	defence, prohibition ;	**les défenses,**	tusks.
le gage,	the pledge, token ;	**les gages,**	wages.
le jour,	day, daylight ;	**les jours,**	life.
la lumière,	light ;	**les lumières**	intelligence, knowledge.
la lunette,	the telescope ;	**les lunettes,**	the spectacles.
le neveu,	nephew ;	**les neveux,**	the descendants.
la poursuite,	the pursuit ;	**les poursuites,**	proceedings-at-law.
la vacance,	the vacancy ;	**les vacances,**	the holidays.

The singular meaning may be retained in the plural when necessary ; as, *Deux jours, quatre neveux.*

EXERCISE 109.

On donne le nom de Vêpres Siciliennes au massacre des Français qui eut lieu en Sicile, le lundi de Pâques, 1282.—Plusieurs soldats avaient réussi à se cacher dans les broussailles aux alentours du château.—La frégate parvint à échapper à la flotte ennemie à la faveur des ténèbres.—On a fait à Victor Hugo des funérailles superbes. — L'empereur donna à l'ambassadeur son portrait orné de pierreries.—Vous donnerez un picotin d'avoine à mon cheval.—Dites à mon tailleur que le

pantalon qu'il m'a fait va mal. — Que j'étais donc content de revoir mes pénates !—Le malheureux fit un paquet de ses hardes et s'en alla sans mot dire (*prononcer un mot*).—" Je n'ai de goût qu'aux pleurs que tu me vois répandre " (Racine).—Elle est morte en me laissant pour gage de sa tendresse cette enfant qui fait toutes mes délices.—Une cruelle destinée a tranché le fil de ses jours.—A l'entrée des salons, Mme. B., dans ses plus beaux atours, accueillait gracieusement ses invités.

He has some talent for mathematics, but none (*point*) for botany.—Her face was bathed in (*de*) tears.—Monsieur le marquis de X. died yesterday at his residence (*hôtel*) in (*de*) the rue St Dominique; the funeral (*obsequies*) will take place [on] Saturday.—I have lost my spectacles.—I wish to live in the neighbourhood of the station.—They have begun the construction of the new quay, but the materials are arriving very slowly.—Just then a messenger [2] arrived [1] breathless (*tout hors d'haleine*).—The hunter was on the watch at the corner of the wood.—There will be a little fête on Sunday in honour (*à l'occasion*) of my daughter's betrothal.—The young lady put on her finest attire to receive her betrothed.

Plural of Proper Nouns.

553. Names of countries take the sign of the plural; as, *les deux Amériques, les Indes, les Gaules,* Gaul ; &c.

554. Names of men and women do not take the sign of the plural; as, *les deux Corneille, nos voisins les Fouchet.*

555. Except names of dynasties, and great families of antiquity; as, *les Bourbons, les Plantagenets, les Horaces, les Curiaces, les Macchabées.*

556. When an author's or artist's name is used to mean his works it becomes a common noun, though still written with a capital letter; as, *J'ai deux Virgiles dans ma bibliothèque,* I have two Virgils in my library.

557. The same applies to personages of history or fiction who personify a virtue or a vice; as, *Il y a des Harpagons dans tous les pays,* There are misers in all countries.

558. In a list of authors, statesmen, &c., each name is often preceded by *les,* but all remain singular; as, *Les Danton, les Marat, les Robespierre de la Révolution.*

Plural of Compound Nouns.

559. Nouns formed of a noun and an adjective, or two nouns, agree in both parts, even when written in one word:—

une basse-cour,	*a poultry-yard,*	des basses-cours.
un chef-lieu,	*chief town of department, arrondissement, &c.,*	des chefs-lieux.
un chou-fleur,	*a cauliflower,*	des choux-fleurs.
un grand-père,	*a grandfather,*	des grands-pères.
un petit-fils,	*a grandson,*	des petits-fils.
un beau-frère,	*a brother-in-law,*	des beaux-frères.
une belle-sœur,	*a sister-in-law,*	des belles-sœurs.
&c.	*&c.*	&c.
un bonhomme,	*an easy-going man; an old fellow; a childish sketch of a man,*	des bonshommes.
un gentilhomme,	*a nobleman,*	des gentilshommes.
un monsieur,	*a gentleman,*	des messieurs.
Monsieur,	*Sir, Mr.,*	Messieurs.
Madame,	*Madam, Mrs.,*	Mesdames.
Mademoiselle,	*Miss,*	Mesdemoiselles.

Except,

un chevau-léger (old),	*a horse guardsman*,	des chevau-légers.
un terre-plein,	*a terrace*,	des terre-pleins.

560. And feminine nouns in *grand'* ; as, grand'mère.

[This apostrophe is a philological error. Adjectives having no distinct feminine form in Latin had none either in Old French. Such was, **royal**, *regalis*; and above all, **grand**, *grandis*; thus we find *des lettres royaux* even at a comparatively late period, and *ma mère grand* (Perrault).—The apostrophe was inserted on the false assumption that an E had been suppressed.]

une grand'mère,	*a grandmother*,	des grand'mères.
une grand'tante,	*a great aunt*,	des grand'tantes.

The following are the commonest of these words :—

la grand'messe,	*high mass.*
la grand'voile,	*mainsail.*
une grand'garde,	*an outpost.*
la grand'route,*	*the high road.*
la grand'rue,*	*the high (main) street.*

The following can hardly occur in the plural :—

faire grand'chère,	*to feast.*
ce n'est pas grand'chose,	*it is no great matter.*
avoir grand'faim	*to be very hungry.*
avoir grand'soif,	*to be very thirsty.*
avoir grand'peur,	*to be very much afraid.*
à grand'peine,	*with much difficulty.*

and a few other old expressions.

561. Of two nouns joined by a preposition, the first only agrees ; as,

un chef-d'œuvre,	*a masterpiece*,	des chefs-d'œuvre.
un arc-en-ciel,	*a rainbow*,	des arcs-en-ciel (bows in the sky).
une machine à vapeur,	*a steam engine*,	des machines à vapeur.

* *Grande route*, and *grande rue*, are now used also.

In the following the preposition is understood.

un timbre-poste,	*a postage stamp,*	des timbres-poste.
un Hôtel-Dieu,*	*a hospital,*	des Hôtels-Dieu.
une malle-poste,	*a mailcoach* or *train,*	des malles-poste.

562. In words compounded of a noun and an invariable part of speech, the former alone takes the sign of the plural; as,

un avant-coureur,	*a forerunner,*	des avant-coureurs.
une arrière-garde,	*a rear-guard,*	des arrière-gardes.
un vice-roi,	*a viceroy,*	des vice-rois.

563. Nouns formed of a verb and noun are in a rather unsatisfactory state. According to the analytic principle, the noun is sometimes in the plural when the compound is in the singular; as, *un essuie-mains,* a towel (wipe hands), *un cure-dents,* toothpick (a pick teeth), and often in the singular when the compound is plural; as, *des porte-montre,* watch cases (things to hold a watch). This rule was never uniformly applied, and has been found inconvenient; there is at the present day a strong tendency to write the singular compound without the sign of the plural, and the plural with the inflexion; thus:—

un essuie-main,	*a kitchen towel,*	des essuie-mains.
un cure-dent,	*a toothpick,*	des cure-dents.
un couvre-pied,	*a bed-quilt,*	des couvre-pieds.

564. This is only a step towards making these words into one, as has already been done in the case of *portefeuille,* a portfolio, and many others; as,

un portefeuille,	*a portfolio,*	des portefeuilles.
un passeport,	*a passport,*	des passeports.
un pourboire.	*a tip, gratuity.*	des pourboires.

* Hôtel-Dieu is a kind of proper name applied to some particular hospitals only; as, *L'Hôtel-Dieu de Paris se trouve sur l'île de la Cité, près de la cathédrale de Notre-Dame.* It is rare in the plural; usual sense, *des hôpitaux.*

565. When the noun can only apply to one object in the singular, there is less difficulty ; as,

un garde-feu, *a fire-guard* (*fender*), des garde-feux.

However, many remain invariable **(567)**.

566. When there is difficulty in discriminating, it is best to avoid the use of the plural noun in the singular of the compound.

un garde-fou,	*a hand-rail*,	des garde-fous.
un tire-bouton,	*a button-hook*,	des tire-boutons.
un tire-bouchon,	*a corkscrew*,	des tire-bouchons.
un tire-botte,	*a boot-jack*,	des tire-bottes.
un porte-cigare,	*a cigar holder, case*,	des porte-cigares.

Some of the commonest of these nouns are formed with, *garde*, keep ; *porte*, carry ; and *tire*, draw, pull.

567. In many cases, especially with *porte*, the true noun is understood, and then the compound remains invariable ; as,

un porte-plume,	*a penholder* (a thing) to carry a pen.
des porte-plume,	*penholders* (things) ,,
un porte-étendard,	*a standard-bearer* (a man who) bears the standard.
des porte-étendard,	*standard-bearers* (men who) bear the standard.
un réveille-matin,	*an alarm clock* (a clock) } to wake one in
des réveille-matin,	*alarm clocks* (clocks) } the morning.
un porte-monnaie,	*a purse* (a thing) to carry coin.
des porte-monnaie,	*purses* (things) ,,
un garde-manger,	*a meat safe* (a safe) to keep meat.
des garde-manger,	*meat safes* (safes) ,,
un porte-allumettes,	*a match stand* (a stand) to hold matches.
des porte-allumettes,	*match stands* (stands) ,,

568. NOTE.—Nouns of this class are all masculine, even when the simple noun is feminine, except: une perce-neige, *a snowdrop*, des perce-neige ; manifestly, une *fleur* qui perce la neige.

569. Many other compound nouns of other classes are invariable from the absence of the true noun ; as,

un *or* des tête-à-tête,	*private interviews.*
un *or* des vis-à-vis,	*people opposite.*
un *or* des coq-à-l'âne,	*cock and bull (stories).*
un *or* des ci-devant,	*those who were something formerly* (a term applied to the nobility during the first republic).
un *or* des pied-à-terre,	*temporary lodging* (apartment in town or country occasionally used).

570. Many foreign words, notably names of Latin prayers, are also invariable ; as,

un *or* des credo,	*creeds.*
un *or* des Ave,	*Ave Maria.*
un *or* des Te Deum,	*Te Deums.*
un *or* des post-scriptum,	*post-script.*
un *or* des veto,	*veto* (refusal of royal assent to a law, &c.)
un *or* des in-octavo,	*octavos* (books).

571. Note.—When *garde* stands for a man or a woman, it takes the sign of the plural, as we have seen :—

un garde-barrière,	*a railway crossing keeper,*	des gardes-barrières.
un garde-côte,	*a coast guard,*	des gardes-côtes.
une garde-malade,	*a female sick-nurse,*	des gardes-malades.

572. Invariable parts of speech taken as nouns, letters, and phrases, are invariable ; as,

les si, les pourquoi, les comment,	*if's, why's, how's.*
les on dit,	*hearsay.*
le qu'en dira-t-on,	*what will people say.*
On écrit ce mot avec deux *l*,	*That word is written with two* l's.

EXERCISE 110.

On voit s'assembler de gros nuages noirs, avant-coureurs de la tempête. — Je viens d'acheter deux réveille-matin ; l'un pour ma chambre à coucher et l'autre pour celle de mon fils.—Ceux qui ont écrit l'histoire en France et en Espagne n'étaient pas des Tacites (Voltaire).—La Seine a des Bourbons, le Tibre a des Césars (Boileau).—On ne croit plus aujourd'hui aux loups-garous.—Ces porte-plume sont en ivoire.—Ce sont des on dit ; n'y faites (*pay*) pas attention.—On a donné une jolie fête pour le baptême de l'enfant ; les deux grand'mères y ont assisté.—Assez de " mais " et de " si " comme cela.—Voici deux beaux choux-fleurs que le jardinier vient de couper.—L'arrière-garde de l'armée de Charlemagne fut surprise dans une gorge des Pyrénées.—Etes-vous blessé, mon général ?—Je suis touché, mais ce n'est pas grand'chose.

We followed the high road for two hours.—I am going to hear (*the*) High Mass at Notre Dame.—We had great difficulty in finding our way through the forest.—I am going out to buy two postage stamps of twenty-five centimes. — The first class has read, this session, two of the masterpieces of the seventeenth century.—The porters are not satisfied with (*de*) the tips you have given them.—I always take two purses when I travel.—It is said that ladies are very fond of adding (*like much to add*) post-scripts to their letters.—We met at the Louvre Madame Larisse and her two sisters-in-law.—Come, James, you must not draw [comic] figures in your French Grammar.—Montesquieu asserts that Charlemagne used to cause (*to sell*) the eggs of the poultry-yards of his domains [to be sold].—Louis made Boileaus, Augustus Virgils (Voltaire).—We have spoken enough about the Stamplys (Sandeau).

OF THE ADJECTIVE

573. We have seen that the adjective always agrees in French with the noun or pronoun it qualifies.

When an adjective relates to two or more nouns it is put in the plural, and agrees with the nouns in gender if they have the same; if they are of different genders, then masculine; as,

Votre mère et votre tante sont également bonnes.
Votre frère et votre sœur sont très intelligents.

NOTE.—This applies also to participles.

574. When several nouns mark a gradation, in which the last word is the most powerful and comprehensive, the adjective is often made to agree with that noun only; as, *Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, une occupation continuelle* (Massillon).

575. In compound adjectives, if both parts really qualify, both agree; as,

des pommes aigres-douces,	*apples both tart and sweet.*
des hommes ivres-morts,	*men dead-drunk.*

Except,

mort-né,	*still-born.*
des enfants mort-nés,	(*Académie*).

576. But when the first is adverbial or really an adverb, the last word only agrees; as,

une fille nouveau-née,	*a new-born girl* (*daughter*).
des enfants bien-aimés,	*well-loved children.*

Except,

des fleurs fraîches-cueillies,	*freshly-gathered flowers.*

and *tout-puissant*, almighty, *toute-puissante*, *tout-puissants*,* *toutes-puissantes*.

* This is in accordance with the use of *tout* as an adverb (234).

577. In the following the last word is really a noun, which the first qualifies as an adjective; or they may be considered as compound nouns:—

les nouveaux venus,	*the new comers.*
la nouvelle mariée,	*the bride.*
les nouveaux mariés,	*the newly-married couple.*

(Contrast—*des* (*enfants*) *nouveau-nés,* NÉS could not be a noun, but we say, *Soyez les bienvenus,* be welcome; *le marié,* the bridegroom; *la mariée,* the bride.)

578. Compound adjectives of colour remain invariable, because the first part of the word is a noun which the second qualifies; as,

	une étoffe bleu-clair,	*a light blue stuff* (*material*).
i.e.,	une étoffe d'un bleu clair.	
	des rubans rouge-foncé,	*dark red ribbons.*

579. Names of things having a characteristic colour are often used as adjectives, as in English, they generally remain unchanged, through a similar ellipsis, whether simple or compound; as,

des gants paille,	*straw-coloured gloves.*
des gants gris-perle,	*pearl-gray gloves.*
des rubans cerise,	*cherry-coloured ribbons.*
des habits vert-pomme,	*apple-green coats.*

Such are—*marron,* chestnut; *noisette,* nut brown; *olive,* olive; *orange,* orange; *serin,* canary yellow, &c.

Amarante, purple-red; *cramoisi,* crimson; *écarlate,* scarlet; *garance,* red, and *rose,* pink, agree like ordinary adjectives.

580. NU, *naked, bare,* and DEMI, *half,* are treated as invariable prefixes when they precede the noun, and are united to it by a hyphen, but they agree in the

usual way when they follow :—*Ils sont nu-tête et nu-pieds,* but, *Ils avaient les pieds nus* ; *une demi-livre,* half-a-pound ; but, *deux livres et demie* (*demi* cannot be plural, there is only one half).

581. Note.—*Franc de port,* prepaid, carriage paid, also agrees only when it follows ; as, *Je vous prie de m'envoyer, franc de port, les marchandises suivantes* ; *Je vous ai expédié ces marchandises franches de port.*

Franco is more used in business, and is always invariable.

582. Feu, the late (deceased), may be placed before or after the article or possessive adjective without any change of meaning, but it agrees only in the latter case (*i.e.,* when immediately preceding the noun) ; as,

la feue reine, *or* feu la reine,	*the late queen.*
les feus princes, *or* feu les princes,	*the late princes.*

583. Ci-joint, ci-inclus, herewith, enclosed, are invariable at the beginning of a sentence or before a noun used without the article, but agree after the noun or in the middle of a sentence before a noun with the article ; as,

Ci-joint quittance,	*Receipt herewith.*
Ci-inclus copie du contrat,	*Copy of the contract enclosed.*

Vous trouverez ci-joint copie de sa lettre.
but, Vous trouverez ci-jointe la copie que j'ai reçue.

Les pièces ci-jointes ont trait au procès,	*The documents enclosed have reference to the lawsuit.*

584. An adjective after two nouns joined by *de,* agrees according to sense (so also in other cases, as with *ou,* or, &c.) ; as,

des bas de laine bleus,	*blue woollen stockings.*
Le nombre des malades, déjà si grand, s'est encore accru,	*The number of the sick, already so great, has still further increased.*

EXERCISE 111.

Les petits paysans écossais courent souvent pieds nus, même au plus fort (*depth*) de l'hiver.—J'ai beaucoup connu votre feue mère ; c'était une femme charmante. —Voici un petit panier de cerises fraîches-cueillies que je vous prie de vouloir bien accepter.—Les nouveaux mariés n'ont pas assisté au bal ; ils sont partis pour Paris aussitôt le repas de noce fini.—Vous reconnaîtrez facilement ma cousine, elle a les cheveux châtain-clair et elle porte une robe bleu-foncé et un chapeau de paille noir.

(*My*) children, don't run [about] bare-headed in (*at*) the sun ; you will get (*take a*) sunstroke.—Put [on] your white straw hat.—That girl has dark blue eyes and light brown hair. — He was wearing pearl-gray gloves.—The late queen was loved by (*of*) everyone.— The cream and the butter you sold me were not fresh. —He offered her a lovely bouquet of newly-gathered flowers.—My new white dress is trimmed with cherry-coloured ribbons.—The roofs and terraces were black with people.—You will find herewith the papers you require.

585. Many adjectives are used adverbially, in which case they remain invariable. The following are some of the commonest expressions in which this occurs :—

parler haut (fort),	to speak loud.
parler bas (clair),	to speak low, clearly.
chanter faux,	to sing out of tune.
chanter juste,	to sing in tune.
sentir bon,	to smell sweet.
sentir mauvais,	to have an unpleasant smell.
acheter cher,	to buy dear.
coûter cher,	to cost dear.

voir clair (often used with **y**), } to see clearly (have a good sight). to see where one is going.
tenir ferme (bon), to stand firm.

but,

parler doucement, to speak softly, slowly.
vendre chèrement sa vie, to sell one's life dearly.
elle se tient droite, she holds herself well, sits up.

586. The adjectives *long, thick, high, &c.*, coupled with a numeral and a measure, require particular care, as there are several ways of turning these expressions.

1. Without a verb:—**Une tour haute de cinquante mètres,** *A tower 50 m. high.*

2. With *être*:—**Cette tour est haute de cinquante mètres,** *This tower is 50 m. high.*

3. With *avoir* and the measure first:—**Cette tour a cinquante mètres de haut** (or **de hauteur**).

4. With *avoir* and the nouns *length, thickness, &c.*, first:—**Cette tour a une hauteur de cinquante mètres,** *This tower has a height of 50 m.*

NOTE that in 3, *haut* can be used as a noun instead of *hauteur*, but not in 4.—**Epais,** *thick*, and **profond,** *deep*, cannot be so used; say, **d'épaisseur, de profondeur.**

REMARK.—There is no French for *shallow*; say, *La rivière est peu profonde en cet endroit*; *Ce lac manque de profondeur. Un esprit léger*, a shallow mind.

587. BY or AND in this connection are rendered by **sur**; as, *Cette salle a dix mètres de longueur sur sept de largeur*, That room is ten m. long by seven broad.

Such expressions as, *a yard longer, a head taller, two years older*, are rendered **plus long d'un mètre, plus grand de toute la tête, plus âgé de deux ans,** or, **Cette pièce a un mètre de plus,** literally: *That*

piece has a yard (*of*) *more*; **Il a deux ans de plus que son frère,** literally: *He has two years more than his brother.* So also, **C'est le plus grand de beaucoup,** *It is the largest* (*larger*) *by far.*

EXERCISE 112.

Ce jeune homme parle bien haut.—Tenez bon, mes enfants (*lads*), on vient à notre secours.—Cette jeune fille a une jolie voix, mais elle chante faux quelquefois.—Cette parole imprudente lui coûta cher.—Le réséda n'est pas une belle fleur mais il sent bien bon.—Enlevez ces fleurs; elles sentent mauvais.—" Faut-il vous parler clair? Oui. C'est que je le garde " (Andrieux).—N'y voyez-vous donc pas clair?—" Connais-tu bien Don Diègue? Oui! Parlons bas; écoute. Sais-tu que ce vieillard fut la vaillance et l'honneur de son temps?" (Corneille).—La grande porte du château n'avait que quatre mètres de large et elle était flanquée de deux tours carrées hautes de vingt mètres.—Le fossé avait une profondeur de dix pieds.—Les murailles étaient épaisses de quinze pieds.

Don't speak so loud.—Sit up, Mary.—How sweet that rose smells!—That mistake will cost them dear.—She is taller than her brother by a whole head.—This is a very shallow river.—Yes, but there are places where the water is five or six feet deep.—That table is eight feet long by five broad.—I want a plank two centimetres thick.—There is in the court of the castle an old well sixty feet deep.—Scotland is 288 miles long, and varies in breadth from 175 to 32 miles.

Degrees of Adjectives, &c.

588. A comparative adjective or adverb requires *ne* before a following verb; as,

Cette montagne est plus haute qu'elle ne paraît,	*That mountain is higher than it looks.*
Il est mieux renseigné que je ne croyais,	*He is better informed than I thought.*

REMARK.—There is no *ne* when the first part of the phrase is interrogative or negative, unless the sense of the second clause is negative also. (See end of Exercise.)

In, which generally follows the Superlative, is rendered by *de* :—

Le plus beau livre de ma bibliothèque, } *The finest book in my library.*

589. No article is used with two or more related comparatives :—

Plus je vous vois,* plus je vous aime, } *The more I see you the more I love you.*

Moins il travaille, moins il veut travailler, } *The less he works, the less he wishes to work.*

Plus je le vois, moins je l'aime, { *The more I see him the less I like him.*

NOTE.—The English adjective may only have the suffix *er* ; notice the construction in this case :—

The hotter the summer, the larger the fruits, but the less taste they have.

Plus l'été est chaud, plus les fruits sont gros, mais moins ils ont de saveur.

590. The Progressive comparative is expressed by *de plus en plus, de moins en moins.*

Le malade souffre de plus en plus, } *The patient suffers more and more.*

Elle sort de moins en moins, *She goes out less and less.*

Le sol devient de plus en plus dur à mesure qu'on descend, } *The ground gets harder and harder as one goes down.*

So much the more (less) that = *d'autant plus (moins) que.*

* We sometimes find *et* before the second clause ; as, *Plus je le vois et plus je l'aime.*

591. Remember that after *Que! Comme! Combien!* the adjective comes last; as,

Qu'elle est belle!	How fair she is!
Comme il fait froid!	How cold it is!

Put an adverb in its natural place; as, **Que ce thème est mal fait,** How badly done that exercise is.

EXERCISE 113.

"Plus-je-te-vois, plus-je-t'aime," tel est le joli nom populaire de cette mignonne fleur bleue qui s'appelle le myosotis.—En arrivant au musée, nous l'avons trouvé fermé pour cause de réparations; nous en étions d'autant plus contrariés qu'il nous était impossible de prolonger notre séjour dans cette ville.—Plus une montagne est haute, plus il a envie d'en faire l'ascension.—Il n'est pas plus riche aujourd'hui qu'il l'était il y a dix ans.—Le singe n'est pas plus de notre espèce que nous ne sommes de la sienne (Buffon).—Croyez-vous qu'un homme puisse être plus heureux que vous l'êtes depuis trois mois? (J. J. Rousseau).—Le volume énorme de leur corps [des éléphants] leur nuit moins qu'il ne leur aide à nager (Buffon).

He has some taste for literature, but he likes mathematics less and less.—The more difficult a thing is, the more* honour there is in (*à*) doing it.—The cold became more and more intense.—The less she adorns herself the fairer she is.—My boy, you are really getting lazier and lazier.—The shallower a river is, the noisier it is.—I was no richer then than I am now.—We sought (*Pret.*) our way as long (*tant*) as it was light (*made day*), but the more we sought the more we lost (*Imp.*) ourselves (Courier).—How difficult this exercise is!—How badly written that letter is!

* Remember that *more* is here an adverb of quantity (degree).

Position of Adjectives.

592. In addition to what has been already said **(109 to 114)** it may be observed that many adjectives which do not come under any special rule may be placed before or after optionally. The tendency is that they have their **strict sense after** and a more **graphic** or **emotional meaning before**; as,

un splendide hôtel,	a magnificent hotel! (admiration).
un hôtel splendide,	,, (plain statement).
ses longs cheveux noirs,	elle a **les cheveux longs,**
his long black hair (Hugo).	her hair is long.

Thus also if the sense of the adjective is **moral** or **figurative** it comes *first*; **physical,** *last.*

une tendre mère,	**de la viande tendre,**
an affectionate mother;	tender meat.
ma douce Marie,	**une orange douce,**
my sweet Mary;	a sweet orange.
un sombre désespoir,	**une couleur sombre,**
dark despair;	a dark colour.

593. The adjective also comes first when it expresses a natural and habitual quality of the noun, its use being merely to complete and strengthen the meaning :—

les vertes prairies,	the green meadows.
la blanche hermine,	white ermin.

This use is very common in poetry.

594. The following adjectives change their meaning according to their position. It will be noticed that the change is limited in many cases to a few expressions :—

	BEFORE.	AFTER.
BRAVE—	**Un brave homme,** a worthy man; (but, *un brave soldat,* a brave soldier).	**Un homme brave,** a brave man.

BEFORE.	AFTER.
CERTAIN—	
Certains événements, certain events.	**une chose certaine**, a thing which is certain.
CHER—	
ce cher livre, that dear old book !	**un livre cher**, an expensive book.
mon cher ami.	
COMMUN—	
d'une commune voix, unanimously.	**une voix commune**, a vulgar voice.
DERNIER—	
la dernière semaine des vacances, the last week of the holidays (**la dernière fois**, &c., before).	**la semaine dernière**, last week.
	le mois dernier, last month.
DIVERS—DIFFÉRENT—	
sundry, various.	different, miscellaneous.
FAUX—	
un faux ami, de la fausse monnaie, une fausse clef.	**une pièce fausse**, a counterfeit coin (after in usual sense).
FRANC—	
downright, thorough.	frank, open.
un franc coquin (knave).	**un homme franc.**
GALANT—	
un galant homme, a gentleman, an honourable man.	**un homme galant**, a ladies' man.
GRAND—	
un grand homme, a great man ; but with another adj. the sense is *tall* : **un grand homme maigre** (*thin*).	**un homme grand**, a tall man (little used).
HONNÊTE—	
good, honest, comfortable.	polite.
un honnête homme, a good (honest) man.	**un homme honnête**, a polite man.
une honnête aisance, easy circumstances.	**une réponse honnête**, a civil answer.
MAIGRE—	
meagre, poor.	thin, lean.

BEFORE.	AFTER.
MAUVAIS—	
avoir mauvais air, to look vulgar, dishonest (before in general sense).	**avoir l'air mauvais**, to look ill-tempered, vicious.
MÉCHANT—	
poor, worthless.	spiteful, malicious.
une méchante épigramme.	**une épigramme méchante.**
NOUVEAU*—	
fresh, another, a different one.	new, new fashion, newly invented.
un nouvel habit, another coat.	**un habit nouveau**, a coat in a new style.
un nouveau vin, different wine.	**du vin nouveau**, the new season's wine.
PAUVRE—	
weak, wretched, worthless, and poor (pity).	indigent, poor.
ce pauvre jeune homme.	**un jeune homme pauvre.**
un pauvre poète (no genius).	**un poète pauvre** (no money).
PETIT—	
small, short.	mean, contemptible.
PLAISANT—	
ridiculous, impertinent.	funny, amusing.
PLEIN—	
open, in the midst of, right in.	full, covered with.
en plein jour, in broad daylight.	**elle avait les yeux pleins de larmes.**
en pleine fête, in the midst of the merry-making.	**un seau plein d'eau**, a pail full of water.
en pleine figure, right in the face.	**une bouteille pleine**, a full bottle.
en plein air, in the open air.	**il avait les mains pleines de sang**, his hands were covered with blood.
en pleine mer, in the open sea.	

* Remember that newly made, brand new, is *neuf*.

BEFORE.	AFTER.
PROPRE—	
own, precise.	clean.
de ses propres mains, with his own hands.	**il n'a jamais les mains propres.**
SEUL—	
one, only, single.	alone (sometimes this sense also *before*).
un seul homme, one man.	**un homme seul.**
SIMPLE—	
mere, only (adv.) common.	simple, silly.
un simple soldat, a common soldier, only a soldier.	**une raison simple.**
TRISTE—	
poor, contemptible.	sad, dull.
un triste sire, a contemptible fellow.	**un temps triste**, dull weather.
(also *sad* of things).	**une figure triste.**
VÉRITABLE—*	
sincere, genuine.	true, real.
de véritable vin d'Espagne.	**une histoire véritable.**
VRAI—	
real, thorough, regular.	true.
un vrai conte, a regular story (a make up).	**une chose vraie**, a fact.
un vrai fou, a reckless fellow (regular madman).	**une nouvelle vraie**, true news.

EXERCISE 114.

(*a*) Ma douce Marie . . . lève en chantant ses yeux bleus (de Musset).—Oh! l'abominable homme! (Molière) —A l'entrée des ambassadeurs toute l'assemblée se leva d'un commun accord.—Quand je montai sur le pont le lendemain matin notre navire se trouvait déjà en pleine mer.—Rien ne put arrêter l'élan de cette armée en plein triomphe.—Le coup l'atteignit en plein cœur.—Il faut qu'un galant homme ait toujours grand empire sur ces démangeaisons (*longings*) qui nous prennent d'écrire (Molière).

* The difference is not so clear as some authorities would have us believe.

(*b*) N'allez point quitter . . . le nom que vous avez d'honnête homme pour prendre . . . celui de misérable auteur (id.).—Le magasin était rempli d'une quantité prodigieuse d'objets divers. — Un sombre désespoir brillait dans ses yeux.—Le pauvre esprit de femme, et le sec entretien ! (Molière).—Avez-vous lu le "Roman d'un jeune homme pauvre" d'Octave Feuillet?—Tendre épouse ! c'est toi qu'appelait son amour (Delille, after Virgil).—Le sol ne donne que de maigres récoltes de seigle et d'avoine. — Blonde enfant qui deviendras femme (Leconte de Lisle).

A tall, thin man entered his room and caused him some fright.—It was only the barber of the Bastille.—That little man has a vulgar look.—I think he looks spiteful (*Me, I find to him, &c.*).—It is during the last week of the session that the examinations take place.—Your friend X. is certainly a tall man, but I do not think he is a great man.—The ball took place in the open air.—Is that gentleman (monsieur) a poet?—He is a gentleman (*honourable man*), but he is a poor poet.—He has published a few wretched verses.—Is that a true story?—No, it is rather a regular make up.—The king was suspected of having killed his nephew with his own hand.

Complement of Adjectives.

595. Nothing but long practice will teach thoroughly the prepositions used after certain adjectives and verbs. The following remarks may, however, be of some service.

The *instrument* or *agent* which brings about a state expressed by an adjective or participle is governed by DE (528, 529); as,

une bouteille pleine de vin,	a bottle full of wine.
il était rouge de colère,	he was red with anger.
accablé de douleur,	overwhelmed with grief.

596. Many *emotions* and *sensations* take *de*; as,

content de,	pleased with.
curieux de,	curious to.
las (fatigué) de,	weary (tired) of (with).
désolé de,	very sorry to, for.
sûr de,	sure to, of.
fâché de,	sorry for.

But,

fâché contre,	angry with.

597. Tendency, proneness, fitness, habit, require *à*; as,

enclin à,	inclined to.
propre à,	good for, suitable, fit.
exact à,	punctual in.
attentif à,	attentive in.
lent à,	slow in.
âpre à,	eager for.

598. Important Rule.—No noun can be governed by two different prepositions in French. In such cases put the noun after the first and then use a pronoun.

Ce jeune homme est digne d'éloges et (il) **y** est sensible, (digne de, sensible à) } *That young man is worthy of, and sensible to, praise.*

or reversed :—

Ce jeune homme est sensible aux éloges et (il) en est digne, } *That young man is sensible to, and worthy of, praise.*

But,

Ce père est utile et cher à sa famille (utile à *and* cher à). } *That father is useful and dear to his family.*

599. So also with verbs :—*Le général assiégea et s'empara de la ville,* is wrong; it should be, *Le général assiégea la ville et s'en empara,* The general besieged and got possession of the town, because *assiéger* takes no preposition, and *s'emparer* governs *de.*

NOTICE the difference between, *Une chose facile à faire,* and *Il est facile de faire cela; Des fruits bons à manger,* and *Il est bon de manger des fruits.*

EXERCISE 115.

C'est une fille propre aux choses qu'elle fait,
Et vous me la chassez pour un maigre sujet (Molière).

Etes-vous sûr de votre ami?—Oui, comme de moi-même.—Je ne suis pas contente des progrès de mon fils.—Il ne faut pas être fâchée contre lui, il fait [de] son mieux.—Que vous êtes lents à me comprendre?—Il est âpre au gain.—Nous serons exacts à observer tout ce que vous nous avez commandé.—Je serais désolé de lui refuser ce petit service.—La gazelle a des yeux pleins de douceur.—Je suis fatigué de courir.

I am not sure to succeed in it.—That tool is not suitable for the use [to] which you wish to put it (*make of it*).—Why are you angry with her?—I am angry with her because she is not attentive in doing what I tell her.—That child is always very slow in writing his exercise.—The farmer's wife gave us a basket full of big, ripe apples.—Little Henry is inclined to be lazy (*to laziness*).—That poor widow is overwhelmed with grief.—How glad I am to see you!

OF PRONOUNS.

600. Strictly, *chacun, chacune,* requires *son, sa, ses,* and *le, la, lui,* after it, but there are cases when *leur, leurs,* and plural pronouns are used. Thus when *chacun* is merely introduced into the phrase and is not essential to it.

Cf. 1. *Ils ont apporté des offrandes* CHACUN *selon* SES *moyens.*

2. *Ils ont apporté* CHACUN LEURS *offrandes.*

In the latter case, *chacun* could be omitted, but not in the former.

1. *La loi lie tous les hommes* CHACUN *en ce qui* LE *concerne* (Laveaux).

2. *Ils se rendirent* CHACUN *au poste qui* LEUR *était assigné* (id.).

For the same reason.

Leur is generally used when an intransitive verb is followed by a necessary complement; as, *Il vit les ombres d'Homère et d'Orphée qui sortaient* CHACUNE *de* LEUR *côté d'un riant bosquet.*

When the verb is in the 1st or 2nd person, *notre, nos*; *votre, vos,* must be used:—*Vous devez secourir les pauvres* CHACUN *selon* VOS *moyens.*

601. When the article is used instead of the possessive adjective with a part of the body, &c., a dative pronoun must be added if the limb, &c., be acted upon from without, but not if the movement is confined to itself. Thus without the pronoun:—

lever la tête,	to raise the head.
baisser les yeux,	to look down.
tourner la tête,	to look round.
ouvrir la bouche,	to open one's mouth.
tendre la main,	to hold out one's hand; to beg.

With the dative pronoun:—

Il me prit la main,	He took my hand.
Sa mère lui lava la figure,	His mother washed his face.
On leur trancha la tête,*	Their heads were cut off.

602. The pronoun is often reflexive, but the participle never agrees with it in this construction, as it is a dative:—

Je me suis lavé les mains,	I have washed my hands.
Elle s'est brossé les cheveux,	She has brushed her hair.

It may be reciprocal:—

Ils se sont donné (serré) la main, } They shook hands.

* Notice singular, one head each.

There are cases in which the possessive adjective is used as in English for clearness or emphasis; as, *Mon bras cassé me fait beaucoup souffrir.*

603. The English double genitive does not exist in French.

Render, *a friend of his,* by, *one of his friends,* **un de ses amis.** *You have got a book of mine,* **C'est un de mes livres que vous avez là**; or, **Vous avez un de mes livres.** So with a noun:—*A friend of my brother's,* **Un des amis de mon frère.**

604. Some of these English phrases have no true equivalent in French; as, *That brother of yours,* **Votre frère.** (*Cf.* however, *Mon traître de fils.*—Molière.)

An old French construction is still sometimes used jestingly: **Un mien cousin,** A cousin of mine.

Remember that possessive pronouns with *to be* are usually rendered by *à* and the disjunctive form; as, *That is mine,* **Cela est à moi.** *Whose gloves are those?* **A qui sont ces gants?**

605. When *le* stands for a clause, an adjective, or a noun used as an attribute, it is invariable; as, *Es-tu heureuse?—Oui, je le suis.—Êtes-vous mère?—Non, je ne le suis pas. Nous étions libres, mais nous ne le sommes plus.*

EXERCISE 116.

Elle est tombée dans l'escalier et s'est démis le poignet.—Le médecin le lui a remis promptement, mais elle en a encore le bras tout enflé.—Il donna tête baissée (*ran carelessly*) dans le piège que lui tendaient (*laid*) ses ennemis.—Pierre, tu as oublié de te brosser les dents ce matin.—Les Sarrasins crevèrent les yeux à leurs prisonniers. — Peuples, formez une sainte alliance, et donnez-vous la main (Béranger).

He broke his arm in falling on a slide.—Leave those things (*effets*) alone (*tranquille*), they are mine.—Whose

castle is that?—It belongs (*is*) to the Marquis de Carabas.—Do you know that young man?—Oh (Why) yes; he is a cousin of mine.—I have found a handkerchief of yours.—That handkerchief is not mine, it is Lucy's.—Young ladies, remain each in your place until the bell rings.—Each of those girls must remain in the seat (place) which is appointed her (*indiquer*).

OF THE VERB

Reflexive or Pronominal Verbs

606. Besides *Accidentally Reflected verbs*, already mentioned **(313)**, there are **Essentially Pronominal** and **Idiomatically Reflected** verbs.

An Essentially Pronominal verb is one which is found in no other form. They form one of the most characteristic French idioms (*gallicismes*), and should be carefully studied. Such are :—

s'abstenir de,	*to abstain from.*
s'accroupir,	*to crouch down.*
s'acheminer vers,	*to make one's way towards.*
s'adonner à,	*to give oneself up to.*
s'agenouiller,	*to kneel.*
s'arroger,	*to assume, to take upon oneself.*
se blottir,	*to cower, to squat down.*
se cabrer,	*to rear (as a horse).*
se démener,	*to bestir oneself.*
s'écrier,	*to exclaim, to cry out.*
se récrier,	*to protest.*
s'écrouler,	*to crumble to the ground.*
s'efforcer de,	*to strive.*
s'élancer,	*to spring forward.*
s'emparer de,	*to get possession of, to seize upon.*
s'empresser de,	*to hasten, to be eager.*
s'ensuivre (il s'ensuit)	*to follow (it follows).*
s'envoler,	*to fly away.*
s'évader,	*to escape.*

s'évanouir,	*to faint, to vanish.*
s'évertuer à,	*to do one's utmost.*
s'extasier,	*to go into ecstasies.*
se formaliser de,	*to take offence at.*
se fier à,	*to trust.*
se méfier de,	*to mistrust.*
se défier de,	*to distrust.*
s'immiscer dans,	*to interfere.*
s'ingénier à,	*to strive, to find means.*
se méprendre sur,	*to be mistaken in, concerning.*
se moquer de,	*to laugh at.*
s'obstiner à,	*to persist in.*
se prélasser,	*to put oneself into a comfortable yet dignified position.*
se ratatiner,	*to shrivel up.*
se raviser,	*to think better of it.*
se renfrogner,	*to scowl.*
se réfugier,	*to take (seek) refuge.*
se rengorger,	*to strut like a pigeon* (figuratively). *to assume airs of importance.*
se repentir de,	*to repent of.*
se souvenir de,*	*to remember.*
se tapir,	*to squat, to hide oneself away.*

607. A considerable number of verbs are rare in the simple form; as,

s'acharner à, sur,	*to be bent upon, zealous, furious.*
s'enorgueillir,	*to pride oneself.*

It will be noticed that many of the above are derived from simple verbs by the addition of a prefix; as,

suivre,	*to follow,*	s'ensuivre.
voler,	*to fly,*	s'envoler.
aviser,	*to think over,*	se raviser.

The verb *s'en aller*, to go away, might be considered as belonging to this class, but the *en* has remained separate.

* This verb is also used impersonally; as, *Vous souvient-il?* Do you remember? *Cf. Methinks.*

608. All these verbs, except *s'arroger*, have the reflexive pronoun for their direct object, therefore their past participles agree with it in the compound tenses; as,

Elle s'est méprise sur mes intentions,	*She has mistaken my intentions.*
Ils s'étaient ravisés,	*They had thought better of it.*

609. Though these verbs do not appear in a simple form, the **past participles** of many can be used as **participial adjectives,** expressing a **state**; as,

des enfants accroupis,	*crouching children.*
un air empressé,	*an eager (willing) manner.*
une femme évanouie,	*a woman in a faint.*

EXERCISE 117.

Revise the Reflexive Conjugation (309, &c.).

Te souvient-il du lac tranquille
Qu'effleurait l'hirondelle agile ? (Chateaubriand).

Je m'acheminais tranquillement vers la gare lorsque j'aperçus deux petits enfants blottis sous une porte cochère.—Ils s'y étaient endormis.—Je m'efforçai de les réveiller et de les faire lever, mais ils s'obstinaient à rester tapis dans leur coin.—Au son de cette fanfare nos chevaux se sont cabrés; nous nous sommes évertués à les calmer.—Les fuyards s'étaient réfugiés dans un bois touffu.—Ah ! malheureuse, s'écria-t-il, tu te repentiras de t'être moquée de moi.—La chaleur était étouffante dans la salle; plusieurs dames se sont évanouies.—Un sergent de ville s'élança à la poursuite du voleur.—L'armée ennemie semblait s'être évanouie pendant la nuit.—C'est ici la fameuse chambre d'où Grotius s'est évadé (Dumas, père).

Use the Past Indefinite as often as you can to show agreement.

I hasten to answer your amiable letter.—They have

been making fun of you.—The tower fell with a dreadful crash (*un fracas épouvantable*). — She has not remembered her promise.—Seeing the tornado coming, the inhabitants of the town had taken refuge in the cellars (*En voyant venir le cyclone*). — Three of the prisoners had escaped under cover (*à la faveur*) of the darkness.—The burglar was found crouching behind the bed.—We all protested when he told us how much he had paid [for] that ugly cycle.—He tried (*s'ingénier*) to prove to us that he had done a good [stroke of] business.—All the swallows have flown away.

610. A considerable number of verbs **change their meaning** more or less **in assuming the pronominal form**; the student should therefore be careful in translating the reflexive forms he meets with in his reading. The following are some of the most frequently used :—

apercevoir,	*to see, catch sight of.*
s'apercevoir de,	*to perceive, notice.*
aviser,	*to think over, to advise (commercial).*
s'aviser de,	*to take into one's head.*
agir,	*to act, to behave.*
il s'agit de,	*the question is.*
démettre,	*to dislocate.*
se démettre l'épaule,	*to dislocate one's shoulder.*
se démettre de,	*to resign an office.*
défendre,	*to defend, to forbid.*
se défendre de,	*to deny.*
se défendre,	*to defend oneself.*
défaire,	*to undo.*
se défaire de,	*to get rid of.* / *to dispose of.*
louer,	*(to let), to praise.*
se louer de,	*to have cause to congratulate oneself on.*

Je n'ai pas à me louer de lui,	*He has not treated (served) me well.*
passer,	*to pass, to spend.*
se passer de,	*to do without, to dispense with.*
plaindre,	*to pity.*
se plaindre de,	*to complain of.*
servir,	*to serve.*
se servir de,	*to use.*
attendre,	*to wait, expect.*
s'attendre à,	*to expect* (with verb or abstract noun).
faire,	*to do, to make.*
se faire à,	*to get used to.*
livrer,	*to deliver up (as goods).*
se livrer à,	*to devote oneself to.* / *to give way to.*
mêler,	*to mix.*
se mêler de,	*to interfere, to dabble in.*
mettre,	*to put.*
se mettre à,	*to begin.*
se mettre en route,	*to set out.*
ouvrir,	*to open.*
s'ouvrir à,	*to confide in.*
plaire (à),	*to please.*
se plaire à,	*to delight in, enjoy.*
tenir,	*to hold.*
se tenir à, &c.,	*to stand, sit, lie, &c.*
s'en tenir à,	*to confine oneself to.* / *to adhere.*
renseigner,	*to inform.*
se renseigner,	*to make inquiries.*
appeler,	*to call.*
s'appeler,	*to be called.*
Comment vous appelez-vous?	*What is your name?*
taire,	*to conceal (a fact).*
se taire,	*to be silent.*
tromper,	*to cheat, deceive.*
se tromper,	*to be mistaken.*

611. There are also many *gallicismes* in which *y* and *en* are introduced; as,

s'y connaître,	*to be a judge of.*
s'y entendre,	*to know all about a trade, &c.*
s'y reconnaître,	*not to get confused.*
Je ne m'y reconnais plus,	*I have got confused over it.*
s'y prendre,	*to go to work.*
Vous ne savez pas vous y prendre,	*You do not know how to set about it.*
s'en prendre à,	*to lay the blame on, to attack.*

612. There are also a few **essentially reciprocal verbs**; as,

s'entr'aider,	*to help one another.*
s'entre-choquer,	*to knock against each other, to rattle.*
s'entre-croiser,	*to cross (as telegraph wires).*
s'entre-déchirer,	*to rend each other, to slander.*
s'entr'égorger,	*to murder one another.*
s'entre-tuer,	*to kill one another.*

and others formed thus with *entre.*

NOTE the other force of *entre,* as in *entrevoir,* to catch a glimpse of; *une porte entr'ouverte,* a door ajar, &c.

EXERCISE 118.

Notice that the Reflexive Pronoun must agree with the subject, even in the Infinitive; as, Je vais ME démettre de cette fonction.

Il s'aperçut de son erreur, mais il était trop tard pour y remédier.—Je vais me défaire de ce cheval, il est vicieux.—Le ministère ne s'attendait pas à cette interpellation.—Il fait si doux aujourd'hui que nous aurions pu nous passer de feu.—Ce domestique est à mon service depuis plusieurs années; j'ai toujours eu à me louer de lui.—Il s'agit de ne pas nous laisser surprendre dans ce défilé.—Il fut accusé de ce crime mais il s'en défendit fort.—Notre professeur s'est

trompé en disant que cette citation était de Virgile ; elle est d'Horace.—Il se mêle de littérature et il n'y entend rien.—Toutes mes notes sont brouillées, je ne m'y reconnais plus.—Si vous êtes malade ne vous en prenez qu'à vous-même, c'est votre propre imprudence qui en est cause.—Les fils électriques s'entre-croisent par milliers au-dessus de toutes les grandes villes modernes.—Nous partons demain pour Marseille, je vais à la Gare de Lyon pour me renseigner sur l'heure du train.—Ce climat ne me convient pas, je ne saurais m'y faire.

My children, always try to help one another.—Tell me the cause of the disease of the vine, you who understand it.—If you have been mistaken do not blame me. —He does not know who to blame.—What is your name my little [man]?—I am called Peter.—If you do not know the time of the train, inquire of (*auprès de*) the station master.—My son is going to learn German. —Indeed, when is he going to begin?—I have a mind to start too.—We expected (*Imp.*) to hear from him (*receive of his news*) to-day.—The shock was so violent that the glasses rattled on the shelf.—The sentry stood for two hours at the post which had been assigned him. —Do not talk of painting; you know well that you are no judge of it.—I forbid you to use my paints (*couleurs*) and brushes.—The travellers set out again (=*re*——) at earliest dawn (*au point du jour*).—I adhere to our agreement.

613. The reflexive form is often **equivalent to the passive,** especially in the 3rd person and when the action is habitual or the state prolonged.

Cependant aucune violence ne s'était commise encore
However, no violence had been committed yet (Dumas, père).

Une telle action ne saurait s'excuser (Molière).
Such an action cannot be excused.

Cela se comprend.
That can easily be understood (is easy to understand).

Cet article se vend très bien.
That article has a ready sale.

But sometimes also in the 1st person ; as,

Je m'étonne qu'on ne l'ait pas puni.
I am astonished they have not punished him.

614. The same idea carried a little further conveys the meaning of **getting, becoming** ; as,

Il se marie,	*He is going to be married.*
Il se noie,	*He is drowning.*
Il se meurt,	*He is dying.*

These last are very numerous, such are :—

s'affaiblir,	*to get weak.*
se consoler (de),	*to become consoled.*
s'affermir,	*to grow firm.*
s'effrayer (de),	*to get frightened.*
se refroidir,	*to grow cold.*
se résigner,	*to be resigned.*
s'assombrir,	*to grow dark.*
se rétrécir,	*to shrink, to get narrower.*
se calmer,	*to grow calm.*
se mettre en colère,	*to get in a rage.*
s'impatienter (de),	*to get impatient.*

615. In other cases the Reflexive Pronoun only appears to make the action more **personal to the subject** ; as,

Je me refuse à le croire, *I will* not *believe it* ;

so, *Je m'afflige* is more energetic than *Je suis affligé*, I am sorry, afflicted ; *Il s'étonna*, than, *Il fut étonné* ; but the subject is inexhaustible.

EXERCISE 119.

La reine se refusa obstinément à descendre au jardin (Lamartine).—La captivité se resserra (id.).—Napoléon voulait donner au sol le temps de s'affermir.—Le temps s'assombrit encore davantage. — La pauvre femme s'effrayait de ne pas recevoir de nouvelles de son fils.—Cela se dit, mais cela ne s'écrit pas.—Il se mit dans une épouvantable colère malgré tout ce que je pouvais faire pour l'apaiser.—Il se calma pourtant à la fin et se résigna à la situation.

I am astonished that you should get so angry about (*pour*) such a trifle.—The two little boys began to get frightened when they heard the landlord of the inn speak thus.—At twenty paces from the entrance the cave grows perceptibly narrower.—Come (*Put yourselves*) to table, the soup is getting cold.—That word is not written so.—I am very angry.—So I see (*That is seen*, reflexive).—Come, come, calm yourself.—I cannot get calm.—We must (*il faut*) raise the curtain, the audience is growing impatient.

Agreement with the Subject.

616. The same general rules apply as in English.

With *l'un et l'autre*, either, the verb may be singular or plural; as, *l'un et l'autre se dit* or *se disent*, either may be said, but meaning both, *l'un et l'autre* requires the plural; as, *l'un et l'autre sont partis*, both are gone. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* (or *ni . . . ni* with nouns) requires the verb in the singular if one only can perform the action; as,

Ni l'un ni l'autre (Ni Pierre ni Jean) n'aura le prix, { *Neither (neither Peter nor John) will get the prize (one only gets the prize).*

But plural if both can act; as,

Ni vous ni votre cousin ne m'aimez,* } *Neither you nor your cousin like me (both dislike me).*

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne parlent français, } *Neither speaks French (both are ignorant of it).*

Remember that the Relative Pronoun has the same person as the antecedent.†

Toi, mon ami, qui m'es resté fidèle, } *Thou, my friend, who hast remained faithful to me.*

617. With *ou*, the verb is generally singular, but it must be plural if both subjects act, or if the subjects are in different persons; as,

Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes (J. J. Rousseau).
Sometimes time and sometimes death, but both are our healers.

Le roi, l'âne ou moi, nous mourrons (La Fontaine).

618. The rules for the use of *c'est* and *ce sont* are very complicated and rather contradictory, suffice it to say that *ce sont* is generally used when a plural noun or pronoun follows immediately; *ce sont eux, ce sont mes frères,* except with *nous* and *vous; c'est nous, c'est vous.* Notice, *Est-ce là votre lettre?*

619. The verb is singular when a collective pronoun, such as *personne, tout, rien, nul,* &c., follows several nouns. *Chefs, soldats, bourgeois, personne ne voulut se rendre,* Officers, soldiers, citizens, none wished to surrender. See also (574).

620. When the first subject is followed by *de même que, ainsi que,* like, as also, and *avec,* with, and such like,

* Priority of person as in English:—1st and 2nd = 1st, 1st and 3rd = 1st; 2nd and 3rd = 2nd, but it is much more apparent in French owing to richer verbal inflexion.

† Exceptions to this rule are to be found in good authors.

the verb agrees with the first only; as, *Votre mère, ainsi que votre tante, est partie de bonne heure. Monsieur le Président, avec toute sa suite, est arrivé à dix heures.*

621. When a plural noun is preceded by a collective, agreement is made with the noun which expresses the predominating idea; as,

Une troupe de braves, à la barbe longue et hérissée, formait l'avant-garde,
A band of braves, with long, shaggy beards, formed the van-guard.
(The *band* marched in the van).

Une troupe de nymphes étaient assises autour d'elle (Fénelon).
(The *nymphs* were seated).

622. Often *une foule, un tas,* simply mean *many,* in which case the verb is plural; as, *Une foule de difficultés se sont présentées.*

623. When a **collective** is alone *all agreements* are made in the **gender** and **number** of **that noun,** and **never,** as so often in English, with the **idea.** *Compare,*

The government have *decided,*	Le gouvernement A décidé.
The crowd were *terrified,*	La foule FUT EFFRAYÉE.
The people were *fond of him,*	Le peuple l'AIMAIT.

624. However, with *le plus grand nombre, beaucoup, peu,* &c., a plural noun is often understood; as, *Le plus grand nombre* (des officiers) *le croyaient. Beaucoup* (de personnes) *le disent.*

With **la plupart,** *most,* the verb is always plural, unless a noun be expressed, in which case agreements are made with the latter; as, *La plupart furent de cet avis,* Most were of this opinion. *La plupart de ces romans sont bons. La plupart du monde le croit.*

625. When *le peu* means *the want of,* the verb is singular:—Cf. *Le peu d'arbres qu'on y voit* sont tous *de la même espèce. Le peu d'arbres qu'on y voit* rend *le paysage triste.*

EXERCISE 120.

Neither of those pupils is making progress (*plural*).—Neither Mr Gaultier nor Mr Filon will be appointed director of the new school.—Which of those two sorts of potatoes do you advise me to plant in my kitchen garden?—Both are good.—The line of horsemen which guarded the approaches of the Buytenhoff remained cold and silent, but threatening (Dumas, père).—Most of those books are worthless (*valoir*).—Where are all your guests? (*invité*).—Most of them have gone.—The admiral, with most of his officers, accepted the invitation of the prefect.—You who are my friend, you should have come to my help (*me venir en aide*).—Is that his answer?—Those are his very words.

USE OF TENSES

The Infinitive

626. The **Infinitive** is used after all **prepositions** which can govern a verb, except EN, which takes the **Present Participle.** *Je suis venu pour vous voir. Il est content de partir. Il aime à lire. Il lit sans comprendre,* He reads without understanding ; but, *Il chante en travaillant. Il dit en me voyant.*

627. All **verbs** govern a following verb in the **Infinitive.**

Je préfère y aller moi-même, *I prefer* going *myself.*

Prefer the **Infinitive** whenever the subject can be **clearly inferred,** after such verbs as *vouloir, espérer, craindre, il faut, &c.,* and often instead of the Subjunctive.

I wish I could go,	**Je voudrais pouvoir y aller**
We must walk faster,	**Il faut marcher plus vite.**
He is afraid he will be late,	**Il craint d'être en retard.**

628. Use the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive* to express *Past Perfect time.*

After reading his letter,	**Après avoir lu sa lettre.**
He died without seeing his son again,	**Il est mort sans avoir revu son fils.**

But usually the *Simple Infinitive,* as we have seen, when the first verb is in a compound tense **(264, 400)**; as,

I wish I had seen it,	**J'aurais voulu le voir.**

629. The Infinitive is also used exclamatively, and often refers to what precedes:—

L'ingrate! la perfide! me *reprocher* la louable ambition qui me possède! (Sandeau)

The ungrateful and perfidious woman! to reproach me with the laudable ambition which possesses me!

If there is a Subject Pronoun it must take the Disjunctive form, as we have seen:—

Lui, vous pardonner! *He, forgive you!*

630. The Infinitive often implies a shade of meaning which must be expressed in English:—

Où porter sa douleur? où traîner sa misère? (Delille).
Where could he *bear his grief? where drag out his misery?*

Où aller? *Where were* (are) *we to go? can we go?*

Que faire? *What was* (is) *to be done?*

Comment faire? *How were* (are) *we to manage?*

631. It often means, *then he* (*they*) *began to* . . . ; as,

Ainsi dit le renard, et flatteurs d'applaudir (La Fontaine).
Thus spoke the fox, and flatterers applauded (*began to applaud*).

Et sur ces cris, les bourgeois de courir plus fort, les mousquets de s'armer, les haches de luire, et les yeux de flamboyer (Dumas, père).
And on hearing these shouts, the citizens ran the faster, the muskets were cocked, the axes gleamed, and all eyes blazed with anger.

EXERCISE 121.

The workmen have gone away without finishing their work.—I hope I shall see him in Paris.—The master means to reward those pupils for having worked so well.—That boy has been punished for disobeying his father (*Notice time of action*).—I am tired of studying that dry[2] (*aride*) subject.[1]—He repents having said it.—She says (that) she does not remember writing to you.—She set to work again after taking a stroll in the garden (*faire un tour*, or *se promener*).—We only set out after making sure (*s'assurer*) of the truth of the report

The Indicative.

632. The **Present Indicative** has *no progressive form.*

I am writing, **J'écris.**

633. It is also used, as in Latin, for an action or state still lasting.

Je le connais depuis deux ans, } I have known him two years.

J'écris depuis deux heures, { I have been writing two hours (*or*, since two o'clock).

The phrase is also turned thus :—**Il y a deux ans que je le connais. Il y a deux heures que j'écris,** which can only mean, however, *I have been writing two hours.*

NOTICE :—

Il y a longtemps de cela, That was (happened) long ago.

[*Cf.* Latin :—**Jam pridem cupio**—*Je désire depuis longtemps.*]

The question is put thus :—

Depuis quand le connaissez-vous ? } How long have you known him ?

or,

Depuis combien (de temps) le connaissez-vous ?

or,

Combien (de temps) y a-t-il que vous le connaissez ?

Voilà is also used to give more force to the expression.

Voilà une heure que j'attends ! } I have been waiting this hour!

But notice that the *Past Indefinite* is used when such an expression as *all day, all the evening, &c.*, is used ; as,

Il a plu toute la journée, It has been raining all day.

634. The **Present** is also used, as in Latin, to make a *narrative vivid.* This is almost *invariably done* at a *critical* or *animated* part of a story.

Note.—A curious effect of this is occasionally to disturb the other tenses of the passage and make a Pluperfect a Past Indefinite, and a Past a Future; as, *Cependant ces régiments* ont reçu *des renforts, ils* chargent *à leur tour.—L'homme* peut *désormais traverser les mers sans le secours des vents ; il* fera *plus encore ; il* entrera *en communication instantanée avec ses cousins d'outre mer.*

The *Pluperfect* is, however, constantly found in connection with the *Historic Present.*

EXERCISE 122.

La troisième République Française existe déjà depuis de longues années.—Nous habitons Edimbourg depuis quelques mois seulement.—Voilà bien longtemps que cela dure !—Ce jeune homme est majeur depuis bientôt six mois.—(*Try to get the correct construction in English*).—Voilà une heure que je m'efforce de résoudre ce problème sans pouvoir y réussir.—Y a-t-il longtemps

qu'ils sont partis ?*—Non, Monsieur ; ils sont partis* depuis quelques instants seulement.—Son père est mort* depuis plusieurs années.—Mon ami, nos invités sont arrivés* depuis quelque temps déjà.—Il a fait beau toute la semaine.—Il gèle depuis huit jours.—Voilà bien longtemps de ça, je venais d'entrer en ménage (Béranger).

I have slept all night.—The patient has slept since midnight (*and is still asleep*).—Queen Victoria has been reigning since 1837 ; she has been on the throne more than (*de*) sixty years.—That state of things has already lasted too long.—Those workmen have been working hard (*bien*, before Part.) all day.—Have you known Mr Vécart long ?—Yes, I have known him for many years.—How long have you been learning French ?—I am ashamed to tell you how long I have been learning it.—We have been trying to learn it for the last three years.—I will take a walk with you after reading the papers.—He has been looking for a situation for some time without being able to find one.

The Imperfect.

635. The Imperfect, as its name implies, expresses an action **not completed** at a given time, therefore **going on.** A **repeated** or **habitual action** is considered as going on, so that whenever the English verb is, or may be expressed by the forms **was doing, used to do,** this tense must be used.

He was speaking to the guard, **Il parlait au chef de train.**
He often came to see us on Saturday (used to come), **Il venait souvent nous voir le samedi.**

* *Partis* is here a Participial Adjective of *state*, and the expression must be considered as equal to a Present ; so with all such participles as, *mort, sorti, arrivé, &c.* It is clear that one could not say : *Son père meurt depuis plusieurs années!*

636. Just as the **Present** is used for an action **still going on,** the **Imperfect** is used for an action which **had been** and **was still** going on.

Un coup qu'il méditait depuis longtemps,
A blow (an attack) which he had long been planning.

Compare Latin:—

Copiæ quas diu comparabant,
Forces which they had long been collecting.

637. The **circumstances** which **accompany** an action, the **state of things existing** are put in the **Imperfect.**

Le ministre ne put recevoir la députation parce qu'il était *malade.*
Il se glissa dans la hutte. Il y faisait *chaud.*
(V. Hugo).

638. Notice that *would,* expressing *habit,* must be rendered by the Imperfect of the following verb; as, He would often stroll along the river bank in the evening, *Il se* promenait *souvent le soir sur le bord de la rivière.*

The idea, *it chanced, happened,* is often rendered by the Imperfect; as, *Il me disait un jour,* He happened to say to me one day.

The Preterite or Passé Défini.

639. The *Passé Défini* is **emphatically** the **tense of narration.** It states a *past action* or *state,* **considered as a fact,** quite apart from the idea of duration of time. Thus the difference between the *Imperfect* and the *Preterite* is **not** in the **length of time the action lasts,** as the pupil is very apt to imagine, but in the way in which the action **is considered with regard to some other action,** or some **point of time.** The *Passé Défini* is hardly ever used in familiar conversation. It is replaced by the *Passé Indéfini,* as we shall see.

The pupil should be very attentive to notice the use of tenses in his reading.

640. Many verbs do not express definite actions at all, and yet they are put in the Preterite when they form a fact in the narrative and not an accompanying condition. Such are *vouloir, espérer, craindre, redouter* (to dread), and, above all, *être.*

Il voulut l'empêcher de passer,
He wanted (tried) [at a given moment] to prevent him from passing.

Il craignit d'attirer l'attention de la sentinelle,
He feared to attract the attention of the sentry.

641. Notice particularly the **Preterite Passive.** It is used whenever a **definite action** is put in the Passive form ; as,

La ville fut prise le cinq juin,
The town was taken on the 5th June.

Il fut tué à Reischoffen,*
He was killed at Reischoffen.

Note.—**La ville était prise,** means, The town was (already) in the hands of the enemy.

* *Il* était *tué à Reischoffen* could hardly occur.

EXERCISE 123.

Notice the tenses in the following extracts from Lamartine's "Girondins" and Duruy's "Histoire des Romains."

Le conseil de la commune, informé de la curiosité que ses promenades excitaient dans les maisons voisines, ordonna que le vide des créneaux de la tour serait rempli par des jalousies. Ces précautions, cruelles pour les enfants, étaient un bienfait pour la reine.—Elles lui dérobaient l'aspect d'une ville odieuse, et ne lui laissaient voir que le ciel où elle aspirait.—Sa santé s'altérait sans que son âme s'aperçût de la décadence

de son corps.—Elle passait les nuits dans des insomnies que ses traits révélaient le matin. Sa sœur et sa fille la supplièrent de demander l'ouverture d'une porte de communication entre sa chambre et la chambre contiguë dans laquelle on les enfermait elles-mêmes tous les soirs. La reine y consentit par déférence pour leur tendresse (Lamartine).—Pour les Romains, les vaincus restaient les condamnés de la Fortune (Duruy). A son avènement au pouvoir l'empire et la constitution tombaient en ruines: il (Sylla) sauva l'un à Chéronée, et Rome vécut cinq siècles sur ses victoires; il *voulut* relever l'autre par ses lois politiques, et elles ne durèrent pas dix années (idem.).—A cette nouvelle, le roi, désolé, ne songea plus qu'à sauver le comte.—Tout fut tenté à la fois, avec l'aveugle empressement de la crainte et de la douleur (Guizot).

My friend noticed that the peasant was holding something hidden under his cloak.—It was a little pig that he was carrying thus.—He offered to sell it to us for ten francs, but we answered him we did not want it.—He went away much disappointed.—I knocked at the door, which a rather tidy servant came to open.—I told her I wished to speak to her master.—She shut the door in my face (*me . . . au nez*) without answering me.—The doctor arrived too late, the poor fellow had been dead some time already.—He was hurt (*wounded*) in falling from a scaffolding.—The news reached Paris on the evening of the tenth November.—It was hailed with enthusiasm.—Some one had told me he was ill.—The shock was so great that the poor mother remained long ill.—His body was never found (*retrouver*).

The Past Indefinite.

642. The *strictly grammatical* and *classic* use of this tense is much the same as the *Present Perfect* in English, but its great importance in French is due to its use in **conversation** to replace the *Passé Défini*

(*Preterite*). For instance a Frenchman never says:—*Je vous vis hier*, but, **Je vous ai vu** (vue) **hier**; it offers also to the foreigner the embarrassing and continual change of *auxiliary* **(302, 310).** It is impossible to exaggerate the importance of practising these forms and the *elision of the objective pronoun* which so often accompanies them, and the *agreement of the participle* **(165).**

Compare :—**Les avez-vous vus ?—Leur avez-vous parlé ?—Y sont-ils allés ?—Elle s'en est repentie.—S'en sont-ils emparés ?** &c.

The study of this tense involves the revision of all that has been said about **pronouns, auxiliaries, interrogative** and **negative forms,** and **agreement of participles.**

643. Notice the Passive form: **Il a été tué. Ils ont été blessés. J'ai été blâmé (blâmée). En avez-vous été récompensé (és,** &c.). Also with Impersonal Verbs: **Il a fallu y aller. Il m'a paru prudent de rester chez moi. Il y a eu un orage,** *There has been (was) a storm*; and, **J'ai eu honte,** *I was ashamed.* **Ils ont eu raison,** *They were right.*

EXERCISE 124.

Use the Past Indefinite or conversational form; this is a familiar letter, not a model of style.

My dear Friend,—I arrived in Paris on Wednesday evening, after a pleasant but rather fatiguing journey (*noun first*). I have put up (*descendre*) at the Continental[2] Hotel[1]. Yesterday I called on (*went to see*) my old friend Mr X., who received me in (*de*) a very amiable manner and kept (*retenir*) me to dinner. He introduced me to his wife, a rather pretty brunette (you know he has got married since we saw him). They have taken (*rented = loué*) a pretty little villa at Passy, with a large garden. I spent a charming evening with them, and on leaving, Mr X. requested

me to remember him kindly to you (*to recall him to your good remembrance*), and Madame expressed the hope that they would see you (*of seeing you*) soon in Paris. You must excuse me if I do not write you a long letter, for I have had a fatiguing day. This morning we "did" (*visited*) the Louvre. Seeing (*The sight of*) so many pictures gave me a violent headache as usual (*comme d'habitude*), so that I had to (*devoir*) come out of the museum, as they call it, and rest a little in the Tuileries Gardens. After taking a walk in the Champs Elysées we lunched at a café near (*in the quarter of*) the rue Royale. In the afternoon we went up (*mounted until the top*) the Eiffel [2] Tower [1]. This evening we went to the French Theatre, where they played the "Monde où l'on s'ennuie" de Pailleron. That delightful piece greatly amused us. It has required (*fallu*) courage to (*pour*) write to you before going to bed.—With love, I am, (*I embrace you with all my heart*) . . .

EXERCISE 125.

That house was sold [for] fifty thousand francs.—Who bought it?—I was not told.—The former (*ancien*) proprietor died two months ago.—His widow sold all his houses (*immeubles*, m.) and has gone to live with her mother in the south of France.—There have been inundations in Spain.—Many poor people have lost all they possessed.—Did you confess to your master (*patron*) that you lost the money he entrusted (*had entrusted*) to you?—No, I did not dare tell him (*it*) for he appeared to be in a bad temper (*de mauvaise humeur*). —Mary, where is the milk I sent you for?—Oh, Mamma, I fell in the street and all the milk was spilt. —I have lost my spectacles; did you see them in dusting the dining-room?—Yes, Ma'am, I found them on the sideboard and put them into the drawer of your toilet [table] (*toilette*). — You were wrong to speak to her so harshly.

The Pluperfect and the Past Anterior.

644. The distinction between these tenses **does not exist in English** in any form. The **Pluperfect** (formed with the **Imperfect** of the **Auxiliary**) is used when the action took place at some **indefinite** time prior to the Perfect action, or to some point of time; as,

I had done my work before you returned,
J'avais fini mon travail avant votre retour.

When we arrived at the inn she had already gone,
Quand nous sommes arrivés à l'auberge elle était déjà partie.

645. The **Past Anterior** (formed with the **Preterite** of the **Auxiliary**) is used when the action **immediately precedes** the Perfect action which almost always **depends on it,** or expresses a **coincidence.** It generally occurs after *quand* or *lorsque,* when; *dès que* or *aussitôt que,* as soon as; *pas plutôt que,* no sooner than; *à peine,* scarcely, hardly; as,

Dès que l'enfant eut fini ses devoirs il alla se coucher,
As soon as the child had done his lessons he went to bed.

A peine eut-il prononcé ces mots qu'un tumulte indescriptible se produisit.
No sooner had he uttered these words than an indescribable tumult arose.

646. However, with the *passive form* or the verb *être,* the ordinary Preterite is used; it appears to satisfy the ear by its similarity of construction. *En* 1789, *dès que la révolution* fut commencée, *les villes se montrèrent favorables à tout ce qui se faisait* (Mme. de La Rochejaquelein). *Quand tout* fut *prêt nous nous mîmes en route.*

There is a conversational form of the *Passé Antérieur,* sometimes met with:—*Quand* j'ai eu fini *je suis sorti,* When *I had finished* I went out. The object appears to be to get a form to harmonise with the Past Indefinite of the following verb.

647. The Past Anterior is never used when the action was habitual, which is shown by the accompanying verb being in the Imperfect:—*Quand* j'avais fini *mes devoirs* je faisais *un tour de jardin avant le dîner.*

The Future and Future Perfect.

648. The **Future tenses** are used to express **future time** (except after **si,** *if,* which takes the Present or Imperfect Indicative, and in the Subjunctive Mood which has lost all future forms in French), and thus often translate the **English Present** when it refers to the **Future.** This generally occurs when one verb *depends on another* in the *Future,* or with an *Imperative,* or in the case of an Auxiliary verb like *can, may,* or *must.* Si (doubt), *whether,* takes the Future or the Conditional according to sense **(661).**

When T. returns from the country I will send him to you.
Quand T. reviendra (or, sera revenu) de la campagne, je vous l'enverrai.

[*Cf.* Latin :—*Quum T. rure redierit, mittam eum ad te* (Arnold).]

Do that when you please,
Faites cela quand vous voudrez (Fais cela quand tu voudras).

[Compare Latin :—*Facito hoc, ubi voles* (id.).]

I can start to-morrow, Je pourrai partir demain.

and naturally the *Future Perfect* when we have the *Present Perfect* in English :—

As soon as I have done I will rest,
Dès que j'aurai fini je me reposerai.

But,

Si vous faites cela vous ne ferez pas peu (Molière),
If you do that you will accomplish no small task.

649. Beware of the error of using the Future after *quand*, when it does NOT refer to *future time*; as,

When he comes he always brings us flowers from his garden,
Quand il vient il nous apporte toujours des fleurs de son jardin.

I go to church when I can, Je vais à l'église quand je peux.

The **near future** is often put in the *Present*; as,

Il part demain,	*He starts to-morrow.*
Le bateau arrive ce soir,	*The boat arrives this evening.*

but this use is limited to a few expressions.

650. NOTE.—The English *shall* and *will* are often more than mere tense auxiliaries; when they contribute to the meaning of the phrase they must be translated, *e.g.*,

Will you come with me? (Are you willing?)
Voulez-vous m'accompagner.

He will not obey,
Il ne veut pas obéir.

You shall listen to me (I am determined),
Je veux que vous m'écoutiez, *or* Il faut que vous m'écoutiez.

Shall I tell you who you are?
Voulez-vous que je vous dise qui vous êtes? (Hugo).

Will often expresses habit; as,

A father will often threaten a child with a punishment he never intends to inflict,
Un père menace souvent un enfant d'un châtiment qu'il n'a point l'intention de lui infliger.

651. The Future often renders the English Imperative; as,

Jane, get dinner for six,
Jeanne, vous servirez le dîner à six heures.

NOTICE.—*Je vous dirai que . . .* , I must tell you that . . . *Vous saurez que . . .* , You must know (*i.e.*, I am going to tell you).

EXERCISE 126.

Hardly had he opened the door when (*que*) the rebels began to fire at (*sur*) him.—When I have done, I will come [and] tell (*it*) you.—When they had finished, they came and told me. (*Both narrative and conversational*).—As soon as the master was gone, the children began to play instead of continuing their work.—The emperor Valens was burnt alive (*vif*) on the bed where his attendants (*the people of his suite*) had laid him (*invert subject and verb*).—When I lived in the country I used to go out as soon as it was light.—As soon as the fish was cooked they served it [for] us.—If you will come to my house to-morrow I will show you the engravings I have bought.—When the book is published (*appears*) I will send you a copy (*exemplaire*, m.) of it.—If the house pleases my wife I will rent it.—When I find a house which suits me I will buy it.—When I see a good bargain (*occasion*) I avail myself of it (*profit of it*).—Those children *shall* obey me.—Louise, wake me to-morrow morning at half-past seven.—I must say (*tell you*) that I am rather vexed at it.—Do as you please.—Do what you like (*vouloir* in both cases).

The Conditional Mood.

652. The only real difficulties in the use of the French Conditional arise from defective English verbs, as has been noticed (**263, 264**), and from the idiomatic meanings of *should* and *would*. The pupil must be careful to notice whether these verbs are mere tense auxiliaries or something more. Thus, *I* **should go** *out* IF *the weather were not so bad,* is clearly a Conditional, *Je* sortirais *si le temps n'était pas si mauvais ;* but, *I* **should go** *out, but I have no time* = I **ought** to go out, *Je* devrais

sortir *mais je n'en ai pas le temps*; and remember that, **followed by the Perfect Infinitive,** it is equal to a **Past Conditional.** *I should have gone out,* is, **J'aurais dû sortir (264).**

653. *Should* is often the equivalent of the French Subjunctive; as,

I write this that you should know how to act,
Je vous écris cela pour que vous sachiez à quoi vous en tenir.

I should think so! is an idiom, rendered, **Je le crois bien!**

654. *Should he come* = If he were to come, **S'il venait**; the Imperfect after *si.* This English Subjunctive *should,* is very important; it may also be rendered by the Present as in English, *If he come* (*comes*), **S'il vient**; *Should you meet him . . .*, or, If you should meet him . . ., **Si vous le rencontriez (rencontrez).**

655. Note.—All these inverted English Subjunctives may usually be treated in the same way; as,

Had I known it,	**Si je l'avais su.**
Did he but know it!	**S'il le savait (seulement)!**
Could they but come!	**Si seulement ils pouvaient venir!**
Were I his friend,	**Si j'étais son ami.**

However, the French Subjunctive may also occasionally be used in such case, but it is old fashioned or stilted:—

Should I die for it! **Dussé-je en mourir!** See (674).

656. *He* would do *it if he could,* is a Conditional, *Il le* ferait *s'il pouvait*; but in, *I* would *I were dead!* **would** is the Conditional of **vouloir,** *Je* voudrais *être mort.* Again, *Would to God we had never come!* is a Subjunctive, *Plût à Dieu que nous ne fussions jamais venus!*

657. Again, *would*, expressing **habit**, is the *Imperfect*, just as *will* is the *Present*; *e.g.*, He *would stand* for hours on the shore watching the waves, *Il se* tenait *sur la plage* (*pendant*) *des heures entières, uniquement occupé à regarder les vagues* (**638**).

658. Notice the use of the Conditional after **Quand**, *even if*; as,

Quand vous seriez le roi, je ne vous le céderais pas,
Even if you were (*Were you*) *the king, I would not let you have it.*

Quand ç'aurait été la mule du pape, il y aurait trouvé à redire,
Even if it had been the Pope's mule, he would have found fault with it (Le Sage).

659. It is worthy of remark that the *Past Conditional* is frequently rendered by the *Pluperfect of the Subjunctive* in elevated style, and that the *Pluperfect Indicative* which follows **si** may also be so rendered, *À me voir vous n'eussiez su si j'étais mort ou vivant*, To see me you would not have known whether I was dead or alive (Courier). *O Fabricius! qu'eût pensé votre grande âme, si, rappelé à la vie, vous eussiez vu la face pompeuse de cette Rome sauvée par votre bras? Dieux! eussiez-vous dit . . .* O Fabricius! what would your great soul have thought, if, recalled to life, you had seen the pompous aspect of that Rome your arm had saved. Gods! you would have said . . . (J. J. Rousseau). **Eût pensé** = *aurait pensé*; **eussiez vu** = *aviez vu*; **eussiez-vous dit** = *vous auriez dit.*

660. The Conditional is also used to make a supposition or a statement less positive, either from politeness or doubt. This use is very common in newspapers in reporting rumours; as,

Le Président aurait dit . . . ,
The President is reported to have said . . .

Seriez-vous malade?
Are you ill?
Je serais sensible à la pitié? (Racine).
Can I be touched by pity?

661. It will be noticed that **si** may be followed by several tenses; as, *S'il vient. Savez-vous s'il est venu? Je ne sais pas s'il est parti. Je ne sais pas s'il le fera* (will do it). *Je ne sais pas s'il le ferait* (would do it). *Je voulais voir si vous le feriez,* I wanted to see if you would do it, &c. **Avoid,** however, the **Subjunctive** in ordinary sentences. Remember that the Conditional of *savoir* often means *can.*

EXERCISE 127.

In this Exercise the pupil will be required to distinguish the Conditional from other moods. There are, however, endless shades of meaning, and many sentences may be rendered in various ways; it requires a context or the intonation of the voice to be quite sure in some cases. These remarks particularly apply to English into French.

J'aurais acheté ces rideaux s'ils n'étaient pas si chers. — Seriez-vous allé à ce bal si l'on vous avait invité?—Je ne crois pas; j'aurais probablement trouvé un prétexte pour refuser poliment. — Croiriez-vous, Monsieur, qu'il a eu l'impertinence de laisser ma lettre sans réponse?—D'après un bruit qui courait hier, le commandant X. se serait rendu en Belgique pour y chercher des papiers établissant l'innocence de l'accusé. Des falsifications de pièces auraient été commises à son préjudice.—Vous perdez votre temps à expliquer à cet enfant des choses qu'il ne saurait comprendre.—Quoi! vous voudriez que je dénonce mes amis?—Voilà une chose que je ne saurais faire, même pour sauver ma vie. — Seriez-vous assez aimable pour me donner ce renseignement?—Ce pauvre Arabe ne vous aurait pas vendu son cheval quand vous lui en auriez offert dix mille francs.

I would go with you if I were ready.—Had I a little more money at my disposal I would set up [in business] (*s'établir*) for myself (*pour mon compte*). — Should we study more than two languages at once (*à la fois*)?—Should we see your friend, we will mention the circumstance to him (*faire part de la chose*).—That boy would never prepare his lessons properly.—The sailors would often spend the evening (*à*) singing and dancing on the deck.—Even if I knew it I would not tell you.—According to a rumour I heard this morning the author of that crime has been arrested in America.—Were you but a little more attentive you would make much greater progress (*plural*).—The head clerk has not come to-day ; can he be ill?—I cannot believe he can bear me a grudge (*Subjunctive*) for such a trifle.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

662. As its name implies, the Subjunctive expresses an action or state **subordinate to some other consideration or idea,** as *doubt, emotion, indecision, possibility,* &c. But while this is true, the student often makes serious errors by applying such principles as doubt, negation, &c., *too strictly.* Some uses of this mood are amenable to *absolute rules,* and these should be *thoroughly mastered ;* others are more subtle, and depend on the *idea sought to be conveyed,* others again are more or less optional.

663. Firstly, then, the more certain rules.

The Subjunctive is required after the conjunctions mentioned **(503)** and after *que,* **replacing any of them (506).**

NOTE.—The *Infinitive* (418) or a *substantive* may often *replace the Subjunctive* advantageously ; as, *Avant son arrivée,* for, *Avant qu'il arrivât.*

EXERCISE 128.

They (*indefinite*) are working at it day and night in order that the opening ceremony (*inauguration*) may take place [on] the appointed day (*day said*) ("May" *may be rendered or omitted*).—The farmer will do his utmost (*possible*) to take in the hay (*plural*) to-day, lest it should rain to-morrow.—It will be dark (*make night*) before all is finished.—I love him still, though he has treated me so badly (*en user avec*, or *se conduire envers*).—We [can]not succeed in (*parvenir à*) pleasing him, although we do our best (*de notre mieux*).—In spite of his wound, the colonel remained on horseback (*à cheval*) until the danger was averted (*conjurer*).—Night had closed in (*come*) before the conflict at the boom began (Macaulay).—The inhabitants had laid in (*made*) a considerable store of provisions that the town should not be taken by famine before help arrived.—If I had had ever so little experience, I should not have been the dupe of his demonstrations [of friendship] (Le Sage) (*If . . . ever so little*, precedes the verb).—Harpagon consents to the marriage provided they get him a new coat made (449) for the ceremony.—Several soldiers entered (*pénétrer dans*) the town by a sewer without anyone noticing them.—He will not be able to get on board (*s'embarquer*) without my seeing him.

664. Use the Subjunctive after verbs expressing **approval, disapproval, desire, command, consent, prohibition,** and the like; as,

Je veux que vous y alliez,
I wish you to go (there).

Que veut-il que j'y fasse?
What would he have me to do in the matter?

Je souhaite que vous y réussissiez,
I wish you may succeed in it.

Il trouve mauvais que vous partiez sans le lui dire,
He thinks it wrong that you should go away without telling him.

Il exige que vous lui fassiez des excuses,
He demands that you should apologise.

Empêchez qu'il ne sorte,
Prevent him from going out.

Je ne souffrirai jamais que vous me manquiez de respect,
I shall never allow you to be wanting in respect to me.

EXERCISE 129.

The king thinks it right (*trouve bon*) that you should go abroad and stay there.—The master does not allow us to talk in class.—I mean (*prétendre*) that you should answer me.—Louis XI. thought it wrong that Commines should have described his gestures and grimaces.—The governor forbids anyone to (*that one*) go out of the town after sundown.—The landlord wished to prevent people (*on*) from fishing in the river.—Socrates (*Socrate*) used to say he did not mind being (*consentir que*) beaten when he was not present (*y être*).—What do you wish us to do?—The king ordered the spies to be shot.—We wish that brave officer's journey of exploration may succeed. —I desire you to tell him that from me (*de ma part*).

665. Use Subjunctive after a verb or expression denoting an **emotion**; as,

être content, heureux,	*to be glad, happy.*
être bien aise,	*to be well pleased.*
être charmé, enchanté,	*to be charmed, delighted.*
être désolé, affligé,	*to be very sorry.*
être surpris, étonné,	*to be surprised, astonished.*
être fâché,	*to be sorry, or angry.*
être d'avis,	*to be of opinion.*
avoir peur . . . ne,	*to be afraid.*
craindre . . . ne,	*to fear.*
trembler . . . ne,	*to tremble lest.*

regretter,	*to regret.*
s'affliger,	*to be grieved.*
s'étonner,	*to be astonished.*

666. Though the fact is generally **certain,** it is thought of as **subordinate to the emotion** it has aroused; as,

Je regrette qu'il soit malade,
I am sorry he is ill.

Il s'étonne que vous ne le fassiez pas,
He is astonished that you do not do so.

667. As has been said, there is no Future Subjunctive, but the Present and Imperfect are both used with a Future sense; as,

I am afraid he will die,
Je crains qu'il **ne meure.**

I tremble lest the hour should strike,
Je tremble que l'heure **ne sonne** (Molière).

He would have to do it,
Il faudrait qu'il le **fît.** (The action is in future time).

EXERCISE 130.

I am so glad you are better (*aller bien* = to be well).—Your father is vexed that you should have told me that.—I am astonished that he should have gone away without saying good-bye (*to make to me his adieus*).—Do not stand in that draught, your mother is afraid you will catch cold.—We are delighted that you should have returned (*revenir*) so soon.—The guide is of opinion that we should start before daybreak.—She was always trembling lest an accident should happen (*Imp. Subj.*) to her son.—The duke is extremely sorry that his servants should have received you ill (*mal accueillir*).—I fear he will not remember it.

668. **Impersonal Verbs** expressing **necessity, emotion, doubt,** &c., take the Subjunctive; as,

il faut,	*it is necessary (must).*
il est urgent,	*it is urgent.*
il importe,	*it is important.*
il convient,	*it is suitable, proper.*
il vaut mieux,	*it is better.*
il est temps,	*it is time.*
il est surprenant,	*it is surprising.*
étrange, rare, remarquable,	*strange, rare, remarkable.*
impossible, possible,	*impossible, possible.*
juste, bon,	*just, right.*
il est (c'est) dommage,	*it is a pity.*

and other idiomatic expressions which have occurred in the study of the verbs; as, **il se peut, il suffit, il s'en faut,** &c.

669. On the other hand, those expressing **certainty, probability,** or the **plain statement** of a **fact,** take the Indicative; as, *il y a, il arrive, il paraît,* &c.

Il est clair qu'il le sait,
It is clear that he knows it.

Il est incontestable qu'il l'a dit,
It is incontestable that he said so.

Il est sûr qu'ils sont de retour,
It is certain that they are back.

Il est probable qu'on l'a retrouvé,
It is probable that it has been found.

EXERCISE 131.

It is important that the emperor be informed of what is going on (*se passer*) at the outposts.—It is urgent that this bill (*law*) be passed (*voter*) by the House (*la Chambre*).—It is strange that you should always repeat the same mistake.—It is better that the assault be given (*livrer*) this very (*dès ce*) evening.—It is time you changed [your] (*of*) conduct.—It is

remarkable that the doorkeeper should have heard[2] nothing.[1]—It is right that the workmen should be paid for (*de*) their trouble.—It is a pity that the Venus of Milo has not been preserved whole.—If you lost your watch at the fair it is not very (*guère*) probable that you will find it again.—It was thought impossible (*One thought that it was*) that an army could cross that pass (*franchir ce col*).—It is probable that he will get better (*guérir*).—It is certain that President Carnot has died of his wound.

670. The **Superlative** used in a *general sense*—le **premier,** le **dernier,** l'**unique,** le **seul,** &c.,—generally take the Subjunctive, but the *Indicative* is used when the comparison is *limited,* or when a *statement of fact* is made.

SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.
Voilà la plus belle fleur que j'**aie** jamais vue !	C'est la plus belle de ces fleurs que je **vais** cueillir.
L'intérêt de la patrie, c'est la seule loi que je **connaisse.**	La loi de Dieu est la seule qu'on **doit** suivre.
Ce jeune homme est le premier qui m'**ait** plu.	C'est le premier qui m'a plu.

671. The Subjunctive is always used after **quelque . . . que, quel que . . . que, quoi que,** &c., as explained **(225, 237, and 503 †).**

672. We now come to those numerous cases in which the Subjunctive is used for the purpose of **avoiding direct statement,** and thus implying some *doubt, chance, uncertain expectation, improbability, willingness to accept the opinion of another, &c.,* as distinguished from past or present **fact.** Such are **negative** and **interrogative** verbs (which affirmatively would take the Indicative), in **relative clauses,** *i.e.,* after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où, &c.,* and after *il semble.**

* *Il me semble* takes the Indicative.

SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.
Il n'est pas sûr qu'il ait dit cela. (*It is doubtful.*)	N'est-il pas avéré qu'il a dit cela? (*Is it not true? = it is true*).
Je ne crois pas qu'il pleuve. (*But it may*).	Je ne crois pas qu'il a plu cette nuit. (*I feel sure it has not*).
Croyez-vous qu'ils le sachent? (*I am not sure, what do you think?*)	Savez-vous qu'il est revenu?* (*He has returned, do you know it?*)
Il semble qu'il ait raison. (*It looks like it.*)	Il me semble qu'il a raison. (*I think it probable.*)
Je cherche un secrétaire qui sache l'anglais. (*Where can I find one?*)	J'ai un secrétaire qui sait très bien l'anglais. (*A fact.*)
J'irai dans quelque retraite où je puisse finir mes jours en paix. (*I hope to be able.*)	J'ai trouvé une retraite où je pourrai finir mes jours en paix. (*I shall be able.*)

* Savez-vous qu'il *soit* revenu, not usual at the present day, means, *Do you know whether he has returned?*

These examples might be multiplied indefinitely See also conjunctions taking either mood **(504)** and examples in Exercise 101.

673. It will be remembered that the Pluperfect Subjunctive can be optionally used instead of the Perfect Conditional, and to replace the Pluperfect Indicative after **si (659).**

NOTE.—The Subjunctive will often be found in French authors in subordinate clauses other than those given above, but these need not be dwelt upon here, for the student will easily perceive their value, but will rarely require to imitate them.

EXERCISE 132.

Whatever he says, I never believe him.—My son, never marry a coquette, however beautiful she may be.—He has resolved to buy that house whatever the price

may be.—However great the danger might be our general never lost his coolness (*sang-froid*).—Wanted (*One asks*) a man-servant knowing [how] to cook.—We have a servant who knows very well [how] to cook.—I am looking out for (*seeking*) a situation where I can be free [on] (*the*) Sunday.—That is the largest ship that was ever built (*construire*).—It was the largest ship of the fleet that sank (*couler*).—This is the best remedy you could take.—It is the best of the two dictionaries I have got (*procured*) you, although it is the dearest.—It seemed that this energetic man was (*devoir*) to triumph over (*de*) all obstacles.—It seemed to us that the ship was making signals of distress.—Napoleon asked for a sergeant who could write.

674. The Subjunctive occurs also in *apparently* principal clauses, but these are really dependent on a *wish* or *prayer* or *doubt* implied. Most of these are set phrases admitting of but little change ; as,

N'en déplaise à votre Majesté,
May it please your Majesty.

Ne vous en déplaise,
May it please you,=by your leave.

A Dieu ne plaise !
God forbid!

Puisse-t-il vivre heureux !
May he live happy.

Puissiez-vous ne jamais vous en repentir !
May you never repent of it.

Vive le roi ! (la république !) *
Long live the king! (the republic!)

Vivent nos députés !
Long live our deputies!

Ecrive qui voudra ! (P. L. Courier),
Let him write who likes.

* *Cf.* Vive la France ! Viva la España ! England for ever ! Scotland yet !

Grand bien lui (leur, vous) fasse,
Much good may it do him, or her (them, you).

Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût revenu !
Would to God he had returned !

Dieu veuille que vous réussissiez !
God grant you may succeed!

Il veut que je m'explique?—Eh bien, soit !
He wishes me to explain myself, does he?—Well, so be it!

La paix soit avec vous !
Peace be with you !

(Pas) que je sache ; Je ne sache pas que . . . (with Subj.)
(*Not*) *that I know of*; *I am not aware that* . . .

It is as if we had : *Je désire que* cela ne déplaise pas à votre Majesté. *Je souhaite que* le roi vive. *Je veux bien qu'*on écrive. *Je prie que* la paix soit avec vous, &c. It would be well to commit these examples to memory ; they can hardly form the subject of an exercise.

675. Though there is a fundamental resemblance between the French and the Latin Subjunctives, a comparison of the two is more apt to confuse than to help the pupil. The principal differences (apart custom, which varies considerably) arise from the absence of a Conditional Mood in Latin ; the absence of a Future Participle and Future Subjunctive tenses in French ; the frequent use of the French Infinitive for the Latin Subjunctive ; as, Il mérite de commander, *Dignus est ut imperet* (vel, *qui imperet*), He is worthy to command (Lhomond). The study is of more philological than practical interest. Even the idiomatic use of *ne*, which is so strikingly similar, gives rise to difficulties in practice ; as, (similar) Je crains que le maître ne vienne, *Timeo ne præceptor veniat* (and even then, the *ne* occupies a different place). I fear the master will come ; (different) Je crains que le maître ne vienne pas. *Timeo ut præceptor veniat*, vel, *ne non præceptor veniat*, I fear the master will not come.

Again, *cf.* Dieu nous défend de mentir, *Deus prohibet* ne *mentiamur*, the French Infinitive, here used because the subject can clearly be inferred, does not require the *ne*. Twenty pages could be written on the differences between the Latin and French Subjunctives.

The error to which the student is most prone is the use of the Subjunctive after *si*, **if.** Even English and German lead to this mistake. *Cf.* Wenn ich reich wäre, If I *were* rich, *Si j'étais riche.*

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

676. The *Present Subjunctive* is used after the *Present* and *Future Indicative* and the *Imperative*, when the former is in the **same**, or **future** time ; as,

Je **crains** qu'il ne l'**oublie**,	*I fear he will (may) forget it.*
Il **faudra** qu'il le **fasse**,	*He will have to do it.*
Dites-lui qu'il m'**attende**,	*Tell him to wait for me.*

677. The *Imperfect Subjunctive* is used after **all other tenses**, simple or compound, when it is in the same or subsequent time ; as,

Il fallait	qu'il le fît.	*It was*	*necessary for him to do it.*
Il fallut		*It has been*	
Il a fallu		*It had been*	
Il avait fallu		*It would be*	
Il eut fallu		*It would have been*	
Il faudrait		or, *He had, has had, had had, would have, would have had to do it.*	
Il aurait fallu			

678. The compound tēnses of the Subjunctive generally refer to an action prior to the principal clause, and are thus really *present* and *past perfects*. Use the *Perfect* in connection with the *Present* and *Future*, and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* after all *other tenses* ; as,

Je **crains** qu'il ne l'**ait oublié**,
I am afraid he has forgotten it.

N'attendez pas qu'un enfant **ait contracté** une mauvaise habitude,
Do not wait until a child has contracted a bad habit.

Nous **attendrons** que l'artillerie **soit arrivée**,
We will wait until the artillery has arrived.

Je **craignais** qu'il ne l'**eût oublié**,
I feared he had forgotten it.

Nous **aurions attendu** qu'elle **fût arrivée**,
We should have waited until it came.

679. The French very seldom use the *Imperfect Subjunctive* in familiar conversation; the Present Subjunctive is used instead, and sometimes the Imperfect Indicative **(255)**.

For example,

Il a fallu qu'il le **fasse** (for *fît*).
Il faudrait que vous y **alliez** (for *allassiez*).
Avez-vous cru que j'**étais** malade?

Still a well-educated person would not *write*, Je **voulais** qu'il **écrive**, but, qu'il **écrivît**, especially when the latter verb is in the 3rd singular, which is short and elegant; nor could one write, Je **craignais** qu'il ne **soit venu**, but, qu'il ne **fût venu**, *I was afraid he had come.*

680. The above rules do not apply, however, in many cases where there is a more marked difference in the time of action; as,

Croyez-vous qu'il l'**eût fait** si je le lui avais demandé?
Do you think (now) *he would have done it* (then) *if I had asked him?*

Dieu **a voulu** que les hommes **soient** égaux,
God intended (past) *all men to be equal* (even now).

On ne **croira** pas que j'**eusse pu** réussir sans votre aide,
They will not believe that I could have succeeded without your help.

EXERCISE 133.

We will wait until all is ready.—We waited until all was ready.—Wait till all is ready.—We would have waited until all was ready.—You ought to have waited until he had finished.—It is impossible for him to see us (*that he see us*).—It is impossible for him to have seen us (Better English—He cannot have seen us).—We should have been sorry had he started without us.—It is hardly (*guère*) probable that he used (*prononcer*) the words (*parole*) which are attributed to him (*which one lends him*).—His Majesty was desirous of offering you a post which was worthy of you.—I know nothing which can be compared with that charming poem.—I know [of] nothing which could have got us out of that difficulty (*tirer d'un mauvais pas* or *sortir d'embarras*).—You need not be afraid of our forgetting it (*Do not fear that . . .*).—The general wanted (*would have liked*) the troops to set out at dawn of day (*le point du jour*).

Present Participle.

681. The French Present Participle does not offer much difficulty in itself. It expresses that an action *is in progress,* but cannot be used with the verb *to be,* as in English. I am speaking, *Je parle*; I was speaking, *Je parlais,* &c.

Des vagues déferlant sur la plage,
Waves breaking on the beach.

Ce tableau représente une jeune fille lisant un roman,
That picture represents a girl reading a novel.

682. It may often be rendered by *qui* and the Indicative Present or Imperfect; *une jeune fille qui lit un roman.*

Un pauvre homme chantant dans la rue=(qui chantait),
A poor man singing in the street.

633. When the Present Participle is used to express a simultaneous action, or one nearly so, it is generally preceded by **en**; as,

Ces jeunes couturières travaillaient en chantant,
Those young dressmakers sang while working.

L'hôte ferma la porte en disant, . . .
The host shut the door, saying . . .

Tout en may be used to emphasise this notion; as,

Il rédigea la dépêche tout en interrogeant le courrier,
He wrote out the despatch while questioning the courier.

634. When the Present Participle expresses a **quality** or **state rather than an action** it is considered an **adjective** and **agrees as such**; as a **verb** it **remains invariable.**

Compare:—

Des oiseaux **chantant** sous la feuillée,
Birds singing among the leaves.

Ces bois sont pleins d'oiseaux **chantants**,
These woods are full of song birds.

Une femme **obligeant** son enfant à aller à l'école,
A woman obliging her child to go to school.

Une femme **obligeante**,
An obliging woman.

635. Sometimes a Present Participle implies both ideas, in which case many good authors make it agree, though it is always right to omit the agreement if an action is implied; as,

La terre est une boule **roulante** dans l'espace,
The earth is a ball rolling through space.

Roulant would be more strictly correct, but there is an idea of continuous *state* which makes the agreement more natural.

EXERCISE 134.

She raised, smiling, her large blue eyes, and said, laying down her work . . .—There we were eating and drinking with those Italian peasants who had offered us hospitality in so charming a manner.—The Duke of Austria, thinking to subdue Switzerland, had entered it at the head of a powerful army.—High mountains shelter our coasts (*put our coasts in* (*à*) *the shelter*) from the scorching winds of the south.—These tribes live wandering in the desert.—They are wandering tribes that live in the desert.—One saw on all sides trembling women running towards the town.—Do you see that wreckage (*débris, plur.*) floating towards the coast? (Fénelon).—Calypso perceived floating cordage (*plur.*) near (*sur*) the coast (Idem).

686. Great care must be taken in translating the English Present Participle, which is often a *Gerund*, or the equivalent of the *Infinitive*, e.g., *I entered without his seeing me*, the pupil must see at once that such a construction is impossible in French; render—*without that he saw me*, Je suis entré (J'entrai) sans qu'il me vît.

687. Comparative explanations are not of much service; let the pupil rather seek to understand the structure of the French phrase, and some appropriate construction will readily be found. For instance, *The* making *of that road was tedious*, may well be rendered by a *noun*, La *construction* de cette route fut laborieuse. *They speak of* building *a bridge* (it is clear that *de* will govern the Infinitive), On parle de *construire* un pont. *I prefer* walking;—a French verb cannot govern a Present Participle; therefore, J'aime mieux *marcher*, &c. &c.

EXERCISE 135.

The soldiers were punished for not obeying (*Perfect Infinitive*) orders (*à la consigne*).—I regret saying that (*having said*).—The poor fellow (*malheureux*) left the

village without looking behind him.—The boy told me about his brother's going to America (*that his brother had gone*).—The farmer does not like your crossing his fields.—We were listening to the nightingale singing.—The Prussians are not responsible for (*de*) the burning of the Tuileries.—We are tired of working for nothing.

688. The **adjective** derived from a *Present Participle* is sometimes slightly **different in spelling**; as,

PARTICIPLE (invariable).		ADJECTIVE (agreeing).	
fatiguant,	*fatiguing*,	fatigant,	(*idem*).
extravaguant,	*speaking wildly*,	extravagant,	*unreasonable, eccentric.*
intriguant,	*intriguing*,	intrigant,	(*idem*).
négligeant,	*neglecting*,	négligent,	*negligent.*
convainquant,	*convincing*,	convaincant,	(*idem*).
vaquant,	*busying oneself with*,	vacant,	*vacant.*
suffoquant,	*suffocating*,	suffocant,	(*idem*).
adhérant,	*adhering, agreeing to*,	adhérent,	*adherent, sticking to.*
affluant,	*flowing, flocking*,	affluent,	*tributary to.*
différant,	*differing*,	différent,	*different.*
équivalant,	*being equal to*,	équivalent,	*equivalent.*
excellant,	*excelling*,	excellent,	*excellent.*
violant,	*violating*,	violent,	*violent.*
&c.		&c.	

689. Though the Present Participle can never be used in French as a **verbal noun**, like **the eating, travelling,** &c., in English, it often stands for a **person** or a **thing**, in which case it is merely the *adjective used as a noun*; *e.g.*, les vivants, *the living (people)*; un étudiant, *a student*; un passant, *a passer-by*; le couchant, *the west*; le levant, *the east*, &c., just as we say, un riche, *a rich man*; un malheureux, *a wretched man*, &c.

690. A few nouns also differ in spelling besides some of the above adjectives used as nouns; as, *un intrigant, un affluent,* &c.; such are :—

fabriquant,	*manufacturing,*	fabricant,	*a manufacturer.*
présidant,	*presiding.*	président,	*a president.*

EXERCISE 136.

Nous pourrons peut-être y arriver en nous fatiguant beaucoup. C'est une besogne bien fatigante.—Tout en convainquant ses adversaires, on ne les persuade pas toujours (J. J. Rousseau).—Pour croire cela il me faudrait une preuve bien convaincante.—Comment, Monsieur X. est mort! Mais je l'ai vu hier, vaquant à ses affaires.—Il y a une place vacante.—Voilà comment il est, négligeant toujours ses vrais intérêts pour s'occuper de choses futiles.—Les employés de ce fabricant me semblent bien négligents.—Ce pauvre homme gagne sa vie en fabriquant des jouets mécaniques.—Le peuple affluant de tout côté, la vaste place se trouva bientôt encombrée de spectateurs.—Le Nil parcourt toute l'Egypte sans recevoir aucun affluent.—"Les Français n'aiment de l'épée que le tranchant . . ."

He got (*himself*) killed in obeying the orders of his leader (*chef*).—I like obedient little children.—That traveller is always talking, wearying every one with the account (*récit*) of his adventures.—We reached the village after three hours of fatiguing walking (*marche, fem.*).—He called several passers-by to witness (*prendre . . . à témoin de*) the violence that was being done him.—Three persons passing in the street were injured by the slates falling from the roof.—Napoleon III. only reached power by violating the constitution.—That answer being equal to a refusal, I have but to withdraw (Larousse).—Our government will only consent to ratify the treaty, on (à) condition that equivalent advantages shall be granted us.—The heat is suffocating to-day (*It makes, &c.*).

Past Participle.

691. The simple rules of agreement already given may be summarised as follows:—

The Past Participle without an auxiliary agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it refers; as,

une fenêtre cassée,	*a broken window.*
une femme assise,	*a woman sitting.*

Gravement **blessés** par cet accident de voiture, **ils** durent renoncer à leur voyage,

Seriously injured by that carriage accident, they had to give up their journey.

692. With the auxiliary *être*, the Past Participle agrees with the subject (*no exception but the reflexive construction*).

La ville est abandonnée,	*The town is abandoned.*
Ils sont morts,	*They died* (or, *are dead*).

693. With the auxiliary *avoir*, the Past Participle agrees with the direct object (*accusative*) **when it precedes** (*this can only occur with a transitive verb*).

Je les ai vus (vues),	*I have seen them.*
Les amis que j'ai rencontrés,	*The friends I met.*

Combien de prunes a-t-il mangées?
How many plums has he eaten?

but no agreement when the direct object follows; as,

Il a mangé des prunes.

694. In the case of reflexive verbs and constructions, *être* is always used **with the force** of *avoir*, therefore the above rule strictly applies. We must remember that in the case of all **essentially pronominal** verbs

(except *s'arroger*) and in many **idiomatic expressions** the reflexive pronoun **is the direct object (608, 310, 316).**

Elle **s'**est blessée,	*She has hurt herself.*
Ils **se** sont battus,	*They have fought.*
Les romans **qu'**il s'est procurés,	*The novels he got for himself.*
&c.	*&c.*

695. A few difficulties occur in connection with these agreements. Poets of the seventeenth century often place the noun before the participle and make the latter agree; as,

Les tièdes zéphyrs ont l'**herbe rajeunie** (for, ont rajeuni l'herbe),
Mild zephyrs have caused young grass to grow—(La Fontaine).

Le seul amour de Rome a sa **main animée**,
The love of Rome alone nerved his hand—(Corneille).

696. In the following cases there is no agreement. When the verb is really intransitive; as,

Les deux heures **que** le malade a **dormi** lui ont fait du bien,
The two hours the patient slept did him good.

It is clear that one cannot *sleep an hour* in a transitive sense; the meaning is *during which.*

So also,

Les soixante ans **que** la reine Victoria a **régné**.
Monsieur Jourdain considérait comme perdues les années **qu'**il avait **vécu** dans l'ignorance.
Les deux mois **qu'a duré** le siège,
The two months the siege has lasted.

Thus we see that *dormir, régner, vivre,* and *durer* can have no true direct object.

697. Thus also with impersonal verbs which are naturally intransitive—

Les trois jours **qu'**il a **plu**,
The three days it has rained.

Les chaleurs qu'il a fait,
The hot weather we have had.
Les inondations qu'il y a eu en Espagne,
The inundations there have been in Spain.
(but:—Les *malheurs* qu'il a eus).

698. In many cases the complement of a verb in a compound tense is a following clause or infinitive expressed or understood; as,

Les cadeaux *que* j'avais cru *qu'il me ferait*—
J'avais cru qu'il me ferait des cadeaux.

Nous lui avons rendu les *honneurs que* nous avons pu et *que* nous avons dû (*lui rendre*) = Nous avons dû lui rendre des honneurs.

699. **Fait** followed by an infinitive **never agrees.**

La maison *qu'*il a fait bâtir,
The house he has had built.
(but:—La *faute* qu'il a faite).
La *robe qu'*elle s'est fait faire,
The dress she has had made for herself.
(but:—La *robe* qu'elle s'est faite,
The dress she has made for herself.)

700. It is often rather difficult to determine whether the preceding accusative is the object of the Infinitive or of the Participle.

Rule.—If you can turn the **Infinitive** into a **Present Participle** or **Infinitive** in English there is **agreement**; if into a **Passive Infinitive** or **Past Participle** there is **no** agreement; as,

La dame que j'ai entendue chanter,
The lady I heard singing.
La romance *que* j'ai entendu chanter,
The song I heard sung.
L'actrice que j'ai vue jouer,
The actress I saw playing.
La pièce *que* j'ai vu jouer,
The piece I saw played.

Elle **s'est laissée** tomber dans un fauteuil,
She let herself drop into an arm-chair.

Les ennemis ne *se* sont pas **laissé** battre,
The enemies did not allow themselves to be beaten.

Les enfants **que** j'ai **laissés** sortir,
The children I allowed to go out.

Les enfants *que* j'ai **laissé** punir,
The children I allowed to be punished.

701. The participle is subject to the same rules as we have already seen in connection with the verb and its subject (**616, &c.**) the adjective (**573**) and the case of collective nouns (**621-623**), la plupart (**624**), le peu (**625**), &c.; as,

Votre ignorance fait voir *le peu* d'attention *que* vous **avez apporté** à vos études.
Le peu de *soupe* **qu'**il **a mangée** lui a fait du bien.
J'ai déjà parcouru la plupart des *livres* **que** vous m'**avez prêtés.**
Les *régiments* d'infanterie **que** nous avons **vus.**
Cette foule d'*erreurs* **qu'**il **a commises.**

702. Although *en* is an indirect object, the participle agrees with the noun for which it stands when it is preceded by an adverb of quantity, such as, *combien, beaucoup, autant,* &c.; as,

Vous aviez fait plusieurs fautes ; *combien en* avez-vous *corrigées?*
Autant d'ennemis il a attaqués, *autant* il *en* a *vaincus,*
As many enemies as he attacked, so many did he conquer.
Plus j'en ai connus, moins j'en ai estimés,
The more of them I have known, the fewer I have esteemed.

703. Remember that **le** standing for an adjective or a clause is masculine (for neuter); as,

Sa peine n'était pas si grande que je l'aurais **cru,**
Her grief was not so great as I should have thought it.
La position des batteries n'est pas si bonne que je l'aurais **voulu (désiré).**

704. *Coûté,* cost, and *valu,* worth, are invariable in their true sense, but variable in a figurative sense ; as,

Ce cheval m'a coûté mille francs, mais il ne *les* a jamais **valu.**
Les honneurs que j'ai reçus, c'est mon habit qui me **les** a **valus.**
Je regrette les vingt mille francs *que* cette maison m'a **coûté.**
Que de **soins** cet enfant m'a **coûtés** !

704 (a). *Attendu, excepté, passé, vu, y compris* are invariable when placed **before** a noun **(583)** ; as,

Attendu ses infirmités,	*Considering his infirmities.*
Excepté les jours de fête,	*Except on holidays.*
Vu l'urgence,	*Seeing the urgency.*
Y compris la ferme,	*Including the farm.*

EXERCISE 137.

Correct the Participles when necessary, giving the rule.

Les lettres furent *imbibé* d'eau de mer et *rendu* complètement illisibles.—Il avait dans la terre une somme *enfoui* (La Fontaine).—Quelque rang où (*To however high a rank*) jadis soient *monté* mes aïeux (Racine).—Ah ! que d'un si beau (*noble*) sang dès longtemps *altéré* Rome tient maintenant sa victoire *assuré* (Id.).—Ne m'abandonne pas ("me" *feminine*), toi qui m'as *appelé.* J'ai besoin d'être *consolé* (A. Guiraud). —Voilà des fruits que j'ai *vu* mûrir.—Il ne verra jamais moissonner les blés que ce printemps il a *vu* semer.— On ne l'a (*la* a) jamais *entendu* médire même de ses rivales.—Ce sont les enfants de chœur que nous avons *entendu* chanter.—Je les ai *entendu* gronder.—Ils se sont *laissé* aller à faire des grimaces dans le dos de leur maître (se laisser aller = *to give way to an impulse, a temptation*).—Les soldats se sont *laissé* mener au feu mais sans entrain.—Les grands froids qu'il a *fait* ces jours-ci ont *arrêté* la navigation sur le fleuve.—Les désordres qui se sont *produit* ont *obligé* le président à lever la séance.—Ces fleurs sont plus belles que je ne *les* avais *cru.*—J'ai *reçu* beaucoup de cartes de Noël.—Combien en avez-vous *reçu ?*

Prepositions required by certain Verbs.

For reference only.

705. Verbs which require the preposition **à** before the **Infinitive** of the following verb :—

s'abaisser *à*, *to stoop* to.
aboutir *à*, *to end* in.
s'accorder *à*, *to agree* in.
accoutumer *à*, *to accustom* to.
aider *à*, *to assist* in.
aimer *à*, *to like* to. [with.
s'amuser *à*, *to amuse oneself*
animer *à*, *to excite* to.
s'appliquer *à*, *to apply* to.
apprendre *à*, *to learn* to.
s'apprêter *à*, *to get ready* to.
aspirer *à*, *to aspire* to.
s'attendre *à*, *to expect* to.
autoriser *à*, *to authorize* to.
avoir *à*, *to have* to.
balancer *à*, *to hesitate* to.
chercher *à*, *to seek* to.
commencer *à*, *to begin* to.
condamner *à*, *to condemn* to.
condescendre *à*, *to condescend* to.
consentir *à*, *to consent* to.
consister *à*, *to consist* in.
contraindre *à*, *de* *to compel* to.
contribuer *à*, *to contribute* to.
destiner *à*, *to destine* to.
se déterminer *à*, *to resolve* upon.
disposer *à*, *to dispose* to.
se disposer *à*, *to prepare* to.
donner *à*, *to give* to.
dresser *à*, *to train* to.
employer *à*, { *to employ* to. / *to use* to.
encourager *à*, *to encourage* to.
engager *à*, *to induce* to.
enhardir *à*, *to embolden* to.
enseigner *à*, *to teach* to.
être *à* (faire), *to be* to (be done).
s'étudier *à*, *to study* to.
exceller *à*, *to excel* in.
exciter *à*, *to excite* to.

exercer *à*, *to exercise* in.
exhorter *à*, *to exhort* to.
exposer *à*, *to expose* to.
se fatiguer *à*, *to get tired* with.
gagner *à*, *to gain* by.
habituer *à*, *to accustom* to.
se hasarder *à*, *to venture* to.
hésiter *à*, *to hesitate* to.
s'intéresser *à*, *to take an interest* [in.
inviter *à*, *to invite* to.
se mettre *à*, *to begin* to.
montrer *à*, *to show* to.
s'obstiner *à*, *to persist* in.
occuper *à*, *to occupy* in.
s'occuper *à*, *to busy oneself*
s'offrir *à*, *to offer* to. [with.
oublier *à*, *to forget* how.
parvenir *à*, *to succeed* in.
passer *à*, *to spend* in.
penser *à*, *to think* of.
perdre *à*, *to lose* in.
persévérer *à*, *to persevere* in.
persister *à*, *to persist* in.
se plaire *à*, *to delight* in.
porter *à*, *to incline* to.
se prendre *à*, *to begin* to.
préparer *à*, *to prepare* to.
provoquer *à*, *to incite* to.
recommencer *à*, *to begin again* to.
réduire *à*, *to reduce* to.
renoncer *à*, *to renounce.*
se résoudre *à*, *to resolve* to.
rester *à*, *to remain* to.
réussir *à*, *to succeed* to, in.
servir *à*, *to serve* to.
songer *à*, *to think* of.
tarder *à*, *to delay* in.
tendre *à*, *to tend* to.
viser *à*, *to aim* at. [to.
se vouer *à*, *to devote oneself*

706. Verbs which require the preposition **de** before the **Infinitive** of the following verb:—

s'abstenir *de*, *to abstain* from.
accuser *de*, *to accuse* of.
achever *de*, *to finish*.
affecter *de*, *to affect* to.
s'affliger *de*, *to be grieved* at.
ambitionner *de*, *to aspire* to.
appréhender *de*, *to fear* to.
avertir *de*, *to warn* to.
s'aviser *de*, *to bethink* of.
blâmer *de*, *to blame* for.
brûler *de*, *to be impatient*
cesser *de*, *to cease* to. [to.
charger *de*, *to charge* to.
commander *de*, *to command* to.
conjurer *de*, *to conjure* to.
conseiller *de*, *to advise* to.
craindre *de*, *to fear* to.
défendre *de*, *to forbid* to.
défier *de*, *to defy* to.
se dépêcher *de*, *to make haste* to
désespérer *de*, *to despair* to.
différer *de*, *to delay* in.
dire *de*, *to tell* to.
discontinuer *de*, *to discontinue* to
dispenser *de*, *to dispense* with
dissuader *de*, *to dissuade* from
écrire *de*, *to write* to.
s'efforcer *de*, *to endeavour* to.
empêcher *de*, *to prevent*.
s'empresser *de*, *to hasten* to.
entreprendre *de*, *to undertake* to.
essayer *de*, *to try* to. [at.
s'étonner *de*, *to be astonished*
éviter *de*, *to avoid* to.
excuser *de*, *to excuse* for.
exempter *de*, *to exempt* from.
feindre *de*, *to feign* to. [on.
féliciter *de*, *to congratulate*
finir *de*, *to finish*. [to.
se flatter *de*, *to flatter oneself*
se garder *de*, *to take care not*
se glorifier *de*, *to glory* in. [to.
gronder *de*, *to scold* for.
se hâter *de*, *to hasten* to.
manquer *de*, *to fail* to.
menacer *de*, *to threaten* to.
mériter *de*, *to deserve* to.
négliger *de*, *to neglect* to.
offrir *de*, *to offer* to.
omettre *de*, *to omit* to.
ordonner *de*, *to order* to.
oublier *de*, *to forget* to.
pardonner *de*, *to forgive* for.
permettre *de*, *to permit* to.
persuader *de*, *to persuade* to.
se piquer *de*, *to pretend* to.
plaindre *de*, *to pity* to, for.
prescrire *de*, *to prescribe* to.
presser *de*, *to urge* to.
prier *de*, *to request* to.
promettre *de*, *to promise* to.
proposer *de*, *to propose* to.
recommander *de*, *to recommend*
refuser *de*, *to refuse* to. [to.
regretter *de*, *to regret* to.
se réjouir *de*, *to rejoice* to.
remercier *de*, *to thank* for.
se repentir *de*, *to repent* of, to.
reprocher *de*, *to reproach* for.
résoudre *de*, *to resolve* to.
risquer *de*, *to run the risk* of.
rougir *de*, *to blush* to.
se soucier *de*, *to care* to.
soupçonner *de*, *to suspect* to.
se souvenir *de*, *to remember* to.
suggérer *de*, *to suggest* to.
supplier *de*, *to entreat* to.
tâcher *de*, *to endeavour* to.
trembler *de*, *to tremble* to.
se vanter *de*, *to boast* of.

REMARK.—Numerous exceptions to the foregoing lists are to be found in authors of various periods, but the modern custom is commonly as given above.

707. Verbs which require no preposition before the **Infinitive** of the following verb :—

aimer mieux,*	*to like better.*	oser,	*to dare.*
aller,	*to go.*	paraître,	*to appear.*
compter,	*to intend.*	pouvoir,	*to be able.*
croire,	*to think.*	prétendre,	*to pretend.*
daigner,	*to deign.*	savoir,	*to know how.*
devoir,	*to owe.*	sembler,	*to seem.*
entendre,	*to hear.*	souhaiter,	*to wish.*
espérer,	*to hope.*	valoir mieux,*	*to be better.*
faire,	*to make, to cause.*	venir,†	*to come.*
falloir,	*to be necessary.*	voir,	*to see.*
s'imaginer,	*to fancy.*	vouloir,	*to wish,* / *to be willing.*
laisser,	*to leave, to let.*		

708. The following take either *à* or *de*—

commencer,	*to begin.*	forcer,	*to force.*
continuer,	*to go on.*	obliger,	*to oblige.*

Il commence à (de) pleuvoir, *It is beginning to rain.*
Ils continuaient à (de) travailler, *They went on working.*
On l'a forcé à (de) sortir, *They forced him to go out.*
Vous m'obligez à (de) vous répondre franchement, *You oblige me to answer frankly.*

A very considerable number take different prepositions to express different shades of meaning. Compare, for instance, *Je vous demande de me le prêter*, with, *Je ne demande qu'à gagner ma vie ;* and, *Elle pensa en mourir*, with, *Avez-vous pensé à faire ce que je vous ai demandé ?*

---

* These expressions take *que de* when there is a second Infinitive; as,

J'aime mieux y aller que de lui écrire,
I had rather go than write to him.
Il vaut mieux travailler que de ne rien faire,
It is better to work than to do nothing.

† Venir may also take *pour* ; as,

Je suis venu pour vous avertir du danger qui vous menace,
I have come to warn you of the danger which threatens you.

For *venir de* and *venir à*, see 389.

Uses of c'est and il est.

709. Ce is used instead of a personal pronoun when *être* is followed by a noun, unless the latter is merely an attribute. The verb is put in the plural before a plural noun, but *ce* remains invariable.

He is my friend,	C'est mon ami.
They are my friends,	Ce sont mes amis.
She is the colonel's wife,	C'est la femme du colonel.
It is a charming country,	C'est un pays charmant.
He is a doctor,	Il est médecin.
She was a teacher,	Elle était institutrice.

710. *It, that, those,* are rendered by *ce* in similar connections and also before pronouns; as,

Who is there?	Qui est là?
It is the joiner,	C'est le menuisier.
It is he (she),	C'est lui (elle).
That is my hat,	C'est mon chapeau.
Those are my gloves,	Ce sont mes gants.

In the interrogative form, *là* is generally added; as,

Est-ce là votre chapeau? Sont-ce là vos gants?

Etre may be preceded by *devoir* or *pouvoir*; as,

He must be the doctor,	Ce doit être le médecin.
She can only be the nurse,	Ce ne peut être que la garde.

With *nous* and *vous,* **c'est** remains singular.

C'est nous. C'était vous (*plural*).

711. When *it is* clearly refers to a noun and is followed by an adjective or participle, *il* or *elle* must be used; as,

Veuillez me prêter ce roman, il est très intéressant,
Please lend me that novel, it is very interesting.

Jetez cette tasse, elle est fêlée,
Throw away that cup, it is cracked.

712. If *it is* occurs impersonally before an adjective, use *c'est*, unless the adjective be restricted by a following clause; as,

Voulez-vous y aller?—Non, c'est impossible,
Will you go? — *No, it is impossible.*

Il m'est impossible d'y aller aujourd'hui,
It is impossible for me to go to-day.

C'est ennuyeux, *It is tiresome.*

Il est ennuyeux qu'il ne vienne pas,
It is tiresome that he does not come.

Notice the cedilla in compound tenses; as,

Ç'a été terrible, *It was terrible.*
Ç'avait été long, *It had been tedious.*

713. *C'est* is used for *is* between two infinitives or after a long subject; as,

Laisser le crime impuni, c'est s'en rendre complice,
To leave crime unpunished is to become an accomplice.

La véritable cause du désastre, c'est l'imprévoyance de nos chefs,
The true cause of the disaster is the want of foresight of our leaders.

Omission of pas.

714. *Pas* or *point* may be omitted after *savoir, oser, pouvoir, cesser, daigner*, and in a few expressions; as,

Il ne cesse de nous le répéter.—N'importe!
He has never done repeating it.—No matter!

Il y a longtemps que je ne l'ai vu,
I have not seen him for a long time.

Que n'est-il venu plus tôt? (487),
Why did he not come sooner?

Un roi n'a d'autre frein que sa volonté même,
A king has no other curb than his own will (Racine).

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-FRENCH

Words occurring in the lesson immediately preceding the Exercise are not given unless they appear elsewhere.

Irregular verbs are marked irr.; mute h's thus: 'h.

able, *capable* (skilful) *habile.*
to be able, *pouvoir, irr.*
about, (of) *de ;* (near) *vers, environ ;* (concerning) *au sujet de.*
to abridge, *abréger.*
abroad, *à l'étranger.*
absence, *absence, f.*
absent-minded, *distrait,—e.*
absurd, *absurde.*
to accept, *accepter.*
accident, *accident, m.*
to accompany, *accompagner.*
according to, *selon, suivant.*
account, *compte, m.*
to accuse, *accuser.*
accused, *accusé.*
to acknowledge, *reconnaître, irr.*
acknowledged, *reconnu.*
acquaintance, *connaissance, f.*
act, *acte, m.*
to act, *agir, reg.*
action, *action, f.*
actor, *acteur.*
actress, *actrice.*
to add, *ajouter.*
address, n., *adresse, f.*
adieu, *adieu, adieux, m.*
admirable, *admirable.*
admiral, *amiral,—aux.*
to admire, *admirer.*
admired, *admiré.*
to adorn, *parer.*
advanced, *avancé.*
advancement, *avancement, m.*
advantage, *avantage, m.*
adventure, *aventure, f.*
advice, *conseil, m.*
to advise, *conseiller.*
affair, *affaire, f.*
affection, *affection, f.*
afraid (to be), *avoir peur (de).*
Africa, *l'Afrique, f.*
after, *après.*
afternoon, *après-midi, m. or f.*
again, *de nouveau,* often *re-* before a verb.
against, *contre.*
age, *âge, m., siècle, m.*
of age, *majeur,—e.*
ago, *il y a* (placed first).
agreement, *conventions, f. pl.*
air, *air, m. ; les airs, m. pl.*
alarming, *alarmant,—e.*
Algeria, *l'Algérie, f.*
all, *tout,—e ; tous, toutes.*
to allow, *permettre, irr.*
allowed, *permis,—e.*
alone, *seul,—e.*
already, *déjà.*

although, *quoique, bien que.*
always, *toujours.*
ambassador, *ambassadeur.*
ambition, *ambition, f.*
America, *l'Amérique, f.*
amiable, *aimable.*
to amuse, *amuser.*
amusing, *amusant,—e.*
ancestors, *aïeux, ancêtres.*
ancient, *ancien,—ne.*
and, *et.*
anger, *colère, f.*
angry with, *fâché contre.*
animal, *animal,—aux, f.*
to announce, *annoncer.*
annoyed, *ennuyé,—e.*
annoying, *ennuyeux,—euse.*
another, *un (une) autre.*
answer, n. *réponse, f.*
to answer, *répondre (à).*
anxious, *inquiet-ète; anxieux-se.*
apartment, *appartement, m.*
apology, *excuse, f. often pl.*
to appear, *paraître, irr.*
appearance, *apparence, f.*
apple, *pomme, f.*
appointed, *nommé.*
appointment, *rendez-vous, m.*
to approach, *s'approcher (de).*
approaches, *abords, m. pl.*
to approve, *approuver.*
apricot, *abricot, m.*
apricot tree, *abricotier, m.*
arbour, *tonnelle, f., pavillon, m.*
argument, *argument, m.*
arm, *bras, m.* (weapon) *arme, f.*
armchair, *fauteuil, m.*
army, *armée.*
arranged, *arrangé.*
to arrest, *arrêter.*
arrival, *arrivée, f.*
to arrive, *arriver (être).*
arrived, *arrivé,—e.*
art, *art, m.*
artist, *artiste, m. and f.*
as, *comme ;* as . . . as, *aussi . . . que.*
ascent, *montée, f.* ; (of mountain) *ascension, f.*
ascension, *ascension, f.*
ashamed (to be), *avoir honte.*
ashes, *cendre, f., often pl.*
Asia, *l'Asie, f.*
asked, *demandé.*
ass, *âne, ânesse.*
assault, *assaut, m.*
assert, *affirmer, prétendre.*
assign, *assigner.*
assist, *aider.* [*s'étonner (de).*
astonished, *étonné ;* to be —
astronomer, *astronome.*
at, *à.*
at last, *enfin.*
to attack, *attaquer.*
to attempt, *tenter.*
attentive, *attentif,—ive.*
attentively, *attentivement.*
audience, *salle, f.; public, m., auditoire, m.*
Augustus, *Auguste.*
aunt, *tante, f.*
Austria, *l'Autriche, f.*
author, *auteur, m.*
to award, *décerner.*

bad, *mauvais,—e.*
badly, *mal.*
baker, *boulanger.*
baker's shop, *boulangerie.*
baker's wife, *boulangère.*
balcony, *balcon.*
ball (dance), *bal, m.*
ball (cannon), *boulet, m.*
banker, *banquier.*
barber, *barbier.*
bargain, *occasion, f., marché, m.*
barracks, *caserne, f. sing.*
basket, *panier, m.,* (open, shallow) *corbeille, f.*
Bastille, *la Bastille* (a celebrated fortress and prison in Paris, taken by the people on 14th July 1789 and demolished).
to bathe, *baigner, se baigner.*
bather, *baigneur,—euse.*
battle, *bataille, f.*
better (to be), *valoir mieux, irr.*
beach, *plage, f.*

to bear a grudge, *en vouloir (à)*.
to beat (267), *battre*.
beautiful, *beau, belle*.
because, *parce que*.
to become, *devenir, irr. (être)*;
bed, *lit, m.* [*convenir à, irr.*
bee, *abeille, f.*
beech-tree, *hêtre, m.*
beer, *bière, f.*
before, *avant* (time), *avant que conj. with subj.*; (in front) *devant*.
to begin, *commencer, se mettre (à)*.
beginning, *commencement, m.*
to behave, *se conduire, irr.*
behind, *derrière*.
behold, *voilà*.
Belgium, *la Belgique*.
to believe, *croire, irr.*
believed, *cru*.
bell, *cloche, f.*
to belong, *appartenir, irr.*
beloved, *aimé, —e*.
best, } 126.
better, }
betrothed, *fiancé, —e*.
bicycle, *bicyclette, f.*
big, *gros, grosse*.
bill (account), *compte m.; note, f.; facture, f.;* (draft), *traite, f.;* (in Parliament) *projet de loi, m.;* (of bird) *bec, m.*
bird, *oiseau, m.*
birthday, *anniversaire, m.*; (saint day) *fête, f.*
biscuit, *biscuit, m.*
black, *noir, —e*.
blame, n., *blâme, m.*
to blame, *blâmer*.
blamed, *blâmé*.
to bless, *bénir, reg.*
blindness, *aveuglement, m.*
blow, *coup, m.*
blue, *bleu, bleue*.
blunted, *émoussé, —e*.
boat, *bateau, m., canot, m.*
body, *corps, m.*
boiler, *chaudière, f.*
bolt, *verrou, m.*
book, *livre, m.*
bookseller, *libraire*.
boom, *digue, f.; barrage, m.*
boot, *bottine, f.*, (big) *botte, f.*
booty, *butin, m.*
born (to be), *naître, irr. (être)*.
to borrow, *emprunter*.
botany, *botanique, f.*
both, *l'un et l'autre, tous les deux, les deux; et . . . (et)*.
bought, *acheté*.
bouquet, *bouquet, m.*
bout, *reprise, f.*
to bow, *saluer*.
box, *caisse, f.; boîte, f.*
boy, *garçon, enfant*.
brave, *brave, courageux, —se*.
bread, *pain, m.*
breadth, *largeur, f.*
to break, *casser, briser*.
to break open, *enfoncer*.
breath, *haleine, f., respiration, f.*
to breathe, *respirer*.
bright, *brillant, —e; éclatant, —e*.
to bring (carry), *apporter*, (lead) *amener*.
to bring an action against, *intenter un procès (à)*.
broken, *cassé, —e*.
broom, *balai, m.;* (plant) *genêt, m.*
brother, *frère*.
brought (carried), *apporté*; (lead) *amené*.
brunette, *brunette*.
brush, *brosse, f.;* (for paint, &c.) *pinceau, m.*
to brush, *brosser*.
Brussels, *Bruxelles (strictly f.)*.
built, *bâti, —e, construit, —e*.
bunch, *botte, f.*
burglar, *voleur, cambrioleur*.
to burn, *brûler*.
burning, n. *incendie, m.*
to burst, *crever*; (violently) *éclater*.
busy, *occupé, —e*.
but, conj., *mais*; adv., *ne . . . que*; but little, *tant soit peu*.

butter, *beurre, m.*
to buy, *acheter.*
by, *par, de.*

cab, *fiacre, m., voiture, f.*
Cæsar, *César.*
Cairo, *le Caire.*
cake, *gâteau, m.*
to call, *appeler* (335). [*visite* (*à*).
to call on, *venir voir, irr. rendre*
calm, *calme.*
calmness, *calme, m.*
Calypso, *Calypso.*
can, v. *pouvoir, irr.*
canal, *canal,—aux, m.*
cannonade, *canonnade, f.*
captain, *capitaine.*
captive, *captif,—ive.*
cardinal, *cardinal,—aux.*
carriage, *voiture, f.*
to carry, *porter.*
cast down, *abattu.*
castle, *château.*
to catch, *prendre, irr., attraper.*
to catch up, *rattraper, rejoindre, irr.*
to catch cold, *s'enrhumer.*
cattle, *bétail, m. sing. bestiaux, m. pl.*
caught, *pris, attrapé.*
cause, n. *cause, f.*
to cause, *faire, irr., causer.*
caused, *causé—e.*
cave, *grotte, f., caverne f.*
celebrated, *célèbre.*
cellar, *cave, f.*
centime, *centime, m.* (10*c.* = 1*d.*)
century, *siècle, m.*
ceremony, *cérémonie, f.*
certain, *certain,—e.*
certainly, *certainement.*
chair, *chaise, f.*
Champs Elysées, *m. pl.* (a well-known promenade in Paris).
change, n., *monnaie, f.* (alteration) *changement, m.*
to change, *changer.*
charming, *charmant,—e.*
chase, n. *chasse, f.*; v. *chasser.*
to cheat, *tromper, voler.*
cheerfully, *gaiement.*
cheese, *fromage, m.*
chemistry, *chimie, f.*
cheque, *chèque, m.*
cherry, *cerise, f.*
child, *enfant, m. and f. in sing., m. only in pl.*
chisel, *ciseau, m.*
to choose, *choisir, reg.*
Christmas, *Noël, f., also m.*
church, *église, f.*
Cicero, *Cicéron.*
cider, *cidre, m.*
clad, *vêtu,—e.*
class, *classe, f.*
clear, *clair,—e.*
to clear up, *éclaircir, reg.*
clerk, *commis, m.*
head clerk, *chef de bureau.*
clever, *'habile, intelligent.*
client, *client,—e.*
climate, *climat, m.*
to climb, *faire l'ascension de.*
cloak, *manteau, m.*
clock, (large) *'horloge, f.* (small) *pendule, f.*
o'clock, *'heure, 'heures, f.* (142).
close, *près de.*
coach, (private) *carrosse, m.* (stage-) *diligence, f., coche, m.*
coachman, *cocher.*
coast, *côte, f.*
coat, *'habit, m.*
coffee, *café, m.*
cold, n. *froid, m.*; adj. *froid,—e.*
colonel, *colonel.*
come, Inf. *venir*; Past Part. *venu,—e* (*être*); excla. *Voyons! Allons!*
to come in, *entrer* (*être*).
to come out, *sortir, irr.* (*être*).
comedy, *comédie, f.*
commercial, *commercial,—ale.*
committed, *commis,—e.*
companion, *compagnon, m., compagne, f.*
compared with, *comparé à.*
complete, *complet,—ète.*

completely, *tout à fait.*
composition, *composition, f.*
concert, *concert, m.*
concluded, *conclu,—e.*
condition, *condition, f.; état, m.*
to condemn, *condamner.*
conduct, *conduite, f.;* v. *conduire.*
confederate, *complice, confédéré.*
confess, *avouer.*
conflict, *lutte, f.*
confidence, *confiance, f.* (secret), *confidence, f.*
to conquer, *conquérir, irreg. vaincre, irr.*
conquered, *conquis,—e.*
consent, v. *consentir, irr.*, n. *consentement, m.*
to consider, *regarder.*
considerable, *considérable.*
constancy, *constance, f.*
constitution, *constitution, f.*
construction, *construction, f.*
consul, *consul.*
continental, *continental,—ale.*
continually, *continuellement.*
to continue, *continuer.*
to contradict, *contredire, irr.*
contrary, *contraire, m.*
to convince, *convaincre, irr.*
cook, n. *cuisinier,—ière.*
to cook, *cuisiner, cuire, irr.; faire cuire, irr.*
coquet, *coquet,—te.*
corn, *blé, m.*
cordage, *cordage, m., often pl.*
corner, *coin, m.*
corrected, *corrigé,—e.*
cost, *coûté.*
country, *pays, m.;* (not the town), *campagne, f.;* (native country), *patrie, f.*
courage, *courage, m.*
court, *cour, f.*
cousin, *cousin,—e.*
to cover, *couvrir, irr.*
cow, *vache.*
cream, *crème, f.*
to create, *créer.*
crime, *crime, m.*
cross, n. *croix, f;* v. *traverser.*
crowd, *foule, f.*
cruel, *cruel,—le.*
cruelty, *cruauté, f.*
cry, n. (shout) *cri, m.*
to cry, *crier;* (weep) *pleurer.*
cunning, *rusé,—e.*
cup, *tasse, f.*
cupboard, *placard, m.*
to cure, *guérir, reg.*
curious, *curieux,—se.*
currants (red or white) *groseilles, f. pl.;* (black) *cassis, m.;* (dry) *raisins de Corinthe.*
curtain, *rideau.*
customer, *client,—e; pratique, f.*
to cut, *couper.*
to cut down, *abattre,* p. *abattu.*
cycle, *bicyclette, f.*

damp, *humide.*
to dance, *danser.*
danger, *danger, m.*
dangerous, *dangereux,—se.*
dare, *oser.*
darkness, *obscurité, f.; ténèbres, f. pl.*
daughter, *fille.*
day, *jour, m.;* (all day) *journée, f.*
daybreak, *point du jour, m.*
daylight, *jour, m.*
dead, *mort,—e;* the dead, *les morts.*
half-dead, (*à*) *demi mort,—e.*
death, *mort, f.*
debt, *dette, f.*
deceitful, *trompeur,—euse.*
deceived, *trompé,—e; déçu,—e.*
deck, *pont, m.*
deep, *profond,—e.*
defeat, n. *défaite, f.;* v. *défaire, irr.; battre, irr.*
defend, *défendre, reg.*
delightful, *délicieux,—se, charmant,—e.*
to deliver (letters), *distribuer,* (goods) *livrer.*
demonstration, *démonstration, f.*
to deny, *nier.*

to depart, *partir, irr.; (être).*
departed, *parti,—e.*
deputy, *député.*
desirous, *désireux,—se.*
desert, *désert, m.*
to deserve, *mériter.*
desk, *pupitre, m.*
desperate, *désespéré, — e, acharné,—e.*
destined, *destiné,—e.*
devotion, *dévouement, m.*
dexterous, *adroit,—e.*
dictionary, *dictionnaire, m.*
to die, *mourir, irr. (être).*
died, *mort,—e.*
difficult, *difficile*
difficulty, *difficulté.*
dining-room, *salle à manger.*
dinner, *dîner, m.*
director, *directeur,—trice.*
disappointed, *désappointé,—e, déçu,—e.*
disastrous, *désastreux,—se.*
discreet, *discret,—ète.*
disease, *maladie, f.*
disgrace, *disgrâce, f.*
dishonour, *honte, f.*
disinterestedness, *désintéressement.*
to dismiss, *congédier.*
to disobey, *désobéir, reg.*
to displease, *déplaire (à), irr.*
displeased, *mécontent,—e.*
displeasure, *déplaisir, m.*
disposal, *disposition, f.*
distance, *distance, f.*
distinctly, *distinctement.*
distress, *détresse, f.*
distribution, *distribution, f.*
to divide, *partager.*
divine, *divin,—e.*
to do, *faire, irr.*
doctor, *médecin, docteur.*
dog, *chien, chienne.*
domains, *domaines, m.*
done, *fait,—e, fini,—e.*
door, *porte, f.*
doorkeeper, *portier,—ière, concierge, m. and f.*
draught, *courant d'air, m.*
drawer, *tiroir, m.*
drawing, *dessin, m.*
drawing-room, *salon, m.*
dreadful, *funeste, épouvantable.*
dress, n. *robe, f.;* v. *s'habiller.*
dress-circle, *balcon, m.*
dressing-room, *vestiaire, m., cabinet de toilette, m.*
dressmaker, *couturière.*
to drink, *boire, irr.*
drought, *sécheresse, f.*
drunk, Past Part. *bu,—e,* adj. *ivre.*
dug, *creusé,—e.*
duke, *duc,*
dungeon, *cachot, m.*
dupe, *dupe, f.*
duration, *durée, f.*
during, *pendant;* (all the time) *durant.*
dust, *poussière, f.*
dusty, *poussiéreux,—se; poudreux,—se.*
to dust, *épousseter.*
Dutch, *hollandais—e.*

earlier, *de meilleure heure, plus tôt.*
early, *de bonne heure, tôt.*
earth, *terre, f.*
eat, *manger.*
eaten, *mangé,—e.*
Edinburgh, *Edimbourg.*
education, *instruction, f., éducation, f.*
effect, *effet, m.*
effort, *effort, m.*
egg, *œuf, m.*
Egyptian, *égyptien,—ne.*
elector, *électeur,*
eloquent, *éloquent,—e.*
to embrace, *embrasser.*
emperor, *empereur.*
empire, *empire, m.*
empress, *impératrice.*
to encamp, *camper.*
encore! *bis!* to—v. *bisser.*
to encourage, *encourager.*
end, *fin, f.; bout, m.*

engines, *machine, f. sing.*
enemy, *ennemi,—e.*
energetic, *énergique.*
England, *l'Angleterre, f.*
English, *anglais,—e.*
engraving, *gravure, f.*
enormous, *énorme.*
enough, *assez.*
to enter, *entrer* (*dans*), (*être*).
enterprise, *entreprise, f.*
entertaining, *amusant,—e.*
enthusiasm, *enthousiasme, m.*
entrance, *entrée, f.*
entrusted, *confié,—e.*
equal, *égal,—e.*
equally, *également.*
error, *erreur, f.*
estate, *propriété, f.*
esteem, n., *estime, f.;* v. *estimer.*
Europe, *l'Europe, f.*
European, *européen,—ne.*
evening, *soir, m., soirée, f.*
event, *événement, m.*
ever (for), *à jamais, éternellement.*
every, *chaque, sing.; tous les, m. pl., toutes les, f. pl.*
everybody,—one, *tout le monde, m. sing.*
everything, *tout, m.*
examination, *examen, m.*
example, *exemple, m.*
excellent, *excellent,—e.*
excursion, *excursion, f.*
to excuse, *excuser.*
executed, *exécuté,—e.*
exercise, (written) *thème, m.;* (bodily) *exercice, m.*
exhausted, *épuisé,—e.*
to expect, *attendre, reg.*
expectation, *attente, f.*
expensive, *coûteux,—se.*
experience, *expérience, f.*
explain, *expliquer.*
exploration, *exploration, f.*
express, *exprimer.*
extinguished, *éteint,—e.*
eye, *œil, m.; yeux, pl.*

face, *figure, f.; visage, m.*
fail, (without —) *sans faute.*
fair, (beautiful) *beau, belle.*
fair, n., *foire, f.*
faithful, *fidèle.*
fall, n. *chute, f.;* v. *tomber* (*être*).
fallen, *tombé* (with *être*).
falsehood, *mensonge, m.*
family, *famille, f.*
famine, *famine, f.*
fan, n. *éventail, m.;* v. *s'éventer.*
farm, *ferme, f.*
farmer, *fermier,—ière.*
fast, *vite.*
father, *père.*
fatiguing, *fatigant,—e.*
fault, *faute, f.;* (of character) *défaut, m.*
favour, *faveur, f.*
favourable, *favorable.*
favourite, *favori, favorite.*
fear, n. *peur, f., crainte, f.*
to fear, *craindre, irr., avoir peur de.*
to feel, *sentir, irr.*
feeling, *sentiment, m.*
fellow, *garçon.*
festival, *fête, f.*
feudal, *féodal,—e.*
fever, *fièvre, f.*
few, *peu de.*
a few, adj. *quelques,* pro. *quelques-uns, quelques-unes.*
fidelity, *fidélité, f.*
field, *champ, m.;* (—of battle)—*de bataille.*
fifty, *cinquante.*
fight, *combat, m.; lutte, f.*
filled, *rempli,—e* (*de*).
to find, *trouver.*
to find again, *retrouver.*
fine, *beau, belle.*
finger, *doigt, m.*
to finish, *finir, reg. achever.*
finished, *fini,—e, achevé,—e.*
fire, *feu, m.,* (conflagration) *incendie, m.*
to fire, *tirer.*
fireman, *pompier.*

fireplace, *cheminée, f.*
firm, *ferme.*
firmament, *firmament, m.*
firmness, *fermeté, f.*
first, *premier,—ière.*
fish, n. *poisson, m.* ; v. *pêcher.*
fisherman, *pêcheur,—euse.*
fishing, n. *pêche, f.*
to flatter, *flatter.*
flattering, *flatteur,—euse.*
fleet, *flotte, f.*
to float, *flotter.*
floor, (story) *étage, m.*; (boards) *plancher, m.*
flour, *farine, f.*
flower, *fleur, f.*
foam, *écume, f.*
foliage, *feuillage, m.*
to follow, *suivre, irr.*
followed, *suivi,—e.*
fond, adj. *tendre*; to be fond of, *aimer.*
foot, *pied, m.*
for, prep. *pour*; (during) *pendant*; conj. *car.*
to forbid, *défendre* (à *quelqu'un*) (DE *faire*).
forbidden, *défendu,—e.*
force, n. *force, f.* ; v. *forcer.*
forefather, *ancêtre.*
foreign, *étranger,—ère.*
forest, *forêt, f.*
forgery, *faux, m.*
to forget, *oublier.*
to forgive, *pardonner* (à).
forgotten, *oublié,—e.*
former, *celui-là, celle-là, &c., ancien,—ne.*
formerly, *autrefois.*
fortress, *forteresse, f.*
fought, *combattu, battu* (*ref.*) (of battle), *livré,—e.*
four, *quatre.*
fox, *renard, m.*
franc, *franc, m.*
France, *la France.*
Francis, *François.*
frank, *franc,—che.*
frankly, *franchement.*
Frederick, *Frédéric.*
free, *libre.*
French, *français,—e.*
fresh, *frais, fraîche.*
friend, *ami,—e.*
friendship, *amitié, f.*
fright, *peur, f.* ; *frayeur, f.*
to frighten, *faire peur* (à), *effrayer.*
from, *de, à.*
fruit, *fruit, m.*
fugitive, *fuyard, m.*
full, *plein,—e.*
furnished, *meublé,—e.*

to gain, *gagner.*
gallery, *galerie, f.*
gambling, *jeu, m.*
garden, *jardin, m.*
Gauls, *Gaulois, m.*
general, n. *général,—aux* ; adj. *général,—ale.*
generally, *généralement.*
gentle, *doux, douce.*
gentleman, *monsieur.*
gentlemen, *messieurs.*
geology, *géologie, f.*
German, *allemand,—e.*
Germany, *l'Allemagne, f.*
gesture, *geste, m.*
to get, (become) *devenir, irr.*; *faire, irr.* (449).
to get married, *se marier.*
to get up, *se lever.*
girded, *ceint.*
girl, *fille, jeune fille.*
to give, *donner.*
given, *donné,—e.*
glad, *content,—e.*
glass, *verre, m.*
Glasgow, (same) or *Glascow.*
glory, *gloire, f.*
glove, *gant, m.*
to go, *aller, irr.*
to go away, *s'en aller, irr.*
to go to bed, *se coucher.*
to go home, *rentrer*, (*être*).
to go out, *sortir, irr.* (*être*).
to go to sleep, *s'endormir, irr.*

to go to sleep again, *se rendormir, irr.*
to go wrong, *se tromper.*
God, *Dieu.*
gods, *dieux.*
goddess, *déesse.*
godfather, *parrain.*
godmother, *marraine.*
good, *bon, bonne.*
Good morning, *bonjour, m.*
goodness, *bonté, f.*
goods, *biens, m. pl.;* (commercial) *marchandise, f., sing. or pl.*
government, *gouvernement, m.*
grace, *grâce, f.*
grammar, *grammaire, f.*
grammatical, *grammatical,—e.*
grand, *grand,—e; magnifique.*
grandchild, *petit-enfant, pl. petits-enfants.*
grandfather, *grand-père, aïeul.*
to grant, *accorder, consentir.*
grated, *grillé,—e.*
gratitude, *reconnaissance, f.*
great, *grand,—e.*
greatly, *beaucoup, bien.*
greatcoat, *pardessus, paletot, m.*
Greek, *grec, grecque.*
grief, *douleur, f.; chagrin, m.*
grieved, *affligé,—e, désolé,—e.*
grimace, *grimace, f.*
grocer, *épicier,—ière.*
ground, *terrain, m.*
grown, *grandi, poussé.*
guard, n. (man) *garde, m.;* (corps) *garde, f.;* v. *garder, protéger.*
to guess, *deviner.*
guide, *guide, m.*
guilty, *coupable.*

hailed, *accueilli,—e.*
hair, (collective) *cheveux, m. pl.*
half, n. *moitié, f.;* adj. *demi* (580).
half-dead, *à moitié mort.*
hammer, *marteau, m.*
hand, n. *; main, f.*
to hand, *remettre, irr.;* Past Part., *remis.*
handkerchief, *mouchoir, m.*
handsome, *beau, bel, belle.*
to happen, *arriver* (*être*).
happiness, *bonheur, m.*
happy, *'heureux,—se.*
harbour, *port, m.*
hard, *dur, dure.*
harp, *harpe, f.*
harshly, *durement.*
hat, *chapeau, m.*
hatred, *haine, f.*
haughtiness, *hauteur, f.*
haughty, *hautain,—e.*
hay, *foin, m., often pl.*
head, *tête, f.*
headache, *mal de tête, m.*
to hear, *entendre, reg.*
heard, *entendu,—e.*
heart, *cœur, m.*
heat, *chaleur, f.*
heather, *bruyère, f.*
heaven, *ciel, pl. cieux.*
height, *hauteur, f.*
helm, *gouvernail,—s.*
help, n. *secours, m.;* v. *aider.*
hen, *poule, f.*
Henry, *Henri,* or *'Henri.*
Henrietta, *'Henriette.*
here, *ici;* here is (are), *voici.*
to hide, *cacher, se cacher.*
high, *haut,—e.*
Highness, *Altesse, f.*
hill, *colline, f.*
hilt, *poignée, f.; garde, f.*
historian, *'historien.*
history, *'histoire, f.*
to hold, *tenir, irr.*
hole, *trou, m.*
holidays, *vacances, f. pl.*
honest, *'honnête.*
honourable, *'honorable.*
honour, *'honneur, m.*
hope, n. *espoir, m., espérance, f.;* v. *espérer.*
horizon, *'horizon, m.*
horn, *corne, f.*
horse, *cheval,—aux.*

horseman, *cavalier.*
hospitality, *'hospitalité, f.*
hotel, *'hôtel, m.*
hour, *'heure, f.*
house, *maison, f.*, also *chez.*
how, *comment? que!*
—— many? much, *combien?*
hundred, (129–139) *cent,—s.*
hunter, *chasseur.*
hurt, *blessé,—e.*
hydrophobia, *rage, f.*

identity, *identité, f.*
ignorance, *ignorance, f.*
ill, *malade.*
immediately, *sur le champ.*
important, *important,—e.*
impossible, *impossible.*
in, *dans, en* (494, 496).
in order, *afin de, afin que.*
income, *revenu, m.*
indeed, *vraiment.*
indiscreet, *indiscret,—ète.*
indulgent, *indulgent,—e.*
industry, *travail, m.*
influence, *influence, f.*
to inform, *instruire, irr. ; informer.*
information, *renseignement, m.*
to inhabit, *'habiter.*
inhabitant, *'habitant, m.*
to injure, *blesser.*
ink, *encre, f.*
inn, *auberge, f.*
inscription, *inscription, f.*
inseparable, *inséparable.*
instead of, *au lieu de.*
insufficiently, *insuffisamment.*
intelligent, *intelligent,—e.*
to intend, *compter.*
intense, *intense.*
intention, *intention, f.*
to interest, *intéresser.*
interesting, *intéressant,—e.*
to interrupt, *interrompre, reg.*
interval, *intervalle, m.*
intervention, *intervention, f.*
introduced, *présenté,—e.*
introduction, *recommandation, f.*
inundation, *inondation, f.*
invitation, *invitation, f.*
iron, *fer, m.*
ironmonger, *quincaillier.*
issue, *résultat, m.*

James, *Jacques.*
Jane, *Jeanne.*
January, *janvier, m.*
jealous, *jaloux,—se.*
Jew, *juif, juive.*
John, *Jean.*
joiner, *menuisier.*
Joseph, *Joseph.*
journey, *voyage, m.*
judge, n. *juge,* v. *juger.*
just, *juste.*
just now, *en ce moment.*
just then, *à ce moment.*
to justify, *justifier.*

to keep, *garder.*
key, *clef, f.*
to kill, *tuer.*
killed, *tué,—e.*
kind, *bon, bonne.*
kindly, *avec bonté.*
kindness, *bonté, f.*
king, *roi, m.*
kitchen, *cuisine, f.*
kitchen garden, *potager, m.*
kitchen range, *fourneau de cuisine, m.*
knee, *genou, m.*
knife, *couteau, m.*
to knock, *frapper.*
to know, (405, 435).
known, *su,—e ; connu,—e* (405, 435).

labour, *travail, m. ; labeur, m.*
lady, *dame.*
lake, *lac, m.*
to land, *porter à terre.*
landlord, *propriétaire.*
landscape, *paysage, m.*
language, *langue, f.*
large, *grand,—e.*
last, adj., *dernier,—ière.*

to last, *durer.*
last night, *'hier (au) soir.*
late, adv. *tard,* (applied to a person) *en retard.*
laundress, *blanchisseuse.*
law, *loi, f.*
lawyer, *avocat.*
to lay, *déposer.*
to lay down, *poser.*
laziness, *paresse, f.*
lazy, *paresseux,—se.*
to lead, *mener, conduire, irr.*
leader, *chef.*
leaf, *feuille, f.*
to learn, *apprendre, irr.*
learned, Past Part. *appris,—e.*
learned, adj. *savant,—e, instruit,—e.*
to leave (abandon, leave behind), *laisser;* (to depart from) *quitter, partir.*
left (past part.), *laissé,—e.*
legion, *légion, f.*
to lend, *prêter;* lent, *prêté.*
Leonidas, *Léonidas.*
less, *moins.*
lesson, *leçon, f.*
letter, *lettre, f.*
library, *bibliothèque, f.*
life, *vie, f.*
light, n. *lumière, f., jour, m.*
light, v. (imperative) *allumez.*
to like, *aimer,* (to wish) *vouloir.*
line, *ligne, f.*
linen, (in general) *linge, m.* (flaxen) *toile, f.*
lion, *lion, m.*
lip, *lèvre, f.*
list, *liste, f.*
to listen (to), *écouter* (dir. obj.).
literature, *littérature, f.*
little, adj. *petit,—e;* adv. *peu;* n. *peu, m.*
to live, *vivre, irr.;* (to dwell) *demeurer.*
lived, *vécu.*
locked, *fermé à clef.*
loins, *reins, m. pl.*
London, *Londres.*
long, *long,—ue.*
long (time), *longtemps.*
to look (at), *regarder* (dir. obj.)
to look for (seek), *chercher.*
to look (appear), *paraître, irr.*
to lose, *perdre.*
to lose oneself *seperdre, s'égarer.*
loss, *perte, f.*
lost, *perdu,—e.*
Louisa, *Louise.*
Louvre, *le Louvre* (palace and art gallery in Paris; large shop near Louvre).
low, *bas basse.*
love, n. *amour m;* v. *aimer.*
lucky, *'heureux,—se.*
Lucy, *Lucie.*
luggage, *bagage, m.*
to lunch, *déjeûner.*
to lurk, *rôder.*
Lyceum, *lycée, m.* (a classical secondary school).

Mac-Mahon, Marshal of France, *duc de Magenta* (1808-1893, distinguished himself in the Crimea and at Magenta (1859); took part in Franco-Prussian war; President of the Republic, 1873 to 1879).
made, *fait;* (with adj.) *rendu.*
made out, *rédigé.*
magnificence, *magnificence, f.*
majesty, *majesté, f.*
to make, *faire, irr.,* (before adj.) *rendre, reg.*
mamma, *maman.*
man, *'homme.*
manner, *manière, f.*
map, *carte, f.*
marchioness, *marquise.*
to mark, *marquer.*
market, *marché, m.*
married, *marié,—e.*
marsh, *marais, m.*
marshal, *maréchal.*
to marry, *épouser.*
Mary, *Marie.*
mask, *masque, m.*

mason, *maçon.*
master, *maître.*
match, *allumette, f.*
mathematics, *mathématiques, f. pl.*
matter (to be — with), *avoir.*
mattress, *matelas, m.*
meadow, *pré, m. ; prairie, f.*
to mean, *vouloir dire, irr., avoir l'intention.*
means, *moyen, m.*
measure, *mesure, f.*
meat, *viande, f.*
to meet, *rencontrer.*
memory, *mémoire, f.*
to mention, *rapporter, parler de.*
merchant, *marchand,—e.*
merry, *gai, gaie ; joyeux,—se.*
message, *message, m.*
messenger, *messager,—ère.*
met, *rencontré,—e.*
midnight, *minuit, m.*
mild, *doux, douce.*
mile, *mille, m.*
milk, *lait, m.*
mind, *esprit, m.*
to have a mind, *avoir envie de.*
Minerva, *Minerve.*
minister (of state), *ministre.*
mirror, *glace, f.*
misadventure, *mésaventure, f.*
misery, *misère, f.*
misfortune, *malheur, m.*
to miss, *manquer.*
mistake, *faute, f.*
to be mistaken, *se tromper.*
mitten, *mitaine, f.*
moderation, *modération, f.*
modesty, *modestie, f.*
Monday, *lundi, m.*
money, *argent, m.*
month, *mois, m.*
monument, *monument, m.*
more, *plus ;* (at the end of a sentence) *davantage.*
morning, *matin, m. ; matinée.*
most, *le plus,* (very) *très.*
the most, *la plupart.*
mother, *mère.*
to mount, *monter.*
mountain, *montagne, f.*
mouse, *souris, f.*
mouth, *bouche, f.*
mouthful (bread, &c.), *bouchée, f. ;* (of water, &c.) *gorgée, f.*
museum, *musée, m.*
music, *musique, f.*
must, *il faut* (*falloir, irr.*).
mustard, *moutarde, f.*
mystery, *mystère, m.*

name, *nom, m.*
name-day, *fête, f.*
Napoleon, *Napoléon.*
nation, *nation, f.*
national, *national,—e.*
natural, *naturel,—le.*
nature, *nature, f.*
nasty, *vilain,—e, mauvais,—e.*
naughty, *méchant,—e.*
naval, *naval,—e.*
near, *près de.*
nearly, *presque, faillir, irr.*
neck, *cou, m.*
necklace, *collier, m.*
to need, *avoir besoin de ; demander.*
negligence, *négligence, f.*
niece, *nièce.*
neighbour, *voisin,—e.*
neighbourhood, *voisinage, m.*
nephew, *neveu.*
never, *jamais, ne . . . jamais.*
new, *neuf, neuve ; nouveau, nouvel, nouvelle.*
New Year, *nouvel an, m.*
New Year's Day, *le jour de l'an.*
New Year's gift, *étrennes, f. pl.*
news, *nouvelle, f. sing.* (plu. if more than one item of news).
newspaper, *journal,—aux.*
next, *voisin,—e, prochain,—e, premier,—ière.*
nice, *bon,—ne.*
Nice, *Nice,*
night, *nuit, f.,* (evening) *soir, m.*
nightfall, *tombée de la nuit, f.*
nightingale, *rossignol, m.*

no, adv. *non ;* adj. *aucun,—e.*
nobody, *personne, m. ; ne . . . personne.*
noise, *bruit, m.*
noisy, *bruyant,—e.*
noon, *midi, m.*
not (with verb), *ne* (generally followed by) *pas ;* (without verb) *pas, non.*
note, *note, f.* ; (short letter) *billet, m.*
nothing, *rien, m. ; ne . . . rien.*
to notice, *remarquer, s'apercevoir (de).*
noticed, *remarqué,—e.*
novel, *roman, m.*
November, *novembre,* (abbreviation, 9^bre.).
now, *maintenant, aujourd'hui.*
number (collective), *nombre, m.* (in a series) *numéro, m.*
nut, *noix, f.* (generally walnut) ; (small) *noisette, f.*

oak, *chêne, m.*
obedience, *obéissance, f.*
obedient, *obéissant,—e.*
to obey, *obéir, reg.*
object, *objet m., but, m.*
to oblige, *obliger.*
obstacle, *obstacle, m.*
obstinately, *opiniâtrément.*
occasionally, *parfois, de temps en temps.*
occupation, *occupation, f.*
o'clock (142).
October, *octobre,* (abbrev. 8^bre.).
off (generally rendered by verb), *partir, irr. ;* to take off, *ôter ;* far off, *très loin.*
offer, n. *offre, f. ;* v. *offrir.*
officer, *officier.*
often, *souvent.*
oil, *huile, f.*
old, *vieux, vieil, vieille.*
old man, *vieillard.*
on, *sur.*
once, *une fois ;* at once (instantly), *tout de suite ;* (at same time), *à la fois.*
only, *ne . . . que, seulement.*
open, *ouvert,—e ;* v. *ouvrir, irr.*
opening, *ouverture, f.*
opportunity, *occasion, f.*
opposite, *opposé, d'en face.*
orange, *orange, f.*
orange-tree, *oranger, m.*
orator, *orateur.*
orchard, *verger, m.*
orchestra stalls, *stalles d'orchestre, f.*
order, n. *ordre, m. ;* v. *ordonner ;* (of goods) *commander.*
in order that, *afin que,* subj.
orphan, *orphelin,—e.*
other, *autre.*
ought, cond. of *devoir* (263).
our, *notre, nos ;* ours (148).
outpost, *avant-poste, m.*
ovation, *ovation, f.*
to overcome, *surmonter.*
to overtake, *rejoindre, irr.*
to overwhelm, *accabler.*
owed, *dû, due.*
owl, *hibou.*

pace, *pas, m.*
padlock, *cadenas, m.*
page (of book), *page, f. ;* (attendant) *page, m.*
paid, *payé,—e.*
pain, *peine, f.*
painting, *peinture, f.*
painter, *peintre.*
pair, *paire, f.*
palace, *palais, m.*
pale, *pâle.*
paper, *papier, m.*
paper (news), *journal, m.*
parcel, *paquet, m.*
parents, *parents, père et mère.*
Parisian, *parisien,—ne.*
park, *parc, m.*
particulars, *détails, m. pl.*
to pass, *passer.*
passage, *passage, m.*
passer-by, *passant.*
passion (rage), *colère, f.*
Passy, a pretty suburb of Paris.

patient, n. *malade, m. and f.*
Pavia, *Pavie.*
pay, v. *payer*, n. *paye, f.*
peace, *paix, f.*
peaceful, *paisible.*
peach, *pêche, f.*
pear, *poire, f.*
peasant, *paysan,—ne.*
pen, *plume, f.*
pence, *sous, m. pl.*
pencil, *crayon, m.*
penknife, *canif, m.*
people (nation), *peuple, m.* (a few people) *gens. m. pl.* (company, crowd), *monde, m.*
pepper, *poivre, m.*
perceive, *apercevoir, reg.*
perceptibly, *visiblement, sensiblement.*
performance, *spectacle, m.*
to perish, *périr, reg.*
perseverance, *persévérance, f.*
person, *personne, f.*
personage, *personnage, m.*
Peru, *Pérou.*
Peter, *Pierre.*
Phaeton, *Phaéton.*
phenomenon, *phénomène, m.*
pickpocket, *filou* (or the English word.
picture, *tableau, m.*
piece (of bread, &c. and of music), *morceau, m.;* (theatre, or whole piece of stuff) *pièce, f.*
pier, *jetée, f.*
pig, *cochon, m.*
pine-apple, *ananas, m.*
place, *endroit, m.*, (commercial) *place, f.;* v. *placer.*
planet, *planète, f.*
plank, *planche, f.*
plant, n., *plante, f.*; v. *planter.*
plate, *assiette, f.*
play, v. *jouer;* n. *pièce, f.*
played, *joué*, (a play) *donné.*
pleasant, *agréable.*
pleasantly, *agréablement, gentiment.*
to please, *plaire à* (or dative).
pleased, adj. *content,—e.*
pleasure, *plaisir, m.*
pocket, *poche, f.*
poem, *poème, m.;* (short) *poésie, f.*
poet, *poète.*
policeman, *sergent de ville.*
polite, *poli,—e.*
politeness, *politesse, f.*
pond, *étang, m.*
pony, *petit cheval, poney.*
poor, *pauvre.*
poplar, *peuplier, m.*
populous, *peuplé,—e.*
port, *port* (*de mer*), *m.*
porter, *commissionnaire.*
position, *position, f.*
possess, *posséder.*
post (letters), *poste, f.;* (office held) *poste, m.*
potato, *pomme de terre, f.*
pound, *livre, f.*
poverty, *misère, f.*
power, *pouvoir, m.;* (nation) *puissance, f.*
powerful, *puissant,—e.*
to praise, *louer.*
to prefer, *préférer, aimer mieux.*
prefect, *préfet.*
to prepare, *préparer.*
prepared, *préparé.*
presence, *présence, f.*
present, n. *présent, m.; cadeau, m.;* adj. *présent,—e.*
to present, *présenter.*
to preserve, *préserver.*
pretty, *joli,—e.*
to prevent, *empêcher.*
price, *prix, m.*
pride, *orgueil, m., fierté, f.*
prince, *prince.*
printer, *imprimeur.*
prison, *prison, f.*
prisoner, *prisonnier,—ière.*
prize, *prix, m.*
probable, *probable.*
to proceed, *procéder.*
to procure, *procurer.*

to profit, *profiter.*
profitable, *profitable.*
progress, *progrès.*
promise, v. *promettre, irr ;* n. *promesse, f.*
promised, *promis,—e.*
properly, *convenablement.*
to propose, *proposer.*
proprietor, *propriétaire.*
proud, *fier, fière.*
to prove, *prouver.*
providence, *providence, f.*
provisions, *vivres, m. pl.*
prudence, *prudence, f.*
Prussians, *Prussiens, m. pl.*
public, n. *public, m. ;* adj. *public, publique.*
to publish, *publier.*
pun, *calembour, m,, jeu de mots, m.*
to punish, *punir, reg.*
punished, *puni,—e.*
punishment, *punition, f.*
pupil, *élève, m. and f.*
purchase, v. *acheter ;* n. *emplette, f.*
purchaser, *acheteur,—euse.*
pure, *pur, pure.*
to pursue, *poursuivre, irr.*
put, *mis,-e ;* (imperative) *mettez.*
to put on, *mettre, irr.*
to put out, *faire sortir, irr.*
to put out (fire, light), *éteindre, irr.*

quality, *qualité, f,*
quarter (of a town), *quartier, m.,* ¼, *quart, m.*
quay, *quai, m.*
queen, *reine.*
question, *question, f.*
quiet, *tranquille.*
quietly, *tranquillement.*
quite, *tout, tout à fait.*

race (to run), *course, f. ;* (of men, animals) *race, f.*
radical, *radical,—aux.*
railway, *chemin de fer, m.*
railway accident, *accident de chemin de fer, m.*
rain, n. *pluie, f. ;* v. *pleuvoir, irr.*
to raise, *lever ;* (to build) *élever.*
raised *levé ;* (built) *élevé.*
ransom, *rançon, f.*
rather, *plutôt ; assez* (491).
to ratify, *ratifier.*
to reach, *arriver, atteindre, irr.*
to read, *lire, irr ;* (past part.) *lu.*
reader, *lecteur, lectrice.*
reading, *lecture, f.*
ready, *prêt, prête.*
really, *vraiment.*
reason, *raison, f.*
rebel, *rebelle, m. and f.*
rebuke, n. *réprimande, f. ;* v. *réprimander, reprendre, irr.*
to recall, *rappeler.*
received, *reçu,—e.*
reception, *accueil, m. ; reception, f.*
recruit, *recrue, f.*
red, *rouge ;* (of hair), *roux, rousse* (98).
to redeem, *racheter.*
refusal, *refus.*
to refuse, *refuser.*
regiment, *régiment, m.*
register, *registre, m ;* v. *enregistrer.*
to regret, *regretter.*
reign, n. *règne, m. ;* v. *régner.*
rejoicings, *réjouissances, f. pl.*
to relate, *raconter.*
related, *raconté,—e.*
to rely, *compter.*
remark, n. *remarque, f.,* v. *remarquer.*
remarkable, *remarquable.*
to remain, *rester* (*être*).
remedy, *remède, m.*
to remember, *se souvenir* (*de*), *irr., se rappeler.*
remembrance, *souvenir, m.*
to remind, *rappeler.*
to renew, *renouveler.*
to rent, *louer.*
to repeat, *répéter.*

to repent, *se repentir* (*de*).
report, *bruit, m.*
to represent, *représenter.*
reputation, *réputation, f.*
request, n. *prière, f. ; demande, f. ;* v. *prier, demander.*
to require, *avoir besoin de ; demander.*
to reside, *résider.*
resolved, *résolu* (*de*).
responsible, *responsable.*
to rest, *se reposer.*
restored, *rendu,—e.*
result, *résultat, m.*
to retake, *reprendre, irr.*
retreat, n. *retraite, f ;* v. *battre en retraite.*
to return, *retourner* (*en*); (come back) *revenir, irr.*
review, *revue, f.*
to reward, *récompenser.*
rich, *riche.*
riches, *richesse, f., also plur.*
right (to be), *avoir raison.*
right (side, hand, &c.), *droit, —e ;* (to the right) *à droite,* n. *droit, m.*
ring, n. (finger) *bague, f.*, (wedding-) *alliance, f.;* (iron, &c.) *anneau, m. ;* v. *sonner.*
ripe, *mûr, mûre.*
rival, *rival,—e ; pl. m., rivaux.*
river, *rivière, f. ;* (flowing into the sea) *fleuve, m.*
rivulet, *ruisseau, m.*
road, *route, f., chemin, m.*
robber, *voleur.*
Romans, *Romains.*
Rome, *Rome, f.*
roof, *toit, m.*
room, *chambre, f., salle, f.*
rose, *rose, f.*
rough (of the sea), *mauvaise.*
row (in a line), *rang, m.*
to ruin, *ruiner ;* n. *perte, f.*
ruins, *ruines, f. pl.*
rule, *règle, f.*
rumour, *bruit, m.*
run (past part.), *couru.*
to run away, *se sauver, s'enfuir, irr.*

sad, *triste.*
saddened, *attristé,—e.*
said, *dit,—e.*
sailor, *marin, matelot.*
salad, *salade, f.*
salt, *sel, m.*
salted, *salé, salée.*
sample, *échantillon, m.*
satisfied, *content,—e.*
Saturday, *samedi, m.*
saw, *scie, f.*
to say, *dire, irr.*
scaffolding, *échafaudage, m.*
scholar, *écolier,—ière.*
school, *école, f.*
schoolfellow, *camarade, m. and f., compagnon, — gne ; condisciple, m.*
scone, *galette, f.*
scorching, *brûlant,—e.*
Scotland, *l'Ecosse, f.*
sea, *mer, f.*
sea-side, *bord de la mer, m.*
season, *saison, f.*
seat, *banc, m. ;* v. ref. *s'asseoir.*
seated, *assis,—e.*
to see, *voir, irr.*
to see again, *revoir, irr.*
to seek, *chercher.*
seen, *vu, vue.*
Seine, *la Seine.*
seldom, *rarement.*
to sell, *vendre, reg.*
to send, *envoyer, irr.*
to send for, *envoyer chercher, irr.*
sensible, *sensé,—e.*
sensitive, *sensible.*
sentry, *sentinelle, f.*
separation, *séparation, f.*
sergeant, *sergent.*
servant, *domestique, m. and f.,* (maid servant), *bonne.*
to serve, *servir, irr.*
session, *session, f.*
to set out, *se mettre en route, irr.*

to set to work again, *se remettre à l'ouvrage, irr.*
to settle in a country, *s'établir, reg.*
seventeenth, *dix-septième.*
several, *plusieurs.*
severe, *sévère.*
sewer, *égout, m.*
shallow, *peu profond,—e.*
shawl, *châle, m.*
sheep, *mouton, m.*
shelf, *planche, f., rayon, m.*
shelter, n. *abri, m.*, v. *abriter.*
shepherd, *berger,—ère.*
ship, *vaisseau, m., navire, m.*
shipwrecked sailors, *naufragés.*
shock (earthquake), *secousse, f.*, (blow, or to feelings) *choc, m.*
to shoot, *fusiller.*
shop, (small) *boutique, f.*, (large) *magasin, m.*
short, *court,—e.*
shot, n. *coup de feu, m.*
to show, *montrer, faire voir, irr.*
shown, *montré,—e.*
Shrove Tuesday, *mardi gras, m.*
to shut, *fermer.*
Sicily, *la Sicile.*
sickly, *maladif.*
side, *côté, m.*
sideboard, *buffet, m.*
sides, *côtes, f. pl.*
sigh, n. *soupir, m.*, v. *soupirer.*
sight, *vue, f., spectacle, m.*
to sign, *signer.*
signal, *signal,—aux.*
silent, *silencieux,—se.*
silver, *argent, m.*
since, *depuis*, conj. (time) *depuis que*, (because) *puisque.*
sincere, *sincère.*
to sing, *chanter.*
sinner, *pécheur, pécheresse.*
sister, *sœur.*
to sit, *être assis,—e;* to sit down, *s'asseoir, irr.*
situation, *place, f.*
sixty, *soixante.*
skeleton, *squelette, m.*
sky, *ciel, cieux, m.*
slate, *ardoise, f.*
to sleep, *dormir, irr.* (*see* go).
slide, v. *glisser;* n. *glissade, f.*
slightest, *moindre.*
slowly, *lentement.*
small, *petit,—e.*
smell, v. *sentir, irr.*, n. *odeur, f.*
smile, v. *sourire, irr.*, n. *sourire, m.*, and *souris, m.*
so, *si; ainsi;* (=it, that) *le.*
so that, *de sorte que.*
sobriety, *sobriété, f.*
sofa, *canapé, m.*
soft, *tendre.*
sold, *vendu,—e.*
soldier, *soldat.*
sole (of boot), *semelle, f.*
some, *du, de la, de l', des, un peu de, quelques, &c.*
somebody, some one, *quelqu'un.*
sometimes, *quelquefois.*
something, *quelque chose, m.*
son, *fils.*
son-in-law, *beau-fils.*
soon, *bientôt, tôt.*
as soon as, *aussitôt que.*
sorry, *fâché (de).*
sort, *sorte, f., espèce, f.*
sought, *cherché,—e.*
sound, *bruit, m.*
soup, *soupe, f., potage, m.*
source, *source, f.*
south, *sud, m., midi, m.*
Spain, *l'Espagne, f.*
to spare, *ménager.*
to speak, *parler.*
spectacle, *spectacle, m.*
spectacles, *lunettes, f. pl.*
speculation, *spéculation, f.*
speech, *discours;* (gift of —), *parole, f.*
to spend (money), *dépenser;* (time) *passer.*
spent, *dépensé,—e, passé,—e.*
spilt, *répandu,—e.*
spoilt, *gâté,—e, abîmé,—e.*
spy, *espion, —ne.*

square, *carré*,—*e*.
staff, *bâton*, *m*.
to stand, *se trouver*, *se tenir* (*debout*), *irr*.
star, *étoile*, *f*.
to start, *partir*, *irr*. (*être*), *se mettre en route*, *irr*.; (surprise) *tressaillir*, *irr*.
state, *état*, *m*.
station, *gare*, *f*.
station-master, *chef de gare*.
to stay, *rester* (*être*).
steam, *vapeur*, *f*.
steamer, *vapeur*, *m*.; *bateau à vapeur*, *m*.
step, *pas*, *m*.
sterling, *sterling* (invariable).
stick, *canne*, *f*.; *bâton*, *m*.
still, *encore*, *toujours*.
stitch, *point*, *m*.
stone, *pierre*, *f*.
to stop (trans.), *arrêter*; (intrans.) *s'arrêter*.
to stop (nautical), *stopper*.
stopped, *arrêté*.
store, *provision*, *f*.
storm (thunder), *orage*, *m*.; (wind), *tempête*, *f*.
story, *'histoire*, *f*.
straw, *paille*, *f*.
strawberry, *fraise*, *f*.
stream, *ruisseau*, *m*.; *cours d'eau*, *m*., v. *ruisseler*.
street, *rue*, *f*.
struggle, n. *lutte*, *f*., v. *lutter*.
studious, *studieux*,—*se*.
study, n. *étude*, *f*., v. *étudier*.
stuff, *étoffe*, *f*.
to subdue, *soumettre*, *irr*.
subject, *sujet*,—*te*.
to succeed (get on), *réussir*, *reg*.; (follow) *succéder* (*à*).
success, *succès*, *m*.
successful, *'heureux*,—*se*.
such, *tel*, *telle* (236).
to suffer, *souffrir*, p. *souffert*.
sugar, *sucre*, *m*.
to suit, *convenir*, *irr*. (388).
suite, *suite*, *f*.
summer, *été*, *m*.
summit, *sommet*, *m*.
sun, *soleil*, *m*.
sunstroke, *coup de soleil*, *m*., *insolation*, *f*.
Sunday, *dimanche*, *m*.
sundown, *coucher du soleil*, *m*.
to sup, *souper*.
superior, *supérieur*,—*e*
sure, *sûr*, *sûre*.
to surrender, *se rendre*, *reg*.
survived, *survécu* (*à*).
to suspect, *soupçonner*.
swallow, *'hirondelle*.
sweet, *doux*, *douce*.
Switzerland, *la Suisse*.
sword, *épée*, *f*., *sabre*, *m*.

table, *table*, *f*.
tailor, *tailleur*.
to take, *prendre*, *irr*.; (to conduct) *conduire*, *irr*.
to take in, *rentrer*.
to take place, *avoir lieu*.
taken, *pris*,—*e*, *conduit*,—*e*.
talent, *talent*, *m*.
to talk, *parler*, *causer*.
tall, *grand*,—*e*.
tamer, *dompteur*.
taste, *goût*, *m*.
tea, *thé*, *m*.
tear, n. *larme*, *f*.; *pleur*, *m*.
to tease, *taquiner*, *tourmenter*.
telegram, *dépêche*, *f*., *télégramme*, *m*.
to tell, *dire*, *irr*., *raconter*.
terrace, *terrasse*, *f*.
terrible, *terrible*.
Thames, *la Tamise*.
than, *que*.
thanks, *merci*, *m*., *remerciements*, *m*.
theatre, *théâtre*, *m*.
their, *leur*,—*s*.
there, *là*; (before verb) *y*.
there is (are), *il y a*; *voilà* (827).
thick, *épais*, *épaisse*.
thief, *voleur*,—*euse*.
thing, *chose*, *f*.

to think, *penser* (*à*); (opinion)—(*de*); *croire*, *irr.*
thirst, *soif*, *f.*
thirsty (to be), *avoir soif*, adj. *altéré*,—*e*.
thought, Past Part. *pensé*,—*e*, *cru*,—*e*; n. *pensée*, *f.*
thoughtless, *étourdi*,—*e*, *irréfléchi*,—*e*.
thousand (129, 139).
thrashed, *battu*,—*e*.
to threaten, *menacer*.
throne, *trône*, *m.*
through, *à travers*.
to throw, *jeter*.
thus, *ainsi*.
tide, *marée*, *f.*
tidy, *net*, *nette*; *en bon ordre*.
tiger, *tigre*, *m.*
time, *temps*, *m.*; (of day, o'clock) *heure*, *f.*
times, *fois*, *f.*
tired, *fatigué*,—*e*; *las*, *lasse*.
to, *à*, (for to) *pour*.
to-day, *aujourd'hui*.
together, *ensemble*.
to-morrow, *demain*.
to-night, *ce soir*, *cette nuit*.
too, *trop*, (also) *aussi*.
too much, too many, *trop* (*de*).
tool, *outil*, *m.*
tooth-ache, *mal aux dents*, *mal de dents*, *m.*
top, *haut*, *m.*
torch, *flambeau*, *m.*
tourist, *touriste*.
towards, *vers*.
towel, *serviette* (*de toilette*), *f.*
tower, *tour*, *f.*
town, *ville*, *f.*
to trace, *tracer*.
tradesman, *fournisseur*, *marchand*.
tragedy, *tragédie*, *f.*
train, *train*, *m.*
to train, *dresser*.
tranquillity, *tranquillité*, *f.*
translation, *traduction*, *f.*
to travel, *voyager*.
traveller, *voyageur*,—*euse*.
travels, *voyages*, *m. pl.*
treat, *régal*, *m.*
to treat, *traiter*.
treated, *traité*,—*e*.
treaty, *traité*, *m.*
tree, *arbre*, *m.*
trembling, *tremblant*,—*e*.
tribe, *tribu*, *f.*
tribunal, *tribunal*,—*aux*, *m.*
trick, *tour*, *m.*
trifle, *bagatelle*, *f.*; *rien*, *m.*
to trim, *garnir*, *reg.*
to triumph, *triompher*.
troop, *troupe*, *f.*
trouble, *peine*, *f.*
trout, *truite*, *f.*
true, *vrai*, *vraie*.
trunk, *malle*, *f.*
to trust, *se fier* (*à*), (trans.) *confier*.
truth, *vérité*, *f.*
to try, *essayer*, *tâcher*.
Tuileries, *les Tuileries* (a palace in Paris, burned in 1871).
tumbler, *verre*, *m.*
turbulent, *turbulent*,—*e*.
Turkey, *la Turquie*.
to turn, *tourner*, *se tourner*.
tutor, *précepteur*.
twenty, *vingt*.
twin, *jumeau*, *jumelle*.
two, *deux*.
tyranny, *tyrannie*, *f.*

ugly, *laid*,—*e*; *vilain*,—*e*.
umbrella, *parapluie*, *m.*
uncle, *oncle*.
under, *sous*.
to understand, *comprendre*, *irr.*
unforeseen, *imprévu*,—*e*.
unfortunate, *malheureux*,—*se*.
ungrateful, *ingrat*,—*e*.
unhappy, *malheureux*,—*se*.
unhoped for, *inespéré*,—*e*.
unjust, *injuste*.
until, *jusqu'à*, *jusqu'à ce que*.
up stairs, *en haut*.
upon, *sur*.

Uranus, *Uranus.*
use, *usage, m.*
useful, *utile.*
usual, *d'habitude, usuel,—le.*
uttered, *prononcé,—e.*

vain (in), *en vain.*
valley, *vallée, f.*
valour, *valeur, f., bravoure, f.*
value, *valeur, f.*
to vary, *varier.*
vegetable (edible), *légume, m.*
Venus of Milo; a beautiful Greek statue now in the Louvre, Paris.
Versailles, near Paris, residence of Louis XIV., palace and gardens still exist.
very, adv. *très, fort, bien;* adj. *propre;* (same) *même.*
verses, *vers, m. pl.*
vessel, *vaisseau, m.; navire, m.*
to vex, *ennuyer, contrarier.*
victim, *victime, f.*
victor, *vainqueur.*
victory, *victoire, f.*
view, *vue, f.*
villa, *villa, f.*
village, *village, m.*
vine, *vigne, f.*
vinegar, *vinaigre, m.*
violence, *violence, f.*
violet (flower), *violette, f.;* (colour) *violet,—te.*
Virgil, *Virgile.*
virtue, *vertu, f.*
to visit, *faire visite, rendre visite, aller voir.*
visited, *visité, rendu visite à.*

to wait for, *attendre, reg.* (direct object).
waited, *attendu,—e.*
to wake, *réveiller.*
walk (to take a), *se promener, faire une promenade.*
wall, *mur, m., muraille, f.*
walnut (fruit), *noix, f;* (tree) *noyer, m.*
to wander, *errer.*
to want, *vouloir, irr.; avoir besoin de.*
war, *guerre, f.*
ward, *pupille, m. and f.*
warm, *chaud,—e.*
to wash, *laver.*
watch, *montre, f.*
water, *eau, f.* | way, *manière, f.*
weak, *faible.*
wealth, *richesse, f.*
to wear, *porter.*
to weary, *fatiguer, ennuyer.*
Wednesday, *mercredi.*
week, *semaine, f.; huit jours.*
to weep, *pleurer.*
weight, *poids, m.*
well, adv. *bien;* n. *puits, m.*
when, *quand, lorsque.*
whence, *d'où.*
where, *où.*
which, rel. pro. *qui, que, dont, lequel, &c.;* inter. pro. *lequel? &c.;* adj. *quel, quelle.*
while, *pendant que.*
white, *blanc, blanche.*
who, *qui.*
whole, *entier,—ière.*
whosoever, *quiconque.*
why? *pourquoi?*
why (introducing a sentence), *mais.*
widow, *veuve* (fem. of *veuf*).
wife, *femme, épouse.*
to win, *gagner.*
wind, *vent, m.*
window, *fenêtre, f.*
wine, *vin, m.*
winter, *hiver, m.*
wisdom, *sagesse, f.*
wise, *sage.*
to wish, *vouloir, irr.;* (to wish good luck, &c.) *souhaiter.*
wit, *esprit, m.*
with, *avec,* (at house of) *chez.*
to withdraw, (trans.) *retirer,* (intrans.) *se retirer.*
without, *sans.*
witty, *spirituel,—le, d'esprit.*

wolf, *loup, louve.*
woman, *femme.*
wood, *bois, m.*
woodcutter, *bûcheron.*
word, *mot, m.;* (of honour, speech, &c.) *parole, f.*
work, n. *travail, m., ouvrage, m.,* v. *travailler.*
workman, *ouvrier.*
works, *usine, f. sing, chantier, m.*
world, *monde, m., univers, m.*
worn, *porté,—e,* (old) *usé, usée.*
worse } (126).
worst }
worthy, *digne.*
wound, *blessure, f.;* v. *blesser.*
wreck, n. *naufrage, m.*
to write, *écrire, irr.*
writer, *écrivain, m.*
writing, n. *écriture, f.*
writings, *écrits, m.*
writing-desk (large), *pupitre, m.,* (small) *écritoire, f.*
written, *écrit,—e.*
wrong, adj. *faux, fausse; mauvais,—e;* n. *grief, m.*
to be wrong, *avoir tort.*
to go wrong, *se tromper.*

yard (court), *cour, f.;* (measure) 0·91 mètres (*i.e.*, 91 centimètres), the French use the mètre where the British use the yard).
year, *an, m., année, f.*
yesterday, *'hier.*
yet (however), *pourtant, cependant;* (time) *encore.*
young, *jeune.*
young lady, *demoiselle.*
your, *votre, vos.*
yours, *le (la) vôtre, les vôtres.*

FRENCH-ENGLISH

a, *has.*
à, *at, to, from.*
abandon, *departure.*
abandonner, *to abandon, forsake.*
abattre, *to cast down.*
abondance, *abundance.*
abri, *shelter.*
absence, *absence.*
absolu, *absolute.*
absolument, *positively, in a determined manner.*
accepter, *to accept.*
acclimatation, *acclimatisation;* (introduction of plants and animals from foreign countries—Zoological and Botanical Gardens).
accompagner, *to accompany.*
accord, *accord.*
accueillir, *to welcome, receive.*
accusé, n., *the accused, prisoner*
accuser, *to accuse.*
acheté, *bought.*
acheter, *to buy.*
acheteur, —euse, *buyer, purchaser.*
actif,—ive, *active.*
action, *action.*
adversaire, *adversary, opponent.*
affaire, *affair, business.*
affliger, *to afflict, grieve.*
afin que, *so that, in order to.*
âge, *age.*
agile, *agile, nimble.*
s'agir de, *to be a question of; to be about.*
agneau, *lamb.*
aide, f., *help;* m., *assistant.*
aider, *to help.*
aïe, *oh!*
aïeux, *ancestors, forefathers.*

aiguille, *needle.*
ailleurs, *elsewhere.*
aimable, *amiable, kind.*
aimer, *to love, to like.*
aîné,—e, *eldest, first-born.*
ainsi, *thus, so.*
air, *air, look, appearance.*
Algérie, *Algeria.*
allé, *gone.*
Allemagne, *Germany.*
allemand,—e, *German.*
aller, *to go; to fit.*
alliance, *alliance.*
allier, *to ally, form an alliance.*
Alphonse, *Alphonso.*
altéré,—e, *thirsting, thirsty.*
s'altérer, *to break down, to change for the worse.*
âme, *soul, mind.*
amener, *to bring.*
Amérique, *America.*
ami, -e, *friend;* mon—, *my dear.*
amour, *love.*
amusant,—e, *amusing.*
an, *year.*
ananas, *pine-apple.*
ancien,—ne, *old, former, ancient.*
les anciens, *the ancients.*
âne, ânesse, *ass, she-ass.*
ange, *angel.*
Anglais, — e, *Englishman, — woman.*
anglais,—e, *English.*
angle, *angle.*
Angleterre, *England.*
année, *year.*
annoncer, *to announce.*
apaiser, *to calm.*
apercevoir, *to see, catch sight of.*
s'apercevoir, *to notice.*
appartenir, *to belong.*
appeler, *to call.*
apporter, *to bring.*
appris, *learned, been informed.*
approche, *approach.*
appui, *support.*
après, *after.*
Arabe, *Arab.*
arbre, *tree.*
archevêque, *archbishop.*
argent, *silver; money.*
arme, *arm, weapon.*
armée, *army.*
arrêter, *to arrest, to stop.*
s'arrêter, *to stop.*
arrivé, *arrived, happened.*
arrivée, *arrival.*
arriver, *to arrive, to happen, to succeed.*
arrondissement, *division of a department or large town.*
artifice (feu d'), *fireworks.*
ascension, *ascent, climbing;* faire l'ascension de, *to climb.*
Asnières, a town on the Seine near Paris.
aspect, *view.*
assassin, *murderer.*
assassiner, *to murder.*
assemblée, *meeting, assembly.*
s'assembler, *to gather.*
assez, *enough, rather, pretty.*
assidu, *assiduous.*
assistance, *company, audience.*
assistant, *a spectator, a person present.*
assister, *to assist, to be present, to witness.*
assuré, *assured, insured.*
Athènes, *Athens.*
atteignit, *Pret. of* atteindre.
atteindre, *to reach, attain, hit, strike.*
attendre, *to wait for, to await, expect.*
aucun,—e, *no, none.*
au-dessus, *above, over.*
aujourd'hui, *to-day, now.*
aumône, *alms.*
auprès, *near, with, by, at.*
aussi, *also, as.*
aussitôt, *at once, immediately.*
aussitôt que, *as soon as.*
autant, *as much, as many.*
d'autant plus, *so much the more.*
auteur, *author.*
automne, *autumn.*
autre, *other, another.*

Autriche, *Austria.*
autrichien,—ne, *Austrian.*
autrui, *others.*
avaler, *to swallow.*
avancer, *to advance, to get late.*
avant, *before.*
aventure, *adventure.*
avocat, *advocate, lawyer.*
avènement, *accession.*
avenir, *future.*
à l'avenir, *for the future.*
avec, *with.*
aveugle, *blind.*
avoine, *oats.*
Azor, *a common name for a dog.*

bagage, *luggage, baggage.*
bal, *ball.*
banquette, *seat.*
banquier, *banker.*
baptême, *baptism.*
baptismal,—aux, *baptismal.*
baron,—ne, *baron, baroness.*
bassesse, *baseness.*
bataille, *battle.*
bâtir, *to build.*
se battre, *to fight.*
battu, *fought, beaten.*
Bavière, *Bavaria.*
beau, *beautiful, fine.*
beaucoup, *much, many.*
bel—*see* beau.
bêler, *to bleat.*
Belgique, *Belgium.*
belle, *fem. of* beau.
berger,—ère, *shepherd, —ess.*
besogne, *work, occupation.*
besoin, *need, want;* avoir besoin de, *to want.*
beurre, *butter.*
bibliothèque, *library.*
bicyclette, *bicycle* (*safety*).
bien, *well, very,* n. *good.*
bienfait, *blessing, benefit.*
bientôt, *soon.*
bise, *cold north wind;* (fig.) *winter.*
blâmer, *to blame.*
blanc, blanche, *white.*
blé (often pl.), *corn.*
blesser, *to wound, to hurt.*
bleu,—e, *blue.*
blond,—e, *fair haired, blond.*
boire, *to drink.*
bois, *wood;* je bois, *I drink.*
bon,—ne, *good, kind.*
bonheur, *happiness, luck, good fortune.*
bonjour, *Good morning, —day.*
bonne, *servant, maid.*
bonne d'enfants, *nurse-maid.*
bonté, *goodness, kindness.*
bord, *edge, bank.*
bord de la mer, *sea-side.*
bouche, *mouth.*
bouchée, *mouthful.*
boucher, *to stop up.*
boucher, n. *butcher.*
bouillir, *to boil.*
bouleau, *birch tree.*
boulevard, *avenue planted with trees.* (Original meaning—a bulwark, fortification.)
Boulogne, suburb of Paris, giving its name to the famous park, *le Bois de Boulogne.*
Boulogne-sur-mer, a port and packet station in the north of France.
bouquet, *bouquet, nosegay.*
bourgeois,—e, *citizen.*
bourgeois, adj. *commonplace, middle class.*
bout, *end, tip.*
bouteille, *bottle.*
bouton, *button, bud.*
bras, *arm.*
brave, *brave, good, honest, worthy.*
brave, n., *a brave man, fellow.*
braver, *to brave.*
brebis, *sheep, ewe.*
bref, brève, *short, brief.*
Brésil, *Brazil.*
Bretagne, *Brittany.*
brillant, *brilliant, shining.*
briller, *to shine.*
brosser, *to brush.*

brouiller, *to muddle, confuse, to cause a quarrel.*
bru, *daughter-in-law.*
bruit, *noise, report, rumour.*
brûler, *to burn.*
brusque, *sudden, abrupt.*
Bruxelles, *Brussels.*
bruyère, *heather, moor.*
bu, *drunk.*
bureau, *office, desk.*

ça = cela, *that.*
cacher, *to hide, conceal.*
cachet, *seal.*
cadeau, *present.*
café, *coffee, café, refreshment hall.*
cahier, *copy book.*
calmer, *to calm, quiet.*
camarade, *companion, schoolfellow.*
campagne, *country, campaign.*
canif, *pen-knife.*
canon, *cannon.*
canonnière, *gunboat.*
capital,—aux, *capital.*
capitulation, *capitulation, surrender.*
captivité, *captivity, imprisonment.*
car, conj. *for.*
carafe, *decanter, water jug.*
cardinal,—aux, *cardinal.*
carré,—e, *square.*
carte, *card, map.*
caserne, *barracks.*
casque, *helmet.*
casser, *to break.*
catholique, *catholic.*
cause, *cause, suit at law.*
à cause de, *because of.*
pour cause de, *on account of.*
cavalerie, *cavalry.*
ce, cet, cette, adj. *this, that.*
ceci, pron. *this.*
cela, pron. *that.*
cent, *hundred.*
centaine, *about a hundred.*
cerise, *cherry.*
certitude, *certainty, proof.*
chacun,—e, *each, each one.*
chagrin, *grief, sorrow.*
chaleur, *heat, warmth.*
chambre, *room.*
chambre à coucher, *bed-room.*
la Chambre (des Députés), *the House of Deputies (Parliament).*
chamois, *chamois.*
champ, *field.*
Champs Elysées, famous gardens and promenade in Paris
chance, *luck.*
chanter, *to sing.*
chapeau, *hat.*
chaque, *each, every.*
charbon, *coal, charcoal.*
charge, *charge.*
se charger de, *to undertake.*
charitable, *charitable.*
Charlemagne, a great king of the Franks, 742-814.
charmant,—e, *charming, delightful.*
chasser, *to hunt, drive away, dismiss.*
chasseur, *hunter.*
château, *castle.*
chaud,—e, *warm, hot.*
chaudement, *warmly.*
chaume, *thatch.*
chef de train, *guard.*
chêne, *oak.*
chercher, *to seek, look for.*
chèque, *cheque.*
Chéronée, *Cheronea.*
cheval, *horse.*
chevalier, *knight.*
cheveu, *cheveux, hair.*
chez, *at, in, to the house, shop, etc. of; among, with, in.*
chien, *dog.*
Chinois, *Chinese.*
choc, *shock.*
chœur, *choir.*
choisi,—e, *chosen.*
chose, *thing.*
chrétien,—ne, *Christian.*

Cicéron, *Cicero.*
cidre, *cider.*
ciel, *sky, heaven.*
cigale, *grasshopper.*
citation, *quotation.*
clair,—e, *clear; light coloured.*
classe, *class.*
Cléopâtre, *Cleopatra.*
climat, *climate.*
cochère (porte), *coach-door, archway.*
cœur, *heart.*
coin, *corner, wedge, die.*
col, *mountain pass.*
colère, *anger, wrath.*
colis, *parcel.*
combat, *combat, fight.*
comédie, *comedy, play.*
commander, *to order.*
comme, *as, how; to make a show of.*
commencer, *to begin.*
comment, *how, what.*
commerçant, *tradesman, merchant.*
commerce, *trade, commerce.*
commis, n. *clerk.*
commis, *Past Part. of* commettre, *committed.*
commode, adj. *convenient.*
commode, n. *chest of drawers.*
compagne, *fem. of* compagnon, *companion, schoolfellow.*
complaisance, *kindness, obligingness.*
complication, *difficulty.*
complice, *accomplice.*
compliqué,—e, *complicated.*
comprendre, *to understand, to include.*
comptant, *ready money.*
compte, *sum, account, bill.*
compter, *intend, to count upon.*
condamné, n. *condemned man; convict.*
condamner, *to condemn.*
conducteur (d'omnibus), *conductor.*
conduire, *to conduct; to take to; to drive* (*horse, etc.*).
se conduire, *to behave* (*oneself*).
conduite, *conduct, behaviour.*
confiance, *confidence.*
confisquer, *to confiscate.*
confondre, *to confound.*
congé, *holiday; dismissal;* prendre congé de, *to take leave of.*
congédier, *to dismiss.*
conjurer, *to ward off.*
connaissance, *acquaintance.*
connu,—e, *known.*
conseil, *advice, counsel, council.*
Conseil de la commune, a Parisian revolutionary assembly, existed from 10th August 1792 until the fall of Robespierre, 9th Thermidor (27th July 1794).
conseiller, *to advise.*
consentement, *consent.*
consentir, *to consent.*
consoler, *to console.*
consul, *consul.*
content,—e, *glad, pleased.*
contenter, *to content, satisfy.*
contigu, — ë, *contiguous, adjoining, next.*
continuel,—le, *continual.*
continuellement, *continually.*
contre, *against, with.*
convaincre, *to convince.*
convenir, *to suit, agree, acknowledge.*
coque (à la), *in the shell, plain boiled* (of eggs).
corniche, *cornice.*
corps, *body, corps.*
correspondance, *correspondence.*
cortège, *cortege, train.*
côte, *f. coast; rib; hill.*
côté, *m. side* (often pl.).
coteau, *slope, hill side.*
couché, *lying down; in bed.*
bien couché, *in a good bed.*
coucher, *to put to bed.*
se coucher, *to lie down, to go to bed.*

coup, *blow, stroke, gust, &c.*
coup de feu, *shot.*
coupable, *guilty;* n. *culprit.*
couper, *to cut, to cut off.*
cour, *yard, court.*
courir, *to run; to circulate.*
courrier, *post; letters; courier.*
course, *race; betaking oneself somewhere on business.*
court,—e, *short.*
cousin,—e, *cousin.*
coûter, *to cost.*
couturière, *seamstress, dressmaker.*
couvert, *covered, cloudy.*
crainte, *fear.*
craintif,—ve, *timid.*
cratère, *crater.*
créneau, *embrasure, battlement.*
crénelé,—e, *embattled, castellated.*
crever, *to burst, to die;* (of the eyes), *to put out.*
cri, *cry, shout.*
crier, *to cry out, to shout.*
crime, *crime.*
crise, *crisis, fit.*
croire, *to believe.*
croix, *cross.*
cru, *believed.*
cruel,—le, *cruel.*
cruellement, *cruelly, severely.*
cuirasse, *breast-plate, armour-plate.*
curiosité, *curiosity.*

dame, *lady;* int. *well! of course!*
dangereux,—se, *dangerous.*
dans, *in, into.*
Danube, *the Danube.*
davantage, *more.*
de, *of, from, about, &c.*
débat, *discussion.*
décadence, *decay.*
décapiter, *to behead.*
déclarer, *to declare.*
découverte, *discovery.*
défendre, *to defend, forbid.*
déférence, *deference.*
défilé, *pass.*
dehors, *outside.*
déjà, *already.*
déjeuner, v. and n. (to) *breakfast, lunch.*
De Lesseps, F. (1805 to 1894), maker of the Suez Canal (opened 1869); failed to cut through the Isthmus of Panama.
demain, *to-morrow.*
demander, *to ask for.*
se démettre, *to resign office; to dislocate, to put out of joint.*
demi, *half.*
demoiselle, *damsel, young lady.*
dénoncer, *to betray.*
dent, *tooth.*
départ, *departure, start.*
dépêche, *telegram, dispatch.*
dépens, *expense;* dépensé, *spent.*
dépouiller, *to strip; to open letters.*
depuis, *since, for, ago.*
députation, *deputation, membership of Parliament.*
député, *deputy, member of Parliament.*
dernier, *last.*
dérober, *to steal, to conceal from.*
des, *of the, from the; some, any.*
dès, *from,* (time) *at earliest.*
dès que, *as soon as ever.*
descendre, *to descend, to come, go down.*
descendu,—e, *descended, gone down, come down.*
désespoir, *despair.*
désir, *desire, wish.*
désirer, *to desire, to wish.*
désolé,—e, *grieved, very sorry.*
désordre, *disorder, rioting, profligacy.*
se détacher, *to come off.*
détresse, *distress.*
deux, *two.*
devant, *before, in front of.*
devenir, *to become.*
deviendras, *Fut. of* devenir.
devoir, *duty, exercise, lesson.*

dictionnaire, *dictionary.*
Dieu, *God.*
difficile, *difficult.*
digne, *worthy.*
digue, *embankment, boom.*
dimanche, *Sunday.*
dîner, v. *to dine,* n. *dinner.*
dire, *to say, to tell.*
le dire, *the saying, maxim.*
discours, *speech.*
discret,—ète, *discreet.*
discussion, *discussion, dispute.*
disposer, *to dispose, arrange.*
dissuader, *to dissuade.*
distribuer, *to distribute.*
dit, *said, told.*
doigt, *finger.*
domaine, *domain, estate.*
domestique, *domestic, servant.*
don, *gift.*
donc, *then, therefore.*
Don Diègue, Father of Rodrigue, a character in Corneille's Tragedy "le Cid."
donné, *given.*
donner, *to give.*
dont, *of whom, of which.*
dos, *back.*
douceur, *mildness, gentleness.*
doué,—e, *gifted.*
douleur, *grief, pain.*
doute, *doubt.*
douter, *to doubt.*
doux, douce, *mild, sweet, gentle.*
douzaine, *dozen.*
douze, *twelve.*
drapeau, *flag.*
droit, *right.*
du, *of the, from the; some, any.*
dû, n. *due.*
ducal, *ducal, of a duke.*
ducat, *ducat.*
duper, *to dupe.*
dur,—e, *hard, severe.*
durer, *to last, to endure.*

eau, *water.*
échapper, *to escape.*
école, *school.*
écossais,—e, *Scotch.*
Ecossais, — e, *Scotchman, — woman.*
Ecosse, *Scotland.*
écouter, *to listen* (*to*).
s'écrier, *to exclaim, cry out.*
écrire, *to write.*
écrit, *written.*
écrivain, *writer.*
Edimbourg, *Edinburgh.*
effet, *effect.*
effleurer, *to graze, skim.*
s'efforcer de, *to endeavour, strive.*
égaie, *from* égayer, *to enliven.*
égal, égaux, *equal.*
église, *church.*
Egypte, *Egypt.*
eh bien ! *well!*
élan, *spirit, rush, impulse.*
électrique, *electric.*
élégamment, *elegantly.*
élève, *pupil.*
élevé,—e, *high, raised.*
s'élever, *to rise, to raise oneself.*
éloquence, *eloquence.*
Elysée, residence of the President of the Republic.
embrasser, *to embrace, to kiss.*
Emilie, *Emily.*
empêcher, *to prevent, to help* (in, *not to be able to help laughing, etc.*).
empereur, *emperor.*
empire, *empire, command.*
employé,—e, *employee.*
emporter, *to carry off, take away.*
s'emporter, *to get angry.*
empressé,—e, *eager, hearty.*
empressement, *eagerness.*
emprunter, *to borrow.*
ému,—e, *moved, touched.*
en, prep. *in, into; like a;* pro. *of it, of them, from it, them, some, any.*
enclos, *surrounded, shut in;* n. *enclosure.*
encombrer, *to encumber.*
encore, *again, still, yet, even then, etc.*

s'endormir, *to fall asleep.*
endurer, *to endure, to bear.*
énergique, *energetic.*
enfant, *child, boy, girl.*
enfermer, *to shut up, lock up, imprison.*
enfin, *at last, in short.*
enfler, *to swell, to inflate.*
enfoui,—e, *buried.*
enlever, *to take away, carry off.*
ennemi,—e, *enemy,* adj. *enemy's, hostile.*
ennui, *weariness, dullness.*
énorme, *enormous.*
enragé,—e, *mad, enraged, possessed.*
ensemble, *together.*
enseveli,—e, *buried; plunged.*
entendre, *to hear, to understand.*
entourer, *to surround.*
entrain, *spirit, fire, ardour.*
entre, *between, among, into.*
entrée, *entrance.*
entreprendre, *to undertake.*
entreprise, *enterprise.*
entrer, *to enter, to come (go) in.*
entretien, *support, keeping up.*
envie, *envy, desire;* avoir envie, *to have a mind to, to long.*
environs, *surroundings, surrounding country.*
envoie, *from* envoyer.
envoyé,—e, *sent,* n. *person sent, envoy.*
envoyer, *to send.*
épais,—se, *thick.*
épaule, *shoulder.*
épée, *sword.*
épicier, *grocer.*
époque, *time, period, epoch.*
épouvantable, *frightful.*
époux,—se, *husband, wife.*
erreur, *error, mistake.*
érudition, *erudition, learning.*
escalier, *stairs.*
esclave, *slave.*
Espagne, *Spain.*
espagnol,—e, *Spanish.*
espèce, *kind, sort, species.*
espérance, *hope.*
espérer, *to hope.*
esprit, *mind, wit, cleverness.*
essayer, *to try.*
est, *east.*
établir, *to establish.*
étage, *floor.*
état, *state.*
été, *been;* n. *summer.*
éternel,—le, *eternal.*
étoffe, *stuff, material.*
étouffant,—e, *stifling.*
étranger, n. *abroad.*
étranger, — ère, *stranger, foreign, foreigner.*
étrennes, *New Year's gift.*
étudier, *to study.*
eu, eue, *had, possessed.*
eux, *them, they.*
événement, *event.*
éviter, *to avoid.*
exciter, *to excite, to awaken.*
excuser, *to excuse.*
exemplaire, *copy.*
exercice, *exercise.*
exiger, *to demand, to require.*
exister, *to exist.*
explication, *explanation.*
expliquer, *to explain.*
exposer, *to expose, exhibit.*
extraordinaire, *extraordinary.*

fabricant, *manufacturer.*
fâché (de), *sorry;* (contre), *angry.*
facilement, *easily.*
facture, *bill.*
faible, *weak, feeble.*
faire, *to do, make, cause, perform.*
fait, *Past Part. of* faire.
falsification, *alteration, forgery.*
fameux,—se, *famous.*
fanfare, *flourish of horns, trumpets.*
fatal,—e, *fatal.*
fatigué,—e, *tired, fatigued.*
faubourg, *suburb.*
faute, *fault, error, mistake.*
sans faute, *without fail.*
faux, fausse, *false.*

faveur, *favour.*
à la faveur de, *under cover of.*
favori,—te, *favourite.*
femme, *woman, wife.*
fer, *iron, sword.*
fermer, *to shut, close.*
fermier,—ère, *farmer, farmer's wife.*
fête, *festival, holiday, saint day.*
Fête Nationale, *National holiday* (in memory of taking of the Bastille, 14th July 1789).
feu, *fire, enemy's fire, action.*
feu d'artifice, *fireworks.*
feuillage, *foliage.*
feuille, *leaf, sheet of paper.*
fiancé, *affianced, intended husband.*
fiancée, *betrothed, bride.*
fiancer, *to betroth, to promise in marriage.*
fidèle, *faithful.*
se fier à, *to trust* (*to*).
fièvre, *fever.*
fil, *thread, wire.*
fille, *girl, daughter.*
fils, *son; threads.*
fin, *end.*
fit, *caused, made.*
flanqué,—e (de), *supported by, having on either side.*
flatter, *to flatter, to caress.*
fleur, *flower.*
fleuve, *river* (*large*).
flots, *waves.*
flotte, *fleet.*
foin, *hay.*
foire, *fair.*
fois, *once, twice, time, times.*
fol (fou), folle, *mad, wild, madman, —woman.*
fond, *bottom, end, back.*
font, (*they*) *make, do.*
Fontainebleau, department of Seine-et-Marne, 13,340 inhabitants; castle where Napoleon signed his abdication in 1814; has a fine forest; 37 miles from Paris.
forces, *strength.*
forêt, *forest.*
forfait, *crime.*
formidable, *terrible.*
Formies, *Formiae.*
fort,—e, *strong.*
fort, *very, much;* n. *fort.*
fortifier, *to fortify, to strengthen.*
fortune, *fortune.*
fossé, *moat, ditch.*
fou (fol, folle), *mad, wild.*
foyer, *hearth.*
fraîche, *fem. of* frais.
frais, *fresh, cool, chilly.*
franc, franche, *frank, open.*
français,—e, *French.*
frapper, *to strike, hit.*
frégate, *frigate.*
frère, *brother.*
froid,—e, *cold.*
les froids, *cold, frost.*
frontière, *frontier.*
fruit, *fruit.*
fruitier,—ière, *fruiterer;* adj. *fruit.*
fuir, *to flee.*
fumer, *to smoke; to manure.*
funeste, *fatal.*
fureur, *fury.*
futile, *futile, trivial, useless.*
fuyard, *fugitive.*

gagner, *to gain, win, reach, earn.*
gai, gaie, *gay, cheerful.*
gain, *gain, profit.*
Galles, *Wales.*
gant, *glove.*
garçon, *boy, assistant, waiter.*
garde, f. *guard, keeping;* m. *guardsman.*
garder, *to keep, to guard.*
gare, *station.*
garnir, *to trim.*
gelee, *frost.*
geler, *to freeze.*
gêné, *inconvenienced, short of money, awkward.*
général,—aux, *general.*
gens, *people, servants.*

gentil,—le, *pleasant, nice, amiable, pretty.*
gentilhomme, *nobleman.*
glisser, *to slide, to slip.*
gloire, *glory.*
gorge, *gorge, defile.*
gorgée, *mouthful.*
goût, *taste, pleasure.*
gracieusement, *gracefully, graciously.*
grammaire, *grammar.*
grand,—e, *large, great, grand.*
grand'chose, (pas—) *not much.*
gras, grasse, *fat.*
grave, *serious.*
gravement, *seriously.*
gravité, *seriousness.*
Grec, Grecque, *a Greek, Grecian woman.*
grec, grecque, *Greek.*
grimace, *grimace, face.*
gronder, *to scold.*
gros,—se, *big, stout.*
Grotius, 1583-1645, illustrious Dutch jurist and theologian. Condemned to imprisonment for life on account of his religious views, he escaped in a chest, with the help of his wife, 1621.
guère, *hardly, scarcely, not much.*
guérir, *to cure, heal, get better.*
guerre, *war.*
gueux, *beggar.*
guide, *guide.*
guides, *f. pl.* reins.

('h = silent h).

'habiller, *to dress.*
'habit, *coat, dress; clothes.*
'habiter, *to live in, dwell.*
haie, *hedge.*
'haleine, *breath.*
hardi,—e, *bold.*
haut,—e, *high.*
hauteur, *height.*
'herbe, *grass, plant, herb.*
'heure, *hour, time, o'clock.*
de bonne heure, *early.*
'heureux,—se, *happy, successful lucky.*
'hier, *yesterday.*
'hirondelle, *swallow.*
hisser, *to hoist.*
'histoire, *history, story.*
'hiver, *winter.*
'homme, *man.*
'honnête, *honest.*
'honneur, *honour.*
'honorable, *honourable.*
honte, *shame.*
avoir honte, *to be ashamed.*
'hôpital, *hospital.*
horde, *hord, band.*
'horloger, *watchmaker.*
hors, *outside, out, without.*
'horrible, *horrible.*
'hôte,—sse, *host, —ess; guest.*
'hôtel, *hôtel, mansion, house.*
'hôtel de ville, *town hall.*
'huissier, *bailiff, sheriff's officer, usher.*
'huit (no tie, or elision), *eight.*
'huit jours, *a week.*
'humide, *damp.*
hutte, *hut.*

ignorer, *to be unaware, not to know.*
il y a, *there is, there are.*
illisible, *illegible.*
imbibé, *soaked.*
impérial, — aux, *imperial, imperial party, or troops.*
important,—e, *important.*
incartade, *prank, insult.*
incertitude, *uncertainty.*
indigne, *unworthy.*
indigné, (*made*) *indignant.*
infâme, *infamous,* n. — *man, villain.*
informé, *informed.*
injure, *insult.*
injustement, *unjustly.*
inquiet,—ète, *uneasy, anxious.*
insolent,—e, *insolent.*
insomnies, *sleeplessness.*
intelligent,—e, *intelligent, clever.*

intéressant,—e, *interesting.*
intéresser, *to interest.*
intérêt, *interest.*
interpellation, *question in Parliament.*
s'introduire, *to get in.*
invitation, *invitation.*
invité, *guest.*
inviter, *to invite.*
ivoire, *ivory.*
ivresse, *intoxication.*

jadis, *formerly.*
jaillir, *to spring, to leap.*
jaloux,—se, *jealous.*
jalousie, *Venetian blind.*
jamais, *ever, never.*
japonais,—e, *Japanese.*
jardin, *garden.*
jardinier,—ère, *gardener, gardener's wife.*
Jeanne, *Jane.*
jeter, *to throw, — away.*
jeune, *young.*
joli,—e, *pretty.*
jouer, *to play.*
jouet, *toy, plaything.*
jour, *day.*
journal,—aux, *newspaper.*
journée, *day.*
juillet, *July.*
juin, *June.*
jumeau,—elle, *twin.*
jument, *mare.*
jusqu'à, *so far as, as far as.*
juste, *just, right, fair, correct.*
justement, *justly, just, just so.*

kilogramme, = 2·2046 lb., or practically 2⅕ lb.
Kremlin, ancient citadel of Moscow, contains the imperial palace, and several churches and other buildings; partially destroyed in 1812, but since rebuilt.

la, *the; her, it.*
là, *there.*
labeur, *toil.*
lac, *lake.*
laisser, *to leave, allow, let.*
lait, *milk.*
lampe, *lamp.*
lancer, *to throw, hurl.*
langue, *tongue, language.*
large, *broad, wide, large.*
las,—se, *tired, wearied.*
latin,—e, *Latin.*
leçon, *lesson.*
lecture, *reading.*
léger,—ère, *light, slight.*
légume, *vegetable.*
lendemain, *next day, day after.*
lèse-majesté, *high treason.*
lettre, *letter.*
lever, *to raise.*
se lever, *to rise, get up.*
librairie, *bookseller's shop, book trade.*
lier, *to bind.*
lieu, *place, cause.*
avoir lieu, *to take place.*
lire, *to read.*
Lisbonne, *Lisbon.*
lisière, *edge.*
lit, *bed, (he) reads.*
littérature, *literature.*
livre, m. *book;* f. *pound* (both lb. and £).
livrer bataille, *to give battle, to fig't a battle.*
loi, *law, bill.*
loisir, *leisure.*
Londres, *London.*
long, longue, *long.*
le long (de), *along.*
longtemps, *long* (time).
lorsque, *when.*
loué, *praised; rented; let.*
loup, louve, *wolf.*
loup-garou (superstition of a cruel man in the shape of a wolf) *a bogey,* to frighten children.
loyer, *rent.*
lu, *read.*
lui, *he, him.*
lune, *moon.*

lutte, *struggle, fight.*
lycée, *school, college.*
Lyon, *Lyons* (over 400,000 inhabitants; 318 miles south-east of Paris; silk trade; birthplace of Jacquard (1752-1834), who invented the loom which bears his name).

mademoiselle, *Miss.*
magasin, *shop, warehouse.*
maigre, *lean, slight, poor.*
main, *hand.*
maintenant, *now.*
maire, *mayor.*
mais, *but, why* (introductory).
maison, *house; firm.*
maisonnette, *small house.*
maître, *master.*
majeur, *of age.*
malade, *ill;* n. *patient.*
maladie, *illness, disease.*
malentendu, *misunderstanding.*
malgré, *in spite of.*
malin, maligne, *sly, malignant.*
malheur, *misfortune.*
malheureux,—se, *unfortunate, unhappy.*
maman, *mamma.*
manche, m. *handle, stick;* f. *sleeve.*
la Manche, *the English Channel.*
manger, *to eat, squander.*
manière, *manner.*
manquer, *to miss, lack.*
marchandise, *goods, merchandise.*
marché, *market.*
marcher, *to walk.*
maréchal,—aux, *marshal.*
mari, *husband.*
mariage, *marriage.*
marin, *sailor, seaman.*
marine, *navy.*
marquis,—e, *marquis, marchioness.*
marraine, *godmother.*
Marseille, *Marseilles* (376,000 inhabitants, important port on the Mediterranean, 535 miles S.S.E. of Paris).
matelot, *sailor.*
mathématiques, *mathematics.*
matin, *morning.*
maudit,—e, *cursed.*
mauvais,—e, *bad, vicious, ill-tempered.*
mécanique, *mechanical.*
mécanisme, *mechanism.*
méchant,—e, *naughty, wicked.*
médecin, *doctor, physician.*
médire, *to slander, speak ill of.*
méfiance, *distrust, suspicion.*
meilleur, *better, best.*
de meilleure heure, *earlier.*
mélancoliquement, *with a melancholy air, look.*
même, *even, self, same, very.*
mémoire, *memory.*
menaçant, *threatening.*
menacer, *to threaten.*
ménage, *household, housekeeping.*
entrer en ménage, *to set up housekeeping, to get married.*
mener, *to lead, to take to.*
mer, *sea.*
merci, *thanks, thank you.*
mère, *mother.*
méridional,—aux, *southerner.*
merveille, *wonder, marvel.*
messieurs, *gentlemen.*
mètre, *metre* = 39·37 inches, about 3 ft. 3 in.
mettre, *to put, set.*
se mettre à, *to set to—, to begin.*
se mettre en route, *to set out.*
meunier, *miller.*
meurtrière, *loop-hole.*
midi, *mid-day, 12 o'clock, noon; south.*
mieux, adv. *better, best.*
mignon,—ne, n. *pet, darling.*
mille, *thousand; mile.*
millier, *about a thousand.*
mine, *mine; look, mien.*
miner, *to undermine.*
ministère, *government, cabinet, state office, ministry.*
ministre, *secretary of state, &c.*

mis, —e, *put;* mis en colère, *got angry, into a passion.*
misère, *misery, want, poverty.*
moderne, *modern.*
mœurs, *manners, customs, morals.*
moi, *me, I.*
moindre, adj. *less, least.*
moins, adv. *less, least.*
mois, *month.*
moissonner, *to reap, to harvest.*
monde, *world, company, people.*
tout le monde, *everybody.*
monsieur, *Mr, Sir, gentleman.*
mont, *mount, mountain.*
montagne, *mountain.*
monter, *to ascend, climb;* *to ride.*
montre, *watch.*
montrer, *to show.*
mort, n. f. *death;* n. m. *dead man;* v. *died.*
morte, *dead, dead woman.*
Moscou, *Moscow.*
mot, *word, saying.*
mouchoir, *handkerchief.*
moulin, *mill.*
mourir, *to die.*
mouton, *sheep, mutton.*
moyen, *means.*
muletier, *muleteer.*
mur, *wall.*
mûr, —e, *ripe.*
muraille, *wall (large).*
mûrir, *to ripen.*
musée, *museum, art gallery.*
musique, *music.*
myosotis, *forget-me-not.*

nager, *to swim.*
Napolitain, *Neapolitan.*
naufrage, *shipwreck.*
naufragé, *shipwrecked sailor, person.*
navigation, *navigation.*
navire, *ship.*
ne, *not;* sometimes idiomatic, and not rendered in English.
négociant, *merchant.*
neige, *snow.*
nettoyer, *to clean.*
neuf, *nine.*
neuf, neuve, *new.*
neveu, *nephew.*
nid, *nest.*
le Nil, *the Nile.*
noce, *wedding.*
Noël, *Christmas.*
noir, —e, *black.*
nom, *name.*
nombre, *number.*
nommer, *to name.*
non, *no, not.*
nord, *North.*
la Normandie, *Normandy.*
notaire, *notary.*
note, *note.*
notre, nos, *our.*
le (la) nôtre, *ours.*
nouveau, —vel, —le, *new.*
nouvelle, n. *news.*
noyau, *kernel.*
noyer, *to drown.*
noyer, n. *walnut tree.*
nuage, *cloud.*
nuire, *to harm, injure.*
nuit, *night, dark.*
numéro, *number, No.*

obéir, *to obey.*
obéissant, —e, *obedient.*
objet, *object.*
observer, *to observe, to carry out.*
obstinément, *obstinately, resolutely.*
occasion, *opportunity.*
occupation, *occupation.*
occuper, *to occupy.*
s'occuper de, *to busy oneself with.*
odieux, —se, *hateful, odious.*
œuf, *egg.*
offert, *Past Part. of* offrir, *to offer.*
officier, *officer.*
oiseau, *bird.*
on, *one, they, people* (or passive).
oncle, *uncle.*
onde, *wave, water.*
onze, *eleven.*
or, *now;* n. *gold.*
orage, *thunder-storm.*

oranger, *orange tree.*
ordinal,—aux, *ordinal.*
ordonner, *to order, command.*
orfèvre, *goldsmith.*
oriental,—aux, *oriental.*
original,—aux, *eccentric.*
orner, *to adorn.*
ou, *or.*
où, *where, when, in which, at, on which, &c.*
oublier, *to forget.*
ouest, *west.*
ours, *bear.*
ouvert,—e, *open.*
ouverture, *opening.*
ouvrage, *work.*
ouvrier, — ère, *workman, — woman.*

paille, *straw.*
pain, *bread, loaf.*
pain d'épices, *gingerbread.*
paire, *pair.*
palais, *palace; palate.*
panier, *basket.*
pantalon, *trousers.*
papier, *paper.*
paquet, *parcel.*
par, *by, a, through.*
parapluie, *umbrella.*
parc, *park.*
parce que, *because.*
parcourir, *to pass through.*
pareil,—le, *such, similar, same.*
parisien,—ne, *Parisian.*
parler, *to speak.*
parleur,—se, *speaker, talkative.*
parmi, *among.*
parole, *word, speech.*
parrain, *godfather.*
part, *share*; de toutes parts, *in all directions.*
parti, *Past Part. of* partir.
parti, n. *party.*
partie, n. *part, party.*
partir, *to start, go away, depart*; (of firearms), *to go off.*
parvenir, *to manage, to reach, to succeed.*
pas, *step, pace; not.*
passant, n. *passer-by.*
passer, *to pass, to spend.*
patience, *patience.*
patrie, *native country.*
patriote, *patriot.*
patron, *employer, master, patron*
pauvre, *poor, beggar.*
pauvresse, *poor woman.*
payer, *to pay.*
pays, *country, village, place.*
paysan, *countryman.*
paysanne, *countrywoman.*
peau, *skin, hide.*
pêche, *peach; fishing.*
pêcheur, pêcheresse, *sinner.*
peine, *trouble, pain, pains.*
pèlerin, *pilgrim.*
pendant, *during, for.*
pénétrer, *to get into.*
pensée, *pansy; thought.*
penser, *to think.*
percher, *to perch, roost.*
perdre, *to lose, to ruin to waste*
perdu,—e, *lost, ruined.*
père, *father.*
perle, *pearl.*
permis, Past Part. *allowed, permitted.*
perron, *stone stairs, steps.*
personne, n. f. *person*, pro. m. *nobody, anybody.*
persuader, *to win over, persuade.*
perte, *loss, ruin.*
petit,—e, *small, little.*
peu, *little.*
peuple, *nation, people, crowd.*
peur, *fear*; avoir peur, *to be afraid.*
peut-être, *perhaps.*
picotin, *peck.*
pièce, *piece, document, paper.*
pied, *foot.*
piège, *trap, snare.*
pigeon,—ne, *pigeon.*
pin, *pine.*
pittoresque, *picturesque.*
place, *square, place; seat; fortress.*
plaindre, *to pity.*
se plaindre (de), *to complain.*

plaine, *plain.*
plaisant,—e, *funny.*
plaisir, *pleasure.*
plante, *plant.*
planter, *to plant.*
plein,—e, *full.*
pleur, *tear.*
pleurer, *to weep, to cry.*
pleuvoir, *to rain.*
plu, *Past Part. of* plaire *and of* pleuvoir, *pleased; rained.*
pluie, *rain.*
plume, *pen, feather.*
plume d'oie, (*goose*) *quill.*
plus, *more, no more, no longer.*
plusieurs, *several.*
poche, *pocket.*
poésie, *poetry, poem.*
poète, *poet.*
poignet, *wrist.*
point, *dot, spot, point; not at all.*
point du jour, *dawn of day, daybreak.*
poitrine, *chest, breast.*
poliment, *politely.*
politique, *political.*
pomme, *apple.*
pomme de terre, *potato.*
pompier, *fireman.*
pont, *bridge* (*over river*); *deck.*
populaire, *popular.*
popularité, *popularity.*
port, *harbour.*
port de mer, *seaport.*
porte, *door, gate.*
porte cochère, *coach-door.*
porte-monnaie, *purse.*
portée, *range, reach.*
porter, *to carry, bring, wear.*
portrait, *portrait.*
poste, f. *post;* m., *police station, guard-house.*
postérité, *posterity.*
poudre à canon, *gunpowder.*
pour, *for, to* (*purpose*).
pourquoi, *why.*
poursuite, *pursuit, trial.*
poursuivi, *sued, pursued.*
pourtant, *yet, however.*
pourvu, *provided, providing.*
pouvoir, *to be able.*
préférer, *to prefer.*
préjudice, *hurt.*
premier,—ère, *first, premier.*
prendre, *to take, to fetch.*
prennent, *3rd plu. Pres. of* prendre.
près, *near.*
présidentiel,—le, *presidential, of the president.*
présider, *to preside over.*
prêt,—e, *ready.*
prêter, *to lend.*
prétexte, *pretext, reason.*
preuve, *proof.*
prévenir, *to warn, forestall, inform.*
prier, *to beg, pray, request.*
principal,—aux, adj. *principal;* n. *headmaster.*
printemps, *spring.*
pris,—e, *taken.*
prisonnier,—ère, *prisoner.*
privé,—e, *private.*
prix, *price, prize.*
probablement, *probably.*
probité, *honesty, uprightness.*
problème, *problem, sum.*
procurer, *to procure, to get.*
prodigieux,—se, *prodigious.*
produire, *to produce.*
se produire, *to occur.*
professeur, *teacher, master, mistress, professor.*
profond,—e, *deep, profound.*
profondément, *deeply.*
profondeur, *depth.*
progrès, *progress.*
projet, *project, plan.*
projet de loi, *bill in Parliament.*
prolonger, *to prolong.*
promenade, *walk, promenade.*
se promener, *to take a walk, drive, &c.*
promis,—e, *promised.*
promptement, *quickly.*
prononcer, *to pronounce, to say, to make* (*a speech*).

propre (after n.) *clean* (before n.) *own.*
propriétaire, *landlord, — lady, proprietor, owner.*
propriété, *estate.*
prune, *plum.*
public, n. *public, audience.*
public, publique, adj. *public.*
puis, *after, afterwards, then.*
puis, 1*st sing. of* pouvoir, *can.*
puis-je ? *can I? may I?*
puissant,—e, *powerful.*
pupille, *ward.*
pur,—e, *pure.*

quand, *when, even if.*
quant à, *as for.*
quantité, *quantity.*
quarantaine, *about forty.*
quarante, *forty.*
quart, *quarter.*
quatorze, *fourteen.*
quatre, *four.*
que, *that, which, whom; what; than; how.*
quel,—le, *what, who.*
quelque,—s, *some, a few.*
quelque . . . que, *however.*
quelque chose, *something, anything.*
quelquefois, *sometimes.*
quelques-uns, *some.*
quelqu'un, *someone, somebody.*
question, *question.*
quitter, *to leave, give up.*
quoi, *what.*
quoique, *although.*

raconter, *to relate, to tell.*
rage, *rage;* faire rage, *to rage.*
raisin, *grapes.*
raison, *reason;* avoir raison, *to be right.*
raisonner, *to reason, to argue.*
ramasser, *to pick up.*
rang, *rank, row, place.*
rappeler, *to remember, call back.*
rarement, *seldom, rarely.*
ras, rase, *open, level.*
rassemblement, *crowd.*
rassurant,—e, *reassuring.*
rebelle, m. and f. *rebel, rebellious.*
recevoir, *to receive, to get.*
reciter, *to recite, to say.*
récolte, *crop.*
réclamer, *to claim.*
récompense, *reward.*
récompenser, *to reward.*
reconnaissance, *gratitude; reconnoitring.*
reconnaître, *to recognise, acknowledge, reconnoitre.*
recours, *recourse.*
reçu,—e, *received, got.*
redouter, *to dread.*
refuser, *to refuse.*
regard, *glance, look, eye.*
regarder, *to look at.*
registre, *register.*
règle, *rule.*
régler, *to rule, arrange, settle.*
regret, *regret.*
regrettable, *to be regretted.*
regretter, *to regret.*
régulièrement, *regularly.*
reine, *queen.*
rejoindre, *to rejoin, come up with.*
relever, *to raise up.*
religieux, — se, *religious;* n. *monk, nun.*
relire, *to read again.*
remarquer, *to notice, remark.*
remédier, *to remedy, cure.*
remettre, *to replace, put back; to set* (*a joint*).
remonter, *to wind up.*
rempli,—e, *full, filled.*
remporter, *to carry off.*
rencontrer, *to meet.*
rendre, *to return, give back.*
se rend, *is rendered.*
se rendre à, *to betake oneself to, to repair to.*
renseignement, *information.*
renseigner, *to inform.*
se renseigner, *to make inquiries.*
rentré, *taken in, led in.*

rentrer, *to bring in; to go home; to resume possession of.*
renvoyer, *to send away, dismiss.*
répandre, *to spill, to shed.*
réparation, *reparation, repairs, mending.*
repartir, *to set out again.*
repas, *meal, repast.*
répondre (à), *to answer, reply to.*
réponse, *answer, reply.*
repos, *rest.*
reposer, *to set down again, to rest.*
se reposer, *to rest*
repu,—e, *glutted, having eaten well.*
république, *republic.*
réséda, *mignonette.*
résoudre, *to resolve, to solve.*
respecter, *to respect.*
ressembler, *to be like, resemble.*
se resserrer, *to become more stringent.*
ressort, *spring.*
resté, *stayed, remained.*
rester, *to stay, remain.*
retirer, *to take out, extract.*
retour, *return;* être de retour, *to be back.*
retraite, *retreat.*
réussi, *succeeded, successful.*
réussir, *to succeed.*
réveiller, *to awaken.*
révéler, *to reveal.*
revenu, *come back, returned.*
révérer, *to revere.*
revêtu,—e, *invested, clad.*
revoir, *to see again.*
le Rhin, *the Rhine.*
riant, *smiling, laughing.*
riche, *rich.*
rideau, *curtain.*
ridicule, *ridiculous.*
rien, *nothing, anything.*
rivage, *shore.*
rival,—aux, *rival.*
rivière, *river.*
robe, *dress, robe.*
rocher, *rock.*
roi, *king.*
romain,—e, *Roman.*
roman, *novel.*
rose, adj. *pink;* n. *rose.*
rosée, *dew.*
route, *road.*
rustique, *rustic.*

sac, *bag, sack.*
sage, *wise, good.*
saint,—e, *holy; saint.*
Saint-Simon (1675-1755), author of Memoirs on the last years of Louis XIV, and on the Regency.
saison, *season.*
salaire, *payment, wages.*
salir, *to dirty, soil.*
salle, *hall, room.*
salle à manger, *dining-room.*
salon, *drawing-room, saloon.*
samedi, *Saturday.*
sang, *blood, race, family.*
sans, *without, but for.*
sans-souci, *free from care.*
santé, *health.*
Sarrasin, *Saracen.*
sauvé, *saved.*
sauver, *to save.*
savant, n. *learned man.*
savez-vous? *do you know?*
savoir, *to know;* n. *knowledge.*
sénat, *senate.*
scierie, *saw mill.*
scrupuleux,—se, *scrupulous.*
séance, *sitting.*
sec, sèche, *dry.*
secours, *help.*
secrétaire, *secretary.*
Sedan, a small town (17,000 inhabitants) on the Meuse, where Napoleon III surrendered to William I, King of Prussia, 2nd Sept. 1870.
seigle, *rye.*
seigneur, *lord.*
la Seine, *the Seine.*
séjour, *stay, dwelling-place.*
semaine, *week.*
sembler, *to seem.*

semer, *to sow.*
sens, *direction; sense.*
sentinelle, *sentinel, sentry.*
séparer, *to separate, to part.*
sergent de ville, *policeman.*
sérieusement, *seriously.*
serin, *canary.*
serviette, *napkin, towel.*
servir, *to serve.*
se servir de, *to use.*
seulement, *only.*
si, *if, whether; so.*
la Sicile, *Sicily.*
siècle, *century, age.*
siège, *siege, seat.*
s'il vous plaît, *if you please.*
simple, *mere, simple.*
simplement, *simply.*
sincèrement, *sincerely.*
singe, *monkey.*
singulier, *singular, single.*
sinistre, *disaster.*
sœur, *sister.*
soi, *oneself, himself.*
soie, *silk.*
soierie, *silks, silk trade, &c.*
soigneusement, *carefully.*
soin, *care, attention.*
soir, *evening.*
soirée, *evening, evening party.*
sol, *soil, ground, land.*
soldat, *soldier.*
soleil, *sun, sunshine.*
solide, *strong, substantial.*
solidement, *strongly, substantially.*
sombre, *dark.*
somme, f. *sum.*
sommeil, *sleep.*
son, sa, ses, *his, her.*
son, n. *sound, noise.*
songer, *to think, to dream.*
sonner, *to sound.*
sonnet, *sonnet.*
sorte, *kind, sort.*
sortir, *to go out.*
sottise, *stupidity, foolishness, a foolish action.*
souffrance, *suffering.*
souffrant,—e, *ill, ailing.*
soulager, *to relieve.*
soupçonner, *to suspect.*
source, *spring.*
sourd,—e, *deaf.*
sourire, *to smile, to be pleasing to.*
sous, *under, in.*
souvent, *often.*
spectateur, *spectator.*
studieux,—se, *studious.*
subsister, *to remain, endure.*
succès, *success.*
sucre, *sugar.*
sud, *south.*
la Suède, *Sweden.*
la Suisse, *Switzerland.*
Suisse, Suissesse, *Swiss, Swiss woman, girl.*
suite, *suite, following.*
tout de suite, *at once.*
suivre, *to follow.*
sujet, *subject, cause.*
superbe, *splendid.*
supérieur,—e, *excellent, good.*
supplier, *to entreat.*
sur, *on, over.*
sûr, sûre, *sure, certain.*
surprendre, *to surprise.*
surpris,—e, *surprised*
surtout, *above all.*
survécu, *survived.*
surveiller, *to watch.*
suspect, adj. *suspicious*; n. *a suspect* (*suspected person*).

tableau, *picture; board.*
tablier, *apron.*
tache, *stain.*
tâcher, *to try.*
Tacite, *Tacitus.*
tailleur, *tailor; stone-cutter.*
Talleyrand, C. M. (1754-1838), bishop of Autun, then member of l'Assemblée constituante; occupied many functions under Napoleon I and the Bourbons; "The prince of turn-coats;" famous for his witty and cynical sayings.

tant, *so much, so many.*
tante, *aunt.*
tapis, *carpet.*
tapi,—s, *crouching.*
se tapir, *to crouch down.*
tard, *late.*
tas, m. *heap, lot.*
tel,—le, *such, such an one, so and so.*
tellement, *so, to such an extent.*
tempête, *storm, tempest.*
temps, *time; weather.*
tendre, *loving, tender, new.*
tendresse, *affection, love.*
tenir, *to hold, keep.*
tenter, *to attempt.*
tenu,—e, *held, kept.*
terme, *rent, term.*
terrain, *land, ground.*
terre, *land, estate.*
terrible, *terrible.*
terriblement, *dreadfully.*
tête, *head.*
thé, *tea.*
théâtre, *theatre; seat of war.*
thème, *exercise, translation into a foreign language.*
le Tibre, *the Tiber.*
tiers, tierce, *third.*
timbre, *stamp; bell.*
timbre-poste, *postage stamp.*
tirer, *to draw; to fire.*
tisane, *an infusion of herbs, leaves, &c.; beverage.*
toit, *roof.*
tombe, *grave.*
tombé,—e, *fallen.*
tomber, *to fall.*
le Tonkin, *Tonquin* (a country south-east of China, now under French protectorate).
tort, *wrong, wrong thing.*
tôt, *soon, sooner.*
touché,—e, *hit, touched.*
touffu,—e, *thick, bushy.*
toujours, *always, still, on.*
tour, f. *tower.*
touriste, *tourist.*
tournant, n. *corner, bend.*
tous, *all, every.*
tout,—e, *all, every.*
tout le monde, *everybody.*
traduction, *translation.*
traduit-on? *do you translate?*
tragédie, *tragedy.*
train, *train.*
trait, *feature, trait.*
traite, *draft, bill.*
trajet, *journey, distance.*
tranchant, n. *edge.*
trancher, *to cut, to decide.*
tranquille, *quiet.*
tranquillité, *quietness, tranquillity.*
travail, *work.*
travailler, *to work.*
travailleur,—se, *worker,* adj. *industrious.*
tremblement de terre, *earthquake.*
trente, *thirty.*
très, *very, much.*
triomphe, *triumph.*
triumvirat, *triumvirate* (*government by three*).
trois, *three.*
troisième, *third.*
tromper, *to deceive, cheat.*
se tromper, *to be mistaken.*
trop, *too, too much, too many.*
troupe, *band, troop.*
troupes, *troops* (*soldiers*).
trouver, *to find, to think.*
se trouver, *to be.*
tué,—e, *killed.*
tuer, *to kill.*
turc, turque, *Turkish.*
Turc, *Turk.*

un, une, *one, a, an.*
uni,—e, *united, even, smooth*
unique, *unique, only.*
urne, *urn.*
utile, *useful.*

va, *goes, is well, fits.*
vacances, *holidays.*
vache, *cow.*

vaillance, *bravery, valour.*
vaincre, *to conquer.*
vaincu,—e, *conquered.*
les vaincus, *the vanquished.*
vais, *from* aller (351).
vaisseau, *vessel, ship.*
Valens, *Flavius Valens* (a Roman Emperor of the East (328-378), defeated by the Goths).
valet, *valet, servant.*
valeur, *value; valour.*
vase, m. *vase, cup.*
vaste, *vast.*
Vatel, steward of the Prince of Condé, killed himself because the fish came late for a dinner his master was giving in honour of the visit of King Louis XIV, 1671. Mentioned in the letters of Mme de Sévigné.
vécu, *lived.*
vedette, *horse sentry.*
veille, *eve, day before.*
vendeur,—se, *salesman, saleswoman, assistant.*
vendu,—e, *sold.*
venger, *to avenge.*
venir, *to come; to come up, grow.*
venir de, *to have just.*
vendre, *to sell.*
vent, *wind.*
venu,—e, *come, grown.*
Vêpres Siciliennes, *Vespers of Palermo.*
verger, *orchard.*
véritable, *true, genuine.*
vérité, *truth.*
verra, *will see, Fut. of* voir.
verre, *glass.*
vers, *towards, about;* n. *line of poetry;* pl. *verse.*
vertu, *virtue.*
veuillez, *please, kindly.*
veux, *from* vouloir (414, &c.)
viande, *meat.*
vide, n. *empty space.*
vie, *life.*
vieillard, *old man.*
vieille, *f. of* vieux; *old woman.*
vieux, vieil, vieille, *old.*
vif, vive, *lively, alive.*
villa, *villa.*
ville, *town.*
vin, *wine.*
vinaigre, *vinegar.*
Vincennes, now a suburb east of Paris; has a fine park.
vingtaine, *a score, about* 20.
violon, *violin.*
vis, *Pret. of* voir.
visiter, *to examine; to visit.*
vite, *quickly.*
vitré,—e, *glazed.*
vivre, *to live.*
voici, *here is, here are.*
voilà, *there is, there are.*
voile, f. *sail;* grand'voile, *mainsail* (560).
voir, *to see.*
voisin,—e, n. *neighbour;* adj. *neighbouring.*
voiture, *carriage, cart.*
voix, *voice.*
volcan, *volcano.*
voler, *to steal, to rob; to fly.*
voleur,—se, *thief.*
volume, *volume.*
vouloir, *to wish, to want.*
vouloir bien, *to be so good as to.*
voulu, *wished, wanted; would.*
voté, *voted, passed, become law.*
voyage, *journey, voyage.*
voyager, *to travel.*
voyageur,—se, *traveller, passenger.*
voyons, *come, let us see.*
vrai,—e, *true.*
vu, vue, *seen.*

y, *there, in it, to it, &c.*
yeux, *pl. of* œil, *eyes.*

zèle, *zeal; exceeding orders.*
zéphire, *zephyr.*

PRINTED BY OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH.